

75

GUACANAGARI	PONTIAC	BLACK HAWK
MONTEZUMA	CAPTAIN PIPE	KEOKUK
GUATIMOTZIN	LOGAN	SACAGAWEA
POWHATAN	CORNPLANTER	BENITO JUAREZ
POCAHONTAS	JOSEPH BRANT	MANGUS
SAMOSET	RED JACKET	COLORADAS
MASSASOIT	LITTLE TURTLE	LITTLE CROW
KING PHILIP	TECUMSEH	SITTING BULL
UNCAS	OSCEOLA	CHIEF JOSEPH
TEDYUSKUNG	SEQUOYA	GERONIMO
	SHABONEE	

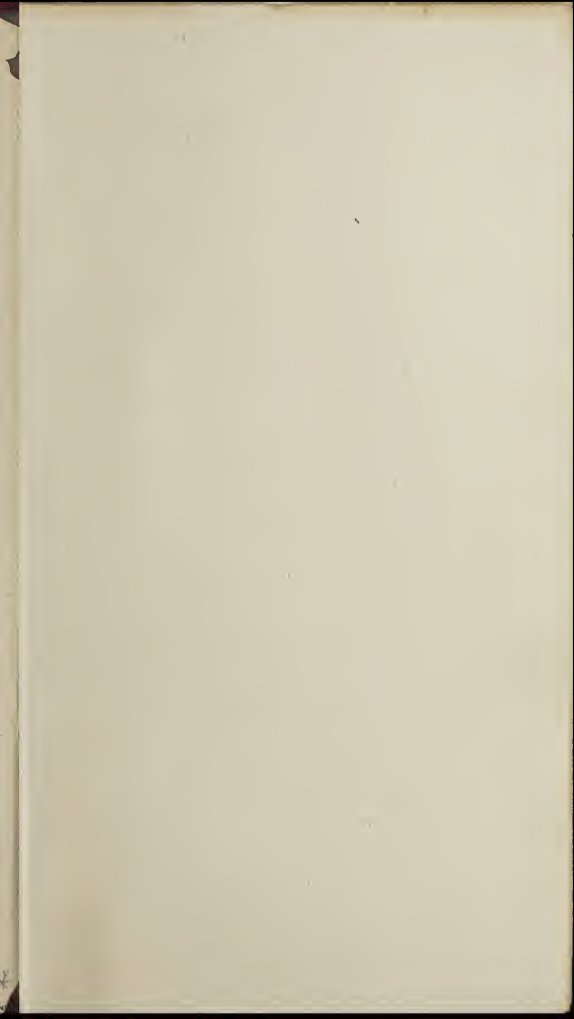


TO PERPETUATE THE HISTORY
AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE
PEOPLE REPRESENTED BY THE
ABOVE CHIEFS AND WISE MEN
THIS COLLECTION HAS BEEN
GATHERED BY THEIR FRIEND
EDWARD EVERETT AYER

AND PRESENTED BY HIM
TO
THE NEWBERRY LIBRARY
1911



1000
1000
1000







A New Discovery of a Large
Country in AMERICA by Father
Lewis Hennepin



A
New Discovery
OF A

Vast Country in AMERICA,

Extending above Four Thousand Miles,
BETWEEN

New France *and* New Mexico;
WITH A

Description of the Great Lakes, Cata-
racts, Rivers, Plants, and Animals.

Also, the *Manners, Customs, and Languages* of the se-
veral Native *Indians*; and the Advantage of Com-
merce with those different Nations.

WITH A
CONTINUATION,

Giving an ACCOUNT of the
Attempts of the *Sieur De la SALLE* upon the
Mines of *St. Barbe*, &c. The Taking of
Quebec by the *English*; With the Advantages
of a Shorter Cut to *China* and *Japan*.

Both Parts Illustrated with *Maps*, and *Figures*,
and Dedicated to His Majesty *K. William*.

By *L. Hennepin*, now Resident in *Holland*.

To which are added, Several New Discoveries in North-
America, not publish'd in the *French* Edition.

L O N D O N, Printed for *M. Bentley, J. Tonson,*
H. Bonwick, T. Goodwin, and *S. Manskip*. 1698.

THE NEWBERRY
LIBRARY

TO

His most Excellent Majesty

WILLIAM III.

King of Great Britain, &c.

S I R,

THis Account of the greatest
DISCOVERY that has been
made in this Age, of several
Large Countries, situate between
the *Frozen Sea* and *New Mexico*, I make
bold humbly to Dedicate to your Ma-
jesty. Having liv'd Eleven Years in
the *Northern America*, I have had an
Opportunity to penetrate farther into
that Unknown Continent than any
before me; wherein I have discover'd
New Countries, which may be justly
call'd the *Delights of that New World*.

A 3

They

To the KING.

They are larger than *Europe*, water'd with an infinite number of fine Rivers, the Course of one of which is above 800 Leagues long, stock'd with all sorts of harmless Beasts, and other Things necessary for the Conveniency of Life; and bless'd with so mild a Temperature of Air, that nothing is there wanting to lay the Foundation of one of the Greatest Empires in the World.

I should think my self very happy, and sufficiently rewarded for my Laborious Travels, if they could any ways contribute to make those Countries better known, under the Glorious Name of Your Majesty; and if through Your Royal Protection I might serve as Guide to your Subjects, to carry into those Parts the Light of the Gospel, and the Fame of your Heroical Virtues: My Name would be bless'd amongst those numerous Nations, who live without Laws and Religion, only because no body endeavours

yours

To the KING.

vours to instruct them ; and they would have the Happiness of being converted to the Christian Faith, and the Advantage of seeing at the same time, their Fierceness and rude Manners softened and civiliz'd, by the Commerce of a Polite and Generous Nation, rul'd by the most Magnanimous King in the World.

This Enterprize is worthy of Your Majesty, who never frames but Noble Designs, and pursues them with such a Prudence and Vigour, that they are always crown'd with a Glorious Success.

I dare not presume to give here a particular Account of what Your Majesty's unparallel'd Valour and Prudence have done for the Felicity of *England, Scotland, and Ireland, and the United Provinces* ; the Happiness of your Kingdoms, and the Mildness of Your Majesty's Government, proclaim that Truth to all the World, as also the Tranquillity of the *United Netherlands,*

A 4

To the KING.

lands, amidst a dreadful War, which ravages most Parts of *Europe*. Your Majesty drove back a formidable Enemy, who had penetrated into their very Heart, and keeps him since at such a distance, that they have nothing to fear from his Ambitious Designs.

The rest of *Europe* is no less indebted to Your Majesty than your own Kingdoms and the *United Netherlands*; for Your Majesty exposes every Year your Life, at the Head of your Armies and theirs, to protect their Country and preserve their Liberties from a fatal Invasion. The Allies know, and own with Gratitude, That Your Majesty's Prudence, and the great Respect which so many Princes have for your Personal Merit, are the only Cement that was able to maintain the Great Alliance, into which *Europe* is enter'd for its Preservation.

Your Majesty's Glorious Atchievements being a Theme above my Pen,

To the KING.

I must not presume to speak of them ;
but my Religion obliges me to mention what I have seen with my own Eyes, and publish to all the World, That I have seen Your Majesty *Preserving*, with the utmost Care, *Our Churches* in the *Netherlands*, while *Others*, who, by a Principle of Conscience, were oblig'd to Protect them, left them expos'd to the Insolence of their Soldiers, violating in the face of the Sun the Respect all Christians owe them.

It is this great Generosity and Equity of your Majesty, as much as your other incomparable Exploits, which have gain'd you the Esteem and the Hearts of all Christian Princes, one alone excepted ; and have engag'd the King of *Spain* my lawful Sovereign, the most Catholick Prince in the World, to make so strict an Alliance with Your Majesty.

That Great Monarch being too remote from the *Netherlands* to defend
his

To the KING.

his Dominions, has found in Your Majesty a Valiant and Trusty Defender ; who being seconded by the Invincible Elector of *Bavaria*, protects the *Spanish* Dominions against a Prince, who makes all Possible Efforts to deprive his Catholick Majesty thereof, notwithstanding their Proximity of Blood, and his professing the same Religion.

His Catholick Majesty having therefore so often experienc'd, that Your Majesty's Royal Word is more firm than other Princes Treaties and Solemn Oaths, could not also but leave his Dominions to your Disposal ; shewing by that unparallell'd Piece of Trust, how much he relies upon Your Majesty's Honour, and what Esteem he has for your Royal Vertues, which are mix'd with no manner of Imperfections.

I don't question but many, out of Envy or Malice, will blame me for entering into Your Majesty's Service ;
but

To the KING.

but I care very little for what they say, since it is by the Permission of his Catholick Majesty, the Elector of *Bavaria*, and the Superiours of my Order. I design to keep the Integrity of my Faith, and serve faithfully the Great Monarch who has honour'd me with his Royal Protection. I owe my Services to the Generous Protector of my Country, and of our Altars, who besides has so kindly receiv'd me at his Court, while other Princes neglected me, or forbad me their Presence. It is then out of Gratitude, that I devote my self to Your Majesty's Service, and in order to contribute to the Conversion of the several Nations I have discover'd, and to the Advantage of your Subjects, if they will improve this Opportunity, and make Plantations in a Country, which is so fertile as to afford Two Crops every Year.

The Gentleman with whom I began this Discovery, had form'd great
Deligns,

To the KING.

Designs , and especially upon the Mines of *St. Barbe* in *New Mexico* ; but his Tragical Death prevented their execution.

I humble beseech Your Majesty to accept this Publick Mark of my Respect and Gratitude ; having pray'd the Almighty for the Preservation of Your Sacred Majesty's Person, and the Prosperity of your Reign, I beg leave to subscribe my self , with all the Submission and Respect imaginable,

S I R,

Your M A J E S T Y's

Most Humble, most Faithful, and

Most Obedient Servant,

F. Louis Hennepin,

Missionary Recollect.

T H E

P R E F A C E.

I Present here the Reader with the First Part of the Account of the Voyage I made from the Year 1679, to the Year 1682, in the Northern America; in which I discover'd a Country, unknown before me, as large or larger than Europe. I had resolv'd long ago to oblige the Publick with it; but my Resolution was prevented by some Reasons, which it would be too long to relate.

'Tis true, I publish'd part of it in the Year 1684, in my Account of Louisiana; Printed at Paris by Order of the French King; but I was then oblig'd to say nothing of the Course of the River Meschasipi, from the Mouth of the River of the Illinois down to the Sea, for fear of disobliging M. la Salle, with whom I began my Discovery. This Gentleman wou'd alone have the Glory of having discover'd the Course of that River: But when he heard that I had done it two Years before him, he could never forgive me, to hugh, as I have said, I was so modest

The PREFACE.

dest as to publish nothing of it. This is the true cause of his Malice against me, and of all the barbarous Usage I have met with in France; which they carry'd so far, as to oblige the Marquis de Louvois to command me to depart the French King's Dominions; which I did willingly, tho' I saw sufficient Grounds to believe this Order was forg'd after Monsieur de Louvois was dead.

The pretended Reasons of that violent Order, were, because I refused to return in America, where I had been already Eleven Years; tho' the particular Laws of our Order oblige none of us to go beyond-Sea against their Will. I would have however return'd very willingly, had I not sufficiently known the Malice of M. la Salle, who wou'd have expos'd me, to make me perish, as he did one of the Men who accompany'd me in my Discovery. God knows, that I am sorry for his unfortunate Death; but the Judgments of the Almighty are always just; for that Gentleman was kill'd by one of his own Men, who were at last sensible that he expos'd them to visible Dangers, without any Necessity, and for his private Designs.

I presented some time after a Petition to the French King, while he was encamp'd at Harlemont in Brabant, setting forth my Services, and the Injustice of my Enemies; but that Prince had so many Affairs, that

The P R E F A C E.

that, I suppose, they hinder'd him from considering my Petition; and so I cou'd obtain no Satisfaction. I continu'd since at Gosseliers and Aeth; and just as they were raising another Persecution against me, the Divine Providence brought me acquainted with Mr. Blathwait, Secretary of War to his Majesty William the Third, King of Great Britain; who, by Order of His Majesty, wrote a Letter to Father Payez, General Commissary of our Order at Louvain, to desire him to give me leave to go Missionary into America, and to continue in one of the United Provinces, till I had digested into Order the Memoires of my Discovery. This General Commissary being informed that the King of Spain, and the Elector of Bavaria consented that I shou'd enter into the Service of His Majesty of Great Britain, granted me what I desir'd, and sent me to Antwerp, to take there in our Convent a Lay-Habit; and from thence I went into Holland, having receiv'd some Money from Mr. Hill, by Order of Mr. Blathwait.

I design'd to live at Amsterdam for some time; but some Reasons oblig'd me to go to Utrecht, where I finish'd this First Volume of the Account of my Discovery; which I hope will prove advantageous to Europe,
and

The PREFACE.

and especially to the English Nation, to whose Service I entirely devote my self.

I cannot sufficiently acknowledge the Favours of Mr. Blathwait, who has so generously provided for my Subsistence, and did me the Honour to present me to His Majesty before his Departure for England. I am also very much oblig'd to the Duke of Ormond, and the Earl of Athlone, for the Civilities I have receiv'd from them: They have often admitted me to their Table, and granted several Protections in Flanders upon my Recommendation.

I hope the Reader will be pleas'd with the Account of my Discovery; not for the Fineness of the Language, and the Nobleness of the Expression, but only upon Account of its Importance, and of the Sincerity wherewith 'tis written. The Bookseller has added a Map, and some other Cutts, which are an Ornament to the Book, and very useful for the better understanding of it.

THE

CONTENTS of the CHAPTERS.

THE Occasion of undertaking this Voyage.

CHAPTER I.

The Motives which engag'd the Author of this Discovery to undertake the Voyage, whereof you have here a Relation.

CHAPTER II.

The Means by which the Author accustom'd himself to endure the Travail and Fatigue of his laborious Mission.

CHAPTER III.

A Description of those Canou's that they make use of in the Summer-time in America, for the Conveniency of travelling.

CHAPTER IV.

Other Motives that induc'd the Author more forcibly to undertake this Discovery.

CHAPTER V.

A Description of Fort Catarokouy, call'd since Fort Frontenac.

CHAPTER VI.

A Description of some Fresh-water Lakes, the greatest and the pleasantest in the Universe.

CHAPTER VII.

A Description of the Fall of the River Niagara, that is to be seen betwixt the Lake Ontario and that of Erié.

CHAPTER VIII.

A Description of the Lake Erié.

CHAPTER IX.

A Description of the Lake Huron.

CHAPTER X.

A Description of the Lake call'd by the Savages Illinouack, and by the French, Illinois.

CHAPTER XI.

A short Description of the Upper Lake.

CHAPTER XII.

What is the Predominant Genius of the Inhabitants of Canada.

Contents of the Chapters.

C H A P. XIII.

A Description of my first Imbarkment in a Canow at Quebec, the Capital City of Canada, being bound for the South-West of New-France, or Canada.

C H A P. XIV.

A Description of my second Imbarkment at Fort Frontenack, in a Brigantine upon the Lake Ontario or Frontenac.

C H A P. XV.

An Account of the Embassie to the Iroquese Tsonnon-touans.

C H A P. XVI.

A Description of a Ship of Sixty Tuns, which we built near the Streights of the Lake Erie, during the Winter and Spring of the Year 1679.

C H A P. XVII.

The Author's Return to Fort Frontenac.

C H A P. XVIII.

An Account of our Second Embarkment from Fort Frontenac.

C H A P. XIX.

An Account of our Third Embarkment from the Mouth of the Lake Erie.

C H A P. XX.

An Account of what hapned in our Passage from the Lake Erie, unto the Lake Huron.

C H A P. XXI.

An Account of our Navigation on the Lake Huron to Missilimakinak.

C H A P. XXII.

An Account of our Sailing from Missilimakinak, into the Lake of the Illinois.

C H A P. XXIII.

An Account of our Embarkment in Canows to continue our Discovery, from the Bay of Puans, to the Miami on the Lake of the Illinois.

C H A P. XXIV.

A Description of the Calumet, or Great Pipe.

CHAP

Contents of the Chapters.

C H A P. XXV.

A Continuation of our Discovery ; with an Account of our Navigation to the farther End of the Lake of the Illinois in our Canou's.

C H A P. XXVI.

An Account of the Peace made between us and the Out-touagami's.

C H A P. XXVII.

An Account of the Building of a Fort and a House near the River of Miamis.

C H A P. XXVIII.

A Continuation of our Voyage from Fort. Miamis to the River of the Illinois.

C H A P. XXIX.

An Account of our Embarkment at the Head of the River of the Illinois.

C H A P. XXX.

A Description of the Hunting of the wild Bulls and Cows, by the Savages ; Of the bigness of those Beasts ; and of the Advantages and Improvements that may be made of the Plain where they Pasture ; and of the Woods thereabouts.

C H A P. XXXI.

An Account of our Arrival to the Country of the Illinois, one of the most numerous Nations of the Savages of America.

C H A P. XXXII.

An Account of what hapned to us while we remain'd among the Illinois, till the Building of a New Fort.

C H A P. XXXIII.

Reflections upon the Temper and Manners of the Illinois, and the little Disposition they have to embrace Christianity:

C H A P. XXXIV.

An Account of the Building of a New Fort on the River of the Illinois, named by the Savages Checagou, and by us Fort Crevecoeur ; as also a Barque to go down the River Meschafipi.

Contents of the Chapters.

C H A P. XXXV.

Containing an Account of what was transacted at Fort Crevecoeur before M. la Salle's return to Fort Frontenac; and the Instructions we receiv'd from a Savage concerning the River Meschasipi.

C H A P. XXXVI.

The Author sets out from Fort Crevecoeur, to continue his Voyage.

C H A P. XXXVII.

The Course of the River Meschasipi from the Mouth of the River of the Illinois, to the Sea; which the Author did not think fit to publish in his Louisiana; with an Account of the Reasons he had to undertake that Discovery.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

A Continuation of our Voyage on the River Meschasipi.

C H A P. XXXIX.

Reasons which oblig'd us to return towards the Source of the River Meschasipi, without going any farther toward the Sea.

C H A P. XL.

An Account of our Departure from Koroa, to continue our Voyage.

C H A P. XLI.

A particular Account of the River Meschasipi; Of the Country thro' which it flows; and of the Mines of Copper, Lead, and Coals we discover'd in our Voyage.

C H A P. XLII.

An Account of the various Languages of the Nations inhabiting the Banks of the Meschalipi; of their Submission to their Chief; of the Difference of their Manners from the Savages of Canada; and of the Difficulties, or rather Impossibilities attending their Conversion.

C H A P. XLIII.

An Account of the Fishery of the Sturgeons; and of the Course we took, for fear of meeting some of our Men from Fort Crevecoeur.

Contents of the Chapters.

C H A P. XLIV.

A short Account of the Rivers that fall into the Meschasipi; of the Lake of Tears; of the Fall of St. Anthony; of the wild Oats of that Country; and several other Circumstances of our Voyage.

C H A P. XLV.

The Author and his Canon-Men are taken by the Savages, who, after several Attempts upon their Lives, carry them away with them into their Country above the River Meschasipi.

C H A P. XLVI.

The Resolution which the Barbarians took to carry the Author and his two Men along with them up into their Country, above the River Meschasipi.

C H A P. XLVII.

The many Outrages done us by the Savages, before we arriv'd in their Country. They frequently design against our Lives.

C H A P. XLVIII.

The Advantages which the Savages of the North have over those of the South, in relation to the War: As also the Ceremony which was perform'd by one of our Captains, having caus'd us to halt at Noon.

C H A P. XLIX.

What Tricks and Artifices were us'd by Aquipaguetin to cheat us handsomely of our Goods; with many other Accidents that hapned in our Voyage.

C H A P. L.

The Elders weep for us during the Night. New Outrages done us by Aquipaguetin. The manner how the Savages make Fire by Friction.

C H A P. LI.

Ceremonies us'd by the Savages when they shew their Prisoners. Continuation of our Journey by Land.

C H A P. LII.

A great Contest arises amongst the Savages, about dividing our Merchandise and Equipage; as also my Sacerdotal Ornaments and little Chest.

C H A P.

Contents of the Chapters.

C H A P. LIII.

The Troop approaches the Village. A Grand Consult amongst the Savages, whether they should kill us, or save and adopt us for their Sons. The Reception which we had from them ; and the use they made of my Chasuble.

C H A P. LIV.

The Authors Reception by the Relations of Aquipaguetin. They make him sweat to recover him of his Fatigues. The use they make of his Chasuble and other Ornaments.

C H A P. LV.

The Author like to be famish'd. They admire his Compass, and an Iron Pot which he had. He makes a Dictionary, and instructs them in Points of Religion, in relation to Poligamy and Celibacy.

C H A P. LVI.

The most considerable Captain of the Iffati and Nadouessians upbraid those that took us. The Author baptizes the Daughter of Mamenisi.

C H A P. LVII.

An Embassy sent to the Iffati by the Savages that inhabit to the West of them. Whence it appears that there is no such thing as the Streights of Anian ; and that Japan is on the same Continent as Louisiana.

C H A P. LVIII.

The Iffati assemble to hunt the Wild-Bull. Refusal of the two Canow-Men to take the Author into their Canow, in order to go down the River of St. Francis.

C H A P. LIX.

The Savages halt above the Fall of St. Anthony of Padua. They are streighten'd for Provisions. The Author, with Picard, returns to the River Ouiscousin. The Adventures of the Voyage.

C H A P. LX.

The Hunting of the Tortoise. The Author's Canow is carry'd off by a sudden blast of Wind, which was like to have reduc'd him and his Companions to great Streights.

Contents of the Chapters.

C H A P. LXI.

We continue our Course in search of the River Ouïfconfin. Aquipaguetin finds us, and gets thither before us. We subsist meerly by Providence.

C H A P. LXII.

Great Streights which the Author and his Companion are reduc'd to in their Voyage. They at last meet again with the Savages at their return from Hunting.

C H A P. LXIII.

The Savage Women hide their Provisions up and down in private Holes. They go down the River again a second time. Address of the Savages. Bravery of one of the Savages.

C H A P. LXIV.

Arrival of the Sieur du Luth in our Camp. He desires us to return with him and his Followers to the Country of the Issati and Nadouessians. I cast my Coverlet over a dead Man. The Savages are pleas'd at it.

C H A P. LXV.

The Author takes his leave of the Savages to return to Canada. A Savage is slain by his Chief, for advising to kill us. Dispute between the Sieur du Luth and me, about the Sacrifice of Barbarians.

C H A P. LXVI.

The Sieur du Luth is in a great Consternation at the Appearance of a Fleet of the Savages, who surpriz'd us before we were got into the River Ouïfconfin.

C H A P. LXVII.

The Author's Voyage from the Mouth of the River Ouïfconfin, to the great Bay of the Puans.

C H A P. LXVIII.

The Author and his Company stay some time amongst the Puans. Original of the Name. They celebrated the Mass here, and winter at Missilimakinak.

C H A P. LXIX.

The Author's Departure from Missilimakinak. He passes two great Lakes. Taking of a Great Bear. Some Particulars relating to the Flesh of that Beast.

C H A P.

Contents of the Chapters.

C H A P. LXX.

The Meeting of the Author and a certain Captain of the Outtaouacts, nam'd Talon by the Intendant of that Name, upon the Lake of Erie; who recounts to him many Adventures of his Family and Nation. Furib Observations upon the great Fall or Cataract of Niagara.

C H A P. LXXI.

The Author sets out from the Fort which is at the Mouth of the River Niagara, and obliges the Iroquois assembld in Council, to deliver up the Slaves they had made upon the Outtaouacts.

C H A P. LXXII.

The Author sets out from the Tsonnontouans Iroquois, and comes to Fort Frontenac.

C H A P. LXXIII.

The Author sets out from Fort Frontenac, and passes over the rapid Stream, which is call'd The Long Fall. He is kindly receiv'd at Montreal by Count Frontenac.

C H A P. LXXIV.

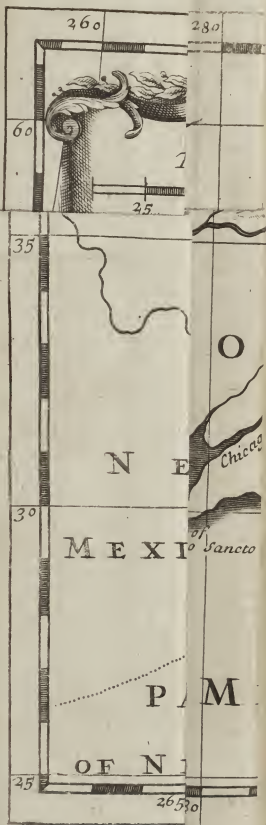
A great Defeat of the Illinois, that were attack'd and surpriz'd by the Iroquois.

C H A P. LXXV.

The Savages Kikapoux murther Father Gabriel de la Ribourde, a Recollect Missionary.

C H A P. LXXVI.

The Author's Return from his Discovery to Quebec; and what hapned at his Arrival at the Convent of Our Lady of Angels near that Town.



The
 same.
 varies.
 unkno



Lake of the Apemec
Chonigaskahy or Nation of strong men
Dutoulitz or Fort to stop the Apemec
Lake St. Joseph
Lake Chongas Kesh
Tunthens or Nation of the Meadows
Nadousians
Illan
R. de France
Fall of St. Anthony
Fall of Queen of Providence
Lake of Tears
Black
Portage
The Illinois
Kitchiga
Catagan
Kikapaw
Poukawatans
Fort of Miami
Portage
R. de St. Anthony
Fort of Crevecoeur
Cape St. Anthony
Nasbowater
Tamaroa
Chiquacha
Akanja
Ouma
Coenut
Taenja
Mont
The Corva
Quimpisa
Sablomore
Quaquir
Bay of St. James
Gulf of Mexico
NEW MEXICO
PART OF NEW SPAIN
FLORIDA
GULF OF MEXICO



305 310

60

Brador

theapeak
-4

afaldh

A MAP
of a Large Country
Newly Discovered
in the
NORTHERN AMERICA
Situated between
NEW MEXICO
And the Frozen Sea
together with the Course
of the Great River
MESCHASIP
Dedicated to his Maty.
WILLIAM III
King of Great Britain
By Father
LEWIS HENNEPIN
Missionary Recollect and
Apostolic Notary

35
30
25

A
New Discovery

O F A

Country greater than *EUROPE*;

*Situated in America, betwixt New-Mexico
and the Frozen-Sea.*

The Occasion of undertaking this Voyage.

MEN are never weary of contemplating those Objects that are before their Eyes, because they discover a thousand ravishing Excellencies therein, capable to afford 'em both Satisfaction and Instruction. The Wonders they there meet with, are so surprising, and (as it were) enchanting, that they are necessarily engaged to survey the same with all possible Exactness, in order to satisfy their natural Curiosity, and inform their Minds.

The Condition of Travellers is very near the same. They're never weary of making new Discoveries. They're indefatigable in rambling through unknown Countries and Kingdoms not mention'd

in History ; feasting their Minds with the Satisfaction of gratifying and enriching the World with something unheard of, and whereof they had never any Idea before. 'Tis true, such Enterprizes expose 'em to infinite Fatigue and Danger : But herewith they solace themselves, and persevere to suffer all with Pleasure in that they hope to contribute thereby both to the publick Good, and to the glory of God, while at the same time they are gratifying their own natural Inclinations; and hence it is, they are so powerfully bent to make these Discoveries, to seek out strange Countries and unknown Nations, whereof they had never before heard of.

Those whose Aim in undertaking Voyages, is to enlarge the Bounds of Christ's Kingdom, and advance the Glory of God, do upon that Prospect alone valiantly venture their Lives, making 'em of no Account. They endure the greatest Fatigues, and traverse the most unpassable Ways and horrid Precipices, in order to the Execution of their Designs; being push'd on by the Hopes they entertain of Promoting by these means the Glory of him who created 'em, and under whose Conduct they undertake such toilsome Voyages.

It's usual to see some undaunted Men boldly encounter the most frightful of Deaths, both in Battles and in dangerous Voyages : they are such as are not discouraged by all the Hazards that surround 'em either by Sea or Land ; nothing being able to withstand the Valour and Courage that prompts 'em to attempt any thing. Therefore is it, that we oft-times see 'em succeed in obtaining their Designs, and compassing their most difficult Enterprizes. Yet it's to be acknowledg'd, that if they took a serious View before hand, of the Perils they're about to encounter, and consider'd 'em in cold Blood, they would perhaps find Difficulty to persuade themselves into such resolute Thoughts ; at least, they would
not

not form their Designs after such a daring and fearless manner. But generally speaking, they do not survey their Dangers beforehand, any otherwise than by the Lump, and with a transient View ; and having once set their Hands to the Work, Occasion engages 'em insensibly, and entices 'em further on than they cou'd have believ'd at first. Insomuch that many of the great Discoveries owing to Voyages, are rather the Result of Chance, than any well form'd Design.

Something of the same Nature has happen'd to my self in the Discovery I now bring to Light. I was from my Infancy very fond of Travelling ; and my natural Curiosity induc'd me to visit many Parts of *Europe* one after another. But not being satisfied with that, I found my self inclin'd to entertain more distant Prospects, and was eager upon seeing remoter Countries and Nations that had not yet been heard of ; and in gratifying this natural Itch, was I led to this Discovery of a vast and large Country, where no *European* ever was before my self.

'Tis true indeed, I could not foresee the Embarrassing Difficulties and Dangers I must of necessity encounter with in this my painful Voyage. Nay, perhaps the very Thoughts of 'em might have discourag'd and scar'd me from attempting a Design so laborious and toilsome, and environ'd with such frightful Difficulties. But maugre all these Discouragements, I've at length perfected my Design, the Undertaking of which was enough to frighten any other but my self. In which I've satisfy'd my Desires, both in regard to the curiosity I had to see new Countries, and strange Faces ; and also upon the Account of my Resolution to employ and dedicate my self to the Glory of God, and the Salvation of Souls.

Thus it was that I discover'd a wonderful Country never known till now ; of which I here give an ample

ple Description ; and (as I think) circumstantiated enough : It being divided into several small Chapters, for the Conveniency of the Reader. I hope the Publick will return me Thanks for my Pains, because of the Advantage that may accrue to it by the same. However the World's Approbation shall sufficiently recompense all the Trouble and Dangers I've gone through.

I am not insensible of the Reflections I shall meet with from such as never dar'd to travel themselves, or never read the Histories of the Curious and Brave, who have given Relations of the strange Countries they have taken upon them to see ; I doubt not but that sort of Cattle will account of this my Discovery as being false and incredible. But what they say shall not trouble me much : They themselves were never Masters of the Courage and Valour which inspires Men to undertake the glorious Enterprizes that gain 'em Reputation in the World, being confin'd within narrow Bounds, and wanting a Soul to atchieve any thing that can procure 'em a distinguishing and advantageous Character among Men. It were better therefore for such to admire what they cannot comprehend, and rest satisfy'd in a wise and profound Silence, than thus foolishly to blame what they know nothing of.

Travellers are generally accus'd of venting an Infinity of Lyes and Impostures : But Men of a magnanimous and firm Courage are above such silly Raileries : For when they've done all to blacken our Reputation, we shall still receive for our Reward, the Esteem and Approbation of Men of Honour, who being endow'd with knowing and penetrating Souls, are capable to give an equal and impartial Judgment of Travels, and of the just Merit of such as have hazarded their Lives for the Glory of God, and the Good of the Publick. It is this happy and agreeable Recompence that makes the daring Tra-
vellers

vellers so valiantly expose themselves to all manner of Fatigues and Dangers, that by so doing, they may become useful to Mankind.

C H A P. I.

The Motives which engag'd the Author of this Discovery to undertake the Voyage, whereof you have here a Relation.

I Always found in my self a strong Inclination to retire from the World, and regulate my Life according to the Rules of pure and severe Virtue: and in compliance with this Humour, I enter'd into the *Franciscan Order*, designing to confine my self to an austere Way of Living. I was over-joy'd then, when I read in History the Travels and Voyages of the Fathers of my own Order, who indeed were the first that undertook Missions into any foreign Country. And oft-times represented to my self, that there could be nothing greater or more glorious than to instruct the Ignorant and Barbarous, and lead 'em to the light of the Gospel; and having remark'd, that the *Franciscans* had behav'd themselves in this Work with a great deal of Zeal and Success, I found this begat in my Mind a Desire of tracing their Footsteps, and dedicating my self after their Example, to the Glory of God, and the Salvation of Souls.

In reading the History of our Order, I observ'd, that in a general Assembly held in the Year 1621. it was reckon'd, that since the first going of the Reverend Father *Martin de Valence* (one of our first Reformers) into *America*, there had been five hundred Convents of Recollects, establish'd in that New World, and distributed into Two and twenty Provinces. As I advanc'd in Years, this Inclination to travel did so much the more fix it self in my Mind. It is true,

one of my Sisters that was marry'd at *Ghent*, and whom I lov'd very tenderly, did dissuade me from my Design as much as she could, and never ceas'd to redouble her Sollicitations to that purpose, while I had occasion to be with her in that great City, whither I had gone to learn the *Dutch* Language : But being solicited on the other hand, by many of my Friends at *Amsterdam*, to go to the *East-Indies*, my natural Inclination, join'd to the Influence of their Requests, did move me much, and had almost determin'd me to undertake a Sea-Voyage.

Seeing then that all the Remonstrances of my Sister could not dissuade me from travelling, I first undertook a Journey into *Italy*; and in Obedience to the Orders of my Superiour, visited all the great Churches, and most considerable Convents of our Order, both in that Country, and in *Germany*; which did in some measure gratifie the Curiosity of my Temper. But having return'd to the *Netherlands*, the Reverend Father *William Herinx*, late Bishop of *Ipres*, manifested his averfeness to the Resolution I had taken of continuing to travel, by detaining me in the Convent of *Halles* in *Hainault*, where I was oblig'd to perform the Office of Preacher for a Year. After which, with the Consent of my Superiour, I went into the Country of *Artois*, from whence I was sent to *Calais*, to act the part of a *Mendicant* there in time of Herring-salting.

Being there, I was passionately in love with hearing the Relations that Masters of Ships gave of their Voyages. Afterwards I return'd to our Convent at *Biez*, by the way of *Dunkirk* : But I us'd oft-times to sculk behind the Doors of Victualling-Houses, to hear the Sea-men give an Account of their Adventures. The Smoak of Tobacco was offensive to me, and created Pain in my Stomach, while I was thus intent upon giving ear to their Relations : But for all that I was very attentive to the Accounts they gave of their

their Encounters by Sea, the Perils they had gone through, and all the Accidents which befell them in their long Voyages. This Occupation was so agreeable and engaging, that I have spent whole Days and Nights at it without eating; for hereby I always came to understand some new thing, concerning the Customs and Ways of Living in remote Places; and concerning the Pleasantness, Fertility, and Riches of the Countries where these Men had been.

This confirm'd me more and more in my former Resolution; and that I might advance it yet further, I went Missionary into most part of the Towns of *Holland*; and stopp'd at length at *Maistreicht*, for eight Months together, where I administer'd the Sacraments to above Three thousand wounded Men: In which Occupation I ventur'd many Dangers among the Sick People, being taken ill both of a Spotted Fever and a Dysenterie, which brought me very low, and near unto Death: But God at length restor'd me to my former Health, by the Care and Help of a very skilful *Dutch* Physician.

The singular Zeal I had for promoting the Good of Souls, engag'd me the Year following to be present at the Battle of *Senefse*, where I was busied in administering Comfort to the poor wounded Men: Till at length, after having endur'd all manner of Fatigue and Toil, and having run the risque of extreme Dangers at Sieges of Towns in the Trenches, and in Fields of Battel, (where I never ceas'd to expose my self for the good of Mens Souls) while these bloody Men were breathing nothing but Slaughter and Blood, I happily found my self in a condition to satisfy my first Inclination: For I then receiv'd Orders from my Superiours to go for *Rocheb*, in order to embark in Quality of Missionary for *Canada*. Within Two Leagues of that City I perform'd the function of a Curate near two Months; being invited so to do by the Pastor of the Place, who had oc-

casion to be absent from his Charge. But afterwards I totally resign'd my self to the Providence of God, and begun a Voyage of Twelve or Thirteen hundred Leagues over, and perhaps the greatest that can be made by Sea.

I embark'd in the Company of Mr. *Francis de Lalval*, created then Bishop of *Petrée in partibus Infidelium*, and since Bishop of *Quebec*, the Capital City of *Canada*; and now my Inclination to travel increas'd more and more: Yet I staid in that Country four Years, and was sent thence in Mission, while the Abbot of *Fenelon*, present Archbishop of *Cambray*, resided there.

I shall not here recount the several Adventures of our Voyage, nor the Fights we were engag'd in with the Ships of *Turkey*, *Tunis*, and *Algiers*, who attempted several times to have taken us; but without success. Nor shall I stay to relate our Approach to *Cape Breton*, where we beheld with incredible Delight, the Battle ordinarily fought betwixt the Fishes call'd *Espadons* and the Whales, their mortal Enemies; neither am I to detain my Reader with an Account of what vast Quantities of Fish we took at Forty Fathom Water, upon the Great Bank of *New-found-Land*; or what great Numbers of Ships we rencounter'd with, that were bound thither from different Nations to fish in these Places, which afford such infinite Numbers of all manner of Fishes. These diverting Sights were very agreeable to all our Crew, which was then about an Hundred Men strong, to three Fourths of whom I administred the Sacraments, they being Catholicks. I perform'd likewise Divine Service every Day while the Weather was calm; and we sung the Itinerary of the Clergy, translated into *French Verse*, after the Evening Prayers.

Thus

Thus we sweetly pass'd our Time a-board, 'till at length we arriv'd at *Quebec*, the Capital City of *Canada*.

C H A P. II.

The Means by which the Author accustom'd himself to endure the Travail and Fatigue of his laborious Mission.

MR. *Francis de Laval*, Bishop of *Petrée*, having taken possession of the Bishoprick of *Quebec*, which was conferr'd upon him by Pope *Clement X.* and that contrary to the Sentiments of many Persons of Quality, who, by means of his Preferment, were frustrated of their own Pretensions: This Reverend Prelate (I say) having taken into consideration the Fervency of my Zeal in Preaching the Gospel in my Voyage, my assiduous Diligence in performing Divine Service, and the Care I had taken to hinder the Young Fellows of our Crew from keeping loose Company with the Women and Maids that came along with us (for which I had oft-times been rewarded with Anger and Hatred ;) these Reasons, and such like, procur'd me the Favour and Applause of this Illustrious Prelate, he obliging me to preach in *Advent* and *Lent* to the Cloister of *St. Augustin*, in the Hospital of *Quebec*.

But in the mean while, all this did not satisfy my natural Inclination: I us'd oft-times to go some Twenty or Thirty Leagues off the Town to see the Country, wearing a little Hood, and making use of large Rackets, without which I had been in danger of falling headlong over fearful Precipices. Sometimes to ease my self a little, I made a great Dog I had brought with me, drag my little Baggage along, that I might arrive the sooner at *Trois Rivières*, *St. Anne*, and *Cape Tourmente*, *Bourgröyal*, the *Point de Levi*, and

and at the Island of *St. Laurence*, whither I design'd to go. There I assembled together, in one of the largest Cottages of that Country, as many People as I could gather; whom in some time I admitted to Confession, and to the Holy Communion. In the Night-time I had nothing to cover me but a Cloak; and sometimes the Frost pierc'd to my very Bones, which oblig'd me to make a Fire five or six times in a Night, to prevent my freezing to death. My Commons also were very short, scarce more than to keep me from starving.

In the Summer-season I was oblig'd, in order to continue my *Mission*, to travel in Canou's, that is, a sort of little Boats (which I shall describe hereafter) that they make use of in Lakes and Rivers: Which sort of Contrivance succeeded well enough where the Water was shallow, or about two or three Foot deep; But when we came to any deeper Place, then the Boat, which was round underneath, was in danger of over-turning, insomuch that I had certainly perish'd in the Water, had not I taken a circumspect Care of my self.

However, I found my self oblig'd to travel after this manner, for there were no passable Roads in this Country; it being impossible to travel over-land in these new Colonies, because of that infinite number of Trees and Woods that beset them on all sides, which must needs be cut down or burn'd, before any passable Way be made.

C H A P. III.

A Description of those Canou's that they make use of in the Summer-time in America, for the Conveniency of travelling.

THESE Canou's are round underneath, as I said but now, and pointed at the two Ends, not unlike the *Venetian Gondals*: Without them it were impossible to travel in *America*, for the Country is full of vast and wide-extended Forests: Besides, the impetuous Winds sometimes pluck up the Trees by the Roots, and Time it self ranverses great numbers of 'em, which tumbling down through Age, are piled so one upon another, that the Ways are totally embarrassed, and render'd unpassable.

The Savages are very ingenious in making these Canou's: They make them of the Bark of Birch-Trees, which they pull very neatly off that sort of Trees, they being considerably bigger than those of *Europe*. They betake themselves to this Work generally about the end of Winter, in the vast Forests that lie towards the Northern Parts of these Countries.

For supporting this Bark they line it within with Ribs or Pieces of white Wood, or Cedar, about four Fingers broad; this they furbish up with small Poles made smooth, that make the Circumference of the Canou; then by other Poles going a-cross, about an Inch, or an Inch and a half thick, which are very smoothly polish'd; these they join on both sides to the Bark by small Roots of Trees cloven in two, not much unlike the Willows that we make our Baskets of in *Europe*.

These Canou's have no Rudder, as the bigger Shallops have, for they row them along merely by the force

force of their Arms with some small Oars ; and can turn them with an incredible swiftness, and direct them whither they list. Those that are accustom'd to manage them, can make 'em sail at a wonderful rate, even in calm Weather ; but when the Wind is favourable, they are epedit to a Miracle ; for they then make use of little Sails made of the same Bark, but thinner than that of the Canou's. As for the *Europeans*, that by long usage come to be well vers'd in this sort of Tackling, they make use of about four Ells of Linen Cloth, hoisted up on a little Mast, the Foot of which stands in a Hole made in a square piece of light Wood, that is fastned betwixt the Ribs and the Bark of the Canou's towards the Bottom.

Those that are well skill'd in managing these Canou's, can sail Thirty or Thirty five Leagues in a Day down a River, and sometimes more in Lakes, if the Wind be favourable : But some of 'em are much bigger than others. They carry generally about a Thousand pound Weight, some Twelve hundred, and the biggest not above Fifteen hundred pounds. The least of 'em can carry Three or four hundred pound weight, together with two Men or Women to steer them along. But the Greater must have Three or Four Men to manage them, and sometimes when Business requires Expedition, Seven or Eight to quicken their pace.

C H A P. IV.

Other Motives that induc'd the Author more forcibly to undertake this Discovery.

I Was passionately zealous, in imitation of many Fathers of my Order, for enlarging the Limits of Christianity, and converting the barbarous *Americans* to the Belief of the Gospel ; and in pursuance of

of that Design, I look'd upon the Employment of a *Missionary* as a most Honourable Post for me; so that whenever I found the opportunity of a Mission, I willingly embrac'd it; tho' it oblig'd me to travel more than Twelve hundred Leagues off *Canada*: Yet I perswaded several to accompany me in my Voyage; and neglected not any thing that might tend to the furtherance of my Design.

At first, for a Trial I was sent in Mission about a Hundred and twenty Leagues beyond *Quebec*. I went up by the way of the River *St. Laurence*, and arriv'd at length at the brink of a Lake call'd by the Natives *Ontario*, which I shall describe hereafter. Being there, I perswaded several of the barbarous *Iroquese*, to cultivate the Ground, and prepare some Wood for building a Lodge for us. Then I made them erect a Cross of an extraordinary height and bigness; and built a Chapel near to the Lake, and settled my self there, with another of my own Order, by Name, Father *Luke Buisset*, whom I had induc'd to come along with me, and who died since in our *Franciscan* Convent upon the *Sambre*: I shall have occasion afterwards to speak of him, for that we cohabited in *Canada* for a long time, and were Fellow-Labourers in our Settlement at *Catarokouy*; which was the Place where we oft-times concerted the Measures of making this Discovery I am about to relate. I there gave my self much to the reading of Voyages, and encreas'd the Ambition I had to pursue my Design, from what Light the Savages imparted to us in that matter: In fine, I plainly perceiv'd by what Relations I had receiv'd of several Particulars in different Nations, that it was a matter of no great difficulty to make considerable Establishments to the South-East of the great Lakes; and that by the conveniency of a great River call'd *Hois*, which passes through the Country of the *Iroquese*, a Passage might be made into the Sea at *Cape Florida*. While

While I resided in that place, I made several little Tours, sometimes with the Inhabitants of *Canada*, that we had brought along to settle at our Fort of *Catarokouy*; sometimes in company of the Savages alone, with whom I convers'd frequently. And as I foresaw that the *Iroquese* might become jealous and suspicious of our Discoveries, I resolv'd to make a Tour round their Five Cantons; and in pursuance of this Design, threw my self among 'em, being accompany'd only with a Soldier of our Fort, who travell'd with me Seventy Leagues, or near the Matter, on this Occasion; we having our Feet arm'd with large Rackets, to prevent the Injury of the Snow, which abounds in that Country in time of Winter.

I had already acquir'd some small Knowledge of the *Iroquese* Language; and while I travell'd in this manner among them, they were surpriz'd to see me walk in the Midst of Snow, and lodge my self in the wild Forests that their Country is full of. We were oblig'd to dig four Foot deep into the Snow, to make Fire at Night, after having journey'd Ten or Twelves Leagues over-day. Our Shooes were made after the Fashion of those of the Natives, but were not able to keep out the Snow, which melted as soon as our Feet touch'd it, it having receiv'd heat from the motion of us walking along. We made use of the Barks of Trees to cover us when we went to sleep; and were carefully solicitous to keep in great Fires to defend us from the nipping Colds. In this lonesome Condition spent we the Nights, waiting the welcome return of the Sun, that we might go on in our Journey. As for Food, we had none, save the *Indian* Corn grinded small, which we diluted with Water, to make it go down the better.

Thus we pass'd through the Countries of the *Hon-nibiouts* and *Honnontages*, who gave us a very kind reception,

reception, and are the most Warlike People of all the *Iroquese*. When they saw us, they put their Fore-fingers to their Mouths signifying how much surpris'd they were at the troublesome and difficult Journey we had made in the middle of Winter. Then looking upon the mean and mortifying Habit of St. *Francis*, they cry'd aloud, *Hetchitagon* ! that is, Bare-foot ; and did with all manner of passion and astonishment pronounce the Word *Gannorron* ; intimating, that it must needs have been a Business of great Importance that mov'd us to attempt such a difficult Journey at so unseasonable a time.

These Savages regal'd us with Elk and Venison, dress'd after their own fashion, which we eat of, and afterwards took leave of 'em, going further on in our Journey. When we departed, we carry'd our Bed-cloaths on our Backs, and took with us a little Pot to boyl their Corn in. We pass'd through Ways that were overflown with Water, and such as wou'd have been unpassable by any *European* : For when we came at vast Marshes and overflowing Brooks, we were oblig'd to crawl along by the Trees. At length with much difficulty we arriv'd at *Ganniekez*, or *Agniez*, which is one of the Five Cantons of the *Iroquese*, situated about a large Day's Journey from *New-Holland*, call'd now *New-York* : Being there, we were forc'd to season our *Indian* Corn (which we were wont to bruize betwixt two Stones) with little Frogs that the Natives gather'd in the Meadows towards *Easter*, when the Snow was all gone.

We stay'd some time among these People, lodging with a *Jesuite* that had been born at *Lions*, to transcribe an *Iroquese* Dictionary. When the Weather began to be more favourable, we chanc'd one day to meet with three *Dutch*-men on Horse-back, who had come thither to traffick in Beavers Skins : They were sent thither by Major *Andrews*, who is
the

the Person that subdu'd *Boston* and *New-York* for the King of *England*, and is at present Governour of *Virginia*.

These Gentlemen alighted from their Horses, that we might mount 'em, taking us along with them to *New-Orange* to be regal'd there. As soon as they heard me speak *Dutch*, they testify'd a great deal of Friendship to me, and told me they had read several Histories of the Discoveries made by those of our *Franciscan* Order in the Northern Parts of *America*, but had never before seen any wear the Habit in these Countries as we did. They likewise express'd the great Desire they had to have me stay among them, for the Spiritual Comfort and Advantage of many Catholicks who had come from our *Netherlands*, and settled there: And I should very willingly have yielded to their Intreaties in residing there, but that I was afraid of giving any Jealousie to the *Jesuites*, who had receiv'd me very Kindly; and besides, I was aware of injuring the Colony of *Canada*, in respect to the Commerce they had with the Savages of my Acquaintance in Beavers and Skins. We therefore having testified how much oblig'd we were to the Gentlemen for their Kindness, return'd again to *Catarokouy* with much less difficulty than we went. But all this had no other effect than to augment the Itching I had to discover remoter Countries.

CHAP. V.

A Description of Fort Catarokouy, call'd since Fort Frontenac.

THis Fort is situated a Hundred Leagues from *Quebec* (the Capital City of *Canada*) up the River *St. Laurence* Southwards. It is built near to the Place

Place where the Lake *Ontario* (which is as much as to say, the pretty Lake) discharges it self. It was surrounded with a Rampart, great Stakes and Palisado's, and four Bastions, by the Order of Count *Frontenac*, Governour-General of *Canada*. They found it necessary to build this Fort for a Bulwark against the Excursions of the *Iroquese*, and to interrupt the Trade of Skins that these Savages maintain with the Inhabitants of *New-York*, and the *Hollanders*, who have settled a new Colony there; for they furnish the Savages with Commodities at cheaper Rates than the *French* of *Canada*.

The *Iroquese* are an Insolent and barbarous Nation, that has shed the Blood of more than Two millions of Souls in that vast-extended Country. They would never cease from disturbing the Repose of the *Europeans*, were it not for fear of their Fire-Arms: For they entertain no Commerce with them, save in the Merchandise-Goods they stand in need of, and in Arms, which they buy on purpose to use against their Neighbours; and by the means of which, they have compass'd the Destruction of an infinite Number of People, extending their bloody Conquest above 5 or 600 Leagues beyond their own Precincts, and exterminating whatever Nations they hate.

This Fort, which at first was only surrounded with Stakes, Palisado's, and earthen Ramparts, has been enlarg'd since the commencement of my Mission into these Countries, to the circumference of Three hundred and sixty Toises (each of these being six Foot in length) and is now adorn'd with Free-Stone, which they find naturally polish'd by the shock of the Water upon the brink of the Lake *Ontario* or *Frontenac*. They wrought at this Fort with so much diligence and expedition, that in two Years time it was advanc'd to this perfection, by the Care and Conduct of *Sieur-Cavelier de la Salle*, who was a *Norman* born;

born ; a Man of great Conduct and profound Policy. He oft-times pretended to me, that he was a *Parisian* by Birth, thinking thereby to engage *Father Luke Buisset* before-Mention'd, and me, to put more confidence in him : For he had quickly observ'd from our ordinary Conversation, that the *Flemings*, and several other Nations, are prone to be jealous of the *Normans*. I am sensible that there are Men of Honour and Probity in *Normandy*, as well as elsewhere ; but nevertheless it is certain, that other Nations are generally more free, and less sly and intriguing, than the Inhabitants of that Province of *France*.

This Fort *Frontenac* lies to the Northward of this Lake, near to its Mouth, where it discharges it self ; and is situated in a *Peninsula*, of which the *Isthmus* is digg'd into a Ditch. On the other side, it has partly the Brink of the Lake surrounding it, partly a pretty sort of a natural Mould, where all manner of Ships may ride safely.

The Situation of this Fort is so advantageous, that they can easily prevent the Sallies and Returns of the *Iroquesse* ; and in the space of Twenty four Hours, can wage War with them in the Heart of their own Country. This is easily compass'd by the help of their Barques, of which I saw Three all deck'd and mounted, at my last departure thence. With these Barques, in a very little time, they can convey themselves to the South-side of the Lake, and pillage (if it be needful) the Country of the *Tsionmontouans*, who are the most numerous of all the Provinces of the *Iroquesse*. They manure a great deal of Ground for sowing their *Indian* Corn in, of which they reap ordinarily in one Harvest as much as serves 'em for two Years : Then they put it into Caves digg'd in the Earth, and cover'd after such a manner, that no Rain can come at it.

The Ground which lies along the Brink of this Lake is very fertile : In the space of two Years and a half that I resided there in discharge of my *Mission*, they cultivated more than a hundred Acres of it. Both the *Indian* and *European* Corn, Pulse, Pot-Herbs, Gourds, and Water-Melons, throve very well. It is true indeed, that at first the Corn was much spoil'd by Grasshoppers ; but this is a thing that happens in all the Parts of *Ganada* at the first cultivating the Ground, by reason of the extream Humidity of all that Country. The first Planters we sent thither, bred up Poultry there, and transported with them Horned Beasts, which multiply'd there extreamly. They have stately Trees, fit for building of Houses or Ships. Their Winter is by three Months shorter than at *Canada*. In fine, we have all the reason to hope, that e're long, a considerable Colony will be settled in that Place. When I undertook my great Voyage, I left there about Fifteen or Sixteen Families together, with Father *Luke Buisset* a *Recollet*, with whom I had us'd to administer the Sacraments in the Chapel of that Fort.

While the Brink of the Lake was frozen, I walk'd upon the Ice to an *Iroquoise* Village, call'd *Ganneouse*, near to *Keutè*, about nine Leagues off the Fort, in company of the *Sieur de la Salle* above-mention'd. These Savages presented us with the Flesh of Elks and Porcupines, which we fed upon. After having discours'd them some time, we return'd, bringing with us a considerable number of the Natives, in order to form a little Village of about Forty Cottages to be inhabited by them, lying betwixt the Fort and our House of Mission. These Barbarians turn'd up the Ground for sowing of *Indian* Corn and Pulse, of which we gave them some for their Gardens. We likewise taught them, contrary to their usual custom of eating, to feed upon Soupe, made with Pulse and Herbs, as we did.

Father *Luke* and I made one Remark upon their Language, that they pronounc'd no Labial Letters, such as *B, P, M, F*. We had the Apostolick Creed, the Lord's Prayer, and our ordinary Litany, translated into the *Iroquesse* Language, which we caus'd them to get by heart, and repeat to their Children; and forc'd their Children to pronounce as we did, by inculcating to them the Labial Letters, and obliging 'em to frequent converse with the Children of the *Europeans* that inhabited the Fort; so that they mutually taught one another their Mother-Languages; which serv'd likewise to entertain a good Correspondence with the *Iroquesse*.

These Barbarians stay'd always with us, except when they went a hunting; which was the thing we were much concern'd about: for when they went for five or six Months ravaging through their vast huge Forests, and sometimes Two hundred Leagues from their ordinary abode, they took their whole Family along with them. And thus they liv'd together, feeding upon the Flesh of the wild Beasts they kill'd with the Fire-Arms they us'd to receive of the *Europeans*, in exchange of their Skins: And it was impossible for any Missionary to follow them into these wild Desarts; so that their Children being absent all the season of Hunting, forgot what we had instill'd into them at Fort *Frontenac*.

The Inhabitants of *Canada* towards *Quebec, Trou Rivières*, and the Isle of *Monreal*, being sick of their long Winters; and seeing those of the *Franciscan* Order settle themselves at *Frontenac*, where the Winter was three Months shorter, many of 'em resolv'd to transport their Families thither, and reside there. They represented to themselves the Advantage that should accrue to them, by having the Sacraments administered, and their Children educated by us, and that for nothing; for we ordinarily took no Compensation for the Instruction we gave.

There

There have always been some sort of People who endeavour'd to render themselves Masters of *Canada*, and become Arbiters and Judges over all the Settlements there; for the compassing of which Design, they left no means untry'd. They attributed to themselves the Glory of all the Good Success that was had there: They dispers'd their Missionaries over all the Country, and endeavour'd to obstruct all our Designs at Fort *Frontenac*. In fine, they oblig'd our *Recollets* to remove thence by the help of the Marquis *de Be-nonville*, the then Governour of *Canada*, whom they had wheedled into their Interests, and who had suffer'd himself to be impos'd upon by the Artifices of these Men.

I hope, that some time or other God will re-establish our poor Monks in that Place; for their Designs were always innocent and good; and they could never have been made to retire thence, without doing them Injustice. God leaves nothing unpunish'd: The Day shall come when he shall take Vengeance on those who did this Injury. I heard some time ago, that the *Iroquese*, who wage continual War with the *French* of *Canada*, have seiz'd the Fort of *Catarockouy*; as also that the cruel Savages did smoak in their Pipes some of the Fingers of those who had procur'd the departure of our poor *Recollets* from that Fort; and that the present Inhabitants of *Canada* have upbraided those who were the Authors of that Injustice, with it.

C H A P. VI.

A Description of some Fresh-water Lakes, the greatest and the pleasantest in the Universe.

Here commence the Description of the most remarkable Things in this great Discovery, that the Reader may the more easily attain to a full Knowledge

ledge of our Voyage, by following the Map we have provided for that purpose.

The Lake *Ontario* receiv'd the Name of the Lake *Frontenac*, from the Illustrious Count *de Frontenac*, Governour-General of *Canada*. All the World is acquainted with the Merit and Vertue of that Noble Person: It is likewise well known, how ancient that Family is from which he is descended, and what a glorious Train of Illustrious Ancestors went before him, who were always thought worthy of the most weighty Employments both Civil and Military! His Family was always inviolably firm to the Interests of their Sovereign, even in the most perplex'd Times: Nay, I may say upon this occasion, without giving Offence to the other Governours of *Canada*, that have either preceded, or are to succeed him, That this Country was never govern'd with so much Wisdom, Moderation, and Equity, as by the Count *de Frontenac*.

I know very well, that those Men who aspire to be Masters over all, have endeavour'd to blacken his Reputation, to eclipse his Glory, and render him suspected. But I am bound to say, to the Praise of that Illustrious Nobleman, That for all the Ten Years he liv'd in that Country, he was a Father to the Poor; a Protector to those that were in danger of being oppress'd; nay, in short, his Conversation was a perfect Model of Vertue and Piety. Those of his Countrymen who were stirr'd up against him, by an Effect of their natural Levity and Fickleness, had the Mortification to see him re-establish'd in that very same Government, of which their Calumnies and malignant Intrigues had endeavour'd to dispossess him. They had engag'd the Intendant of *Chefneau* in the same Combination, having over-reach'd him by their cunning Artifices. Yet notwithstanding all these unjust Censures, I came to understand of late, that they regret much the want of that Illustrious Count.

It was therefore in Honour of this Worthy Count, that they gave to the Lake the Name of *Frontenac*, in order to perpetuate his Memory in that Country. This Lake is Eighty Leagues long, and Twenty five Leagues broad : It abounds with Fishes, is deep, and navigable all over. The Five Cantons, or Districts, of the *Iroquese*, do inhabit for the most part the South-side of this Lake, viz. the *Ganniegez*, or *Agniez* (the highest Neighbours to *New-Holland*, or *New-York*) the *Onnontagues*, or those who live in the Mountains, who are the most Warlike People of all that Nation ; the *Onneicuts* and *Tsonnontouans* the most populous of them all. There are likewise on the South-side of the Lake, these *Iroquese* Villages, viz. *Tejajagon*, *Keuté*, and *Ganneouffe*, which is not distant from *Frontenac* above Nine Leagues.

The great River of *St. Laurence* derives its Source from the Lake *Ontario*, which is likewise call'd in the *Iroquese* Language, *Skanadario* ; that is to say, a very pretty Lake. It springs likewise partly from the Lakes that are higher up in the Country, as we shall have occasion to observe afterwards.

This Lake *Ontario* is of an Oval Figure, and extends it self from East to West. Its Water is fresh and sweet, and very pleasant to drink ; the Lands which border upon it being likewise very fertile. It is very navigable, and can receive large Vessels : Only in Winter it is more difficult, because of the outrageous Winds which are frequent there. From this Lake one may go by Barques, or by greater Vessels to the foot of a great Rock that is about two Leagues off the Fall of the River *Niagara*, which I am now to describe.

C H A P. VII.

A Description of the Fall of the River Niagara, that is to be seen betwixt the Lake Ontario and that of Erié.

BETWIXT the Lake *Ontario* and *Erié*, there is a vast and prodigious Cadence of Water which falls down after a surprizing and astonishing manner, inso-much that the Universe does not afford its Parallel. 'Tis true, *Italy* and *Suedeland* boast of some such Things; but we may well say they are but sorry Patterns, when compar'd to this of which we now speak. At the foot of this horrible Precipice, we meet with the River *Niagara*, which is not above half a quarter of a League broad; but is wonderfully deep in some places. It is so rapid above this Descent, that it violently hurries down the wild Rocks while endeavouring to pass it to feed on the other side, they not being able to withstand the force of its Current, which inevitably casts them down headlong above Six hundred foot.

This wonderful Downfall is compounded of two great Cross-streams of Water, and two Falls, with an Isle sloping along the middle of it. The Waters which fall from this vast height, do foam and boil after the most hideous manner imaginable, making an outrageous Noise, more terrible than that of Thunder; for when the Wind blows from off the South, their dismal roaring may be heard above fifteen Leagues off.

The River *Niagara* having thrown it self down this incredible Precipice, continues its impetuous course for two Leagues together, to the great Rock above-mention'd, with an inexpressible Rapidity: But having pass'd that, its Impetuosity relents, gliding



C H A P. VII.

A Description of the Fall of the River Niagara, that to be seen betwixt the Lake Ontario and that of Erié.

Betwixt the Lake *Ontario* and *Erié*, there is a vast and prodigious Cadence of Water which fall down after a surprizing and astonishing manner, in so much that the Universe does not afford it Parallel. 'Tis true, *Italy* and *Suedeland* boast of some such Things; but we may well say they are but ordinary Patterns, when compar'd to this of which we now speak. At the foot of this horrible Precipice we meet with the River *Niagara*, which is not above half a quarter of a League broad, but wonderfully deep in some places. It is so rapid above this Descent, that it violently hurries down the wild Rocks while endeavouring to pass it to feed on the other side, they not being able to withstand the force of its Current, which inevitably casts them down headlong above Six hundred foot.

This wonderful Downfall is compounded of two great Cross-streams of Water, and two Falls, with an Isle sloping along the middle of it. The Waters which fall from this vast height, do foam and boil after the most hideous manner imaginable, making an outrageous Noise, more terrible than that of Thunder; for when the Wind blows from off the South, their dismal roaring may be heard above fifteen Leagues off.

The River *Niagara* having thrown it self down this incredible Precipice, continues its impetuous course for two Leagues together, to the great Rock above-mention'd, with an inexpressible Rapidity. But having pass'd that, its Impetuosity relents, gliding



Page 24. Part 1. 12





ding along more gently for two Leagues, till it arrives at the Lake *Ontario* or *Frontenac*.

Any Barque or greater Vessel may pass from the Fort to the foot of this huge Rock above-mention'd. This Rock lies to the Westward, and is cut off from the Land by the River *Niagara*, about two Leagues farther down than the great Fall; for which two Leagues the People are oblig'd to carry their Goods over-land; but the way is very good, and the Trees are but few, and they chiefly Firrs and Oaks.

From the great Fall unto this Rock, which is to the West of the River, the two Brinks of it are so prodigious high, that it would make one tremble to look steadily upon the Water, rolling along with a Rapidity not to be imagin'd. Were it not for this vast Cataract, which interrupts Navigation, they might sail with Barks or greater Vessels, above Four hundred and fifty Leagues further, cross the Lake of *Hurons*, and up to the farther end of the Lake *Illinois*; which two Lakes we may well say are little Seas of fresh Water.

Sieur *de la Salle* had a design to have built a Fort at the Mouth of the River *Niagara*; and might easily have compass'd it, had he known how to have kept himself within bounds, and to be confin'd there for one Year. His design was to curb and keep under the *Iroquese*, and especially the *Tsonnontouans*, who are the most numerous People, and the most given to War of that all Nation. In short, such a Fort as this might easily have interrupted the Commerce betwixt these People and the *English* and *Dutch* in *New-York*. Their Custom is to carry to *New-York* the Skins of Elks, Beavers, and several sorts of Beasts, which they hunt and seek after some 2 or 300 Leagues from their own home. Now they being oblig'd to pass and repass near to this Mouth of the River *Niagara*, we might easily stop them by fair means in time of Peace,

Peace, or by open force in time of War; and to oblige them to turn their Commerce upon *Canada*.

But having observ'd that the *Iroquese* were push'd on to stop the Execution of this Design, not so much by the *English* and *Dutch*, as by the Inhabitants of *Canada*, who many of them endeavour'd by all means to traverse this our Discovery; they contented themselves to build a House at the Mouth of the River to the Eastward, where the Place was naturally fortifi'd. On one side of this House there is a very good Haven, where Ships may safely ride; nay, by the help of a Capstane, they may easily be hall'd upon Land. Besides, at this Place they take an infinite quantity of Whittings, Sturgeons, and all other sorts of Fishes, which are incomparably good and sweet; in-somuch, that in the proper Season of Fishing, they might furnish the greatest City in *Europe* with plenty of Fish.

C H A P. VIII.

A Description of the Lake Erie.

THE *Iroquese* give to this Lake the Name of *Erie*. *Tejocharontiong*, which extends it self from East to West perhaps a hundred and forty Leagues in Length. But no *European* has ever survey'd it all; only I and those who accompany'd me in this Discovery, have view'd the greater Part of it, with a Vessel of Sixty Tun burden, which we caus'd to be made on purpose, about two Leagues above the fore-mention'd Fall of *Niagara*, as I shall have occasion to observe more largely hereafter.

This Lake *Erie*, or *Tejocharontiong*, encloses on its Southern Bank a Tract of Land as large as the Kingdom of *France*. It divides it self at a certain place into two Channels, because of a great Island enclosed betwixt them: Thus continuing its course for fourteen Leagues,

Leagues, it falls into the Lake Ontario, or *Frontenac*, and this is that which they call the River *Niagara*.

Betwixt the Lake *Erie* and *Huron*, there is almost such another Streight thirty Leagues long, which is of an equal breadth almost all over, except in the middle, that it enlarges it self by help of another Lake, far less than any of the rest, which is of a circular Form about six Leagues over, according to the Observation of our Pilot. We gave it the Name of Lake *St. Claire*, though the *Iroquese*, who pass over it frequently when they are upon Warlike Expeditions, call it *Otji Keta*. The Country which borders upon this most agreeable and charming Streight, is a pleasant Champagne Country, as I shall relate afterwards. All these different Rivers, which are distinguish'd by so many different Names, are nothing else but the Continuation of the great River *St. Laurence*; and this Lake *St. Claire* is form'd by the same.

C H A P. IX.

A Description of the Lake Huron.

THE Lake *Huron* was so call'd by the People of *Canada*, because the Savage *Hurons*, who inhabited the adjacent Country, us'd to have their Hair so burn'd, that their Head resembled the Head of a Wild Boar. The Savages themselves call it the Lake *Karegnondy*. Heretofore the *Hurons* liv'd near this Lake, but they have been in a great measure destroy'd by the *Iroquese*.

The Circumference of this Lake may be reckon'd to be about Seven hundred Leagues, and its Length Two hundred; but the Breadth is very unequal. To the West of it near its Mouth, it contains several great Islands, and is navigable all over. Betwixt this Lake and that of the *Illinois*, we meet with another Streight

Streight, which discharges it self into this Lake, being about Three Leagues long, and One broad, its Course running West-North-West.

There is yet another Streight or narrow Canal towards the upper Lake (that runs into this of *Huron*) about Five Leagues broad, and Fifteen Leagues long, which is interrupted by several Islands, and becomes narrower by degrees, till it comes at the Fall of *St. Mary*. This Fall is a Precipice full of Rocks, over which the Water of the upper Lake, which flows thither in great abundance, casts it self with a most violent Impetuosity : Notwithstanding which, a Canou may go up it on one side, provided the People in it row vigorously. But the safer way is to carry the Canou over-land for so little a space, together with the Commodities that those of *Canada* carry thither to exchange with the Savages that live to the Northward of the upper Lake. This Fall is call'd the Fall of *St. Mary Missilimakinak*. It lies at the Mouth of the upper Lake, and discharges it self partly into the Mouth of the Lake *Illinois* towards the great Bay of *Puans*; all which shall afterwards be more fully discours'd of, when I come to relate our Return from *Iffati*.

C H A P. X.

A Description of the Lake call'd by the Savages Illinouack, and by the French, Illinois.

THE Lake *Illinois*, in the Natives Language, signifies *The Lake of Men*; for the word *Illinois* signifies a *Man of full Age in the vigour of his Years*. It lies on the West of the Lake *Huron*, standing North and South, and is about a Hundred and twenty, or a Hundred and thirty Leagues in Length, and Forty in Breadth, being in Circuit about Four hundred Leagues.

Leagues. It is call'd by the *Miami's*, *Miscbigonong*, that is, *The Great Lake*. It extends it self from North to South, and falls into the Southern-side of the Lake *Huron*; and is distant from the upper Lake about Fifteen or Sixteen Leagues, its Source lies near a River which the *Iroquese* call *Hobio*, where the River *Miamis* discharges it self into the same Lake.

It is navigable all over, and has to the Westward a great Bay call'd the Bay of *Puans*, by reason that the Savages who now inhabit the Land surrounding this Bay, had deserted their former Habitation, because of some stinking (in *French Puans*) Waters towards the Sea that annoy'd them.

C H A P. XI.

A short Description of the Upper Lake.

THIS Upper Lake runs from East to West, and may have more than a Hundred and fifty Leagues in length, Sixty in breadth, and Five hundred in circuit. We never went quite over it, as we did over all the others I've hitherto mention'd; but we sounded some of its greatest Depths, and it resembles the Ocean, having neither Bottom nor Banks.

I shall not here stay to mention the infinite numbers of Rivers that discharge themselves into this prodigious Lake, which together with that of *Illinois*, and the Rivers that are swallow'd in them, make up the Source of that great River *St. Laurence*, which runs into the Ocean at the Island of *Assumption* towards *New-found-land*. We sail'd upon this River about Six hundred Leagues from its Mouth to its Source.

I've already observ'd, That all these Lakes may well be call'd Fresh-water Seas. They abound extremely

treably in Whitings, that are larger than Carps, and which are extraordinary good; nay, at Twenty or Thirty Fathom Water, there are Salmon-TROUTS taken of Fifty or Sixty pound weight. It were easy to build on the sides of these great Lakes, an infinite Number of considerable Towns, which might have Communication one with another by Navigation for Five hundred Leagues together, and by an inconceivable Commerce which would establish it self among 'em. And to be sure, the Soil, if cultivated by *Europeans*, would prove very fertile. Those that can conceive the Largeness and Beauty of these Lakes, may easily understand, by the help of our Map, what course we steer'd in making the great Discovery hereafter mention'd.

C H A P. XII.

What is the Predominant Genius of the Inhabitants of Canada.

THE *Spaniards* were the first who discover'd *Canada*; but at their first arrival, having found nothing considerable in it, they abandon'd the Country, and call'd it *Il Capo di Nada*; that is, *A Cape of Nothing*; hence by corruption sprung the Word *Canada*, which we use in all our Maps.

Since I left that Country, I understand that all things continue very near in the same State as they were whilst I resided there. Those who have the Government of *Canada* committed to their Care, are mov'd with such a malignant Spirit, as obliges all who do not approve their Design, to moan secretly before God. Men of Probity that are zealous for Religion, find nothing there of what they expected; but, on the contrary, such Repulses and ill Usage, that no body could have foreseen. Several resort
thither

thither, with a design to Sacrifice their Répose and Life, to the Temporal and Spiritual Succour of an Infant-Church; but the loss of Reputation and Honour, are the Sacrifices they're after all forc'd to make. Others go thither in the hopes of spending their Lives in Peace and perfect Concord; whereas they meet with nothing but Jarrs, Divisions, and a Sea of Troubles. In lieu of their fair Hopes, they reap nothing but Crosses and Persecution; and all for not pleasing the Humours of Two or Three Men, who are the over-ruling Wits of that Country. What a vast disparity distance there is betwixt the Humor of these Men, and our *Flemish* Sincerity! I mean that Candour and Evenness of Mind which make up the true Character of a Christian, and is observ'd every where else.

But without entring farther into any Particulars, I leave the Judgment of all unto God; and shall only say, that we who are *Flemings* by Birth, went to *Canada* without any other private Design, having renounc'd our Native Country, meerly for the Service of our Religion, after having quitted all other Enjoyments for embracing a Religious Profession. And therefore it was not a small Surprize to us, upon our arrival in that Country, to see our Sincerity and Uprightness of Heart so forrily entertain'd. There is a certain sort of People, who are jealous of every thing, and whom it is impossible to retrieve from under the first impressions they've receiv'd. Though a Man were never so complaisant, yet if he be not altogether of their Stamp, or if he endeavours to represent Things fairly and rationally unto them, tho' with wise and soft Remonstrances, yet shall he pass among 'em for a Fellow of a turbulent Spirit. Such Conduct as this, does not savour of Christianity, neither doth it bespeak any other Prospect than that of temporal Interest. This Consideration mov'd me oft-times to say to the Three *Flemish* Monks I had brought

brought to *Canada* with me, that it had been much better for us who had quitted all our Enjoyments, and exchang'd them for the Poverty of a Monastick Life, to have gone in Mission among Strangers, to preach Repentance to Infidels, and propagate the Kingdom of our Saviour among barbarous Nations.

And indeed kind Providence seconded my good Intentions; for the Reverend Father *Germain Allart* Recollet, late Bishop of *Vence* in *Provence*, sent me Orders to undertake the Discovery which I am about to relate.

C H A P. XIII.

A Description of my first Imbarkment in a Canow at Quebec, the Capital City of Canada, being bound for the South-West of New-France, or Canada.

I Remain'd Two Years and a half at Fort *Frontenac*, till I saw the House of Mission finish'd, that Father *Luke Buisset* and I had caus'd to be built there. This engag'd us in Travels, which inseparably attend New Establishments. Accordingly we went in a Canow down the River *St. Laurence*; and after a Hundred and twenty Leagues sailing, arriv'd at *Quebec*, where I retir'd into the *Recollets* Convent of *St. Mary*, in order to prepare and sanctifie my self for commencing our Discovery.

And indeed I must frankly own, that when at the foot of the Cross I pensively consider'd this important Mission, weighing it in the Scales of Humane Reason, and measuring the weight of its Difficulties by Humane Force, it seem'd altogether a terrible, as well as a rash and inconsiderate Attempt. But when I look'd up to G O D, and view'd it as an effect of his Goodness, in chusing me for so great a Work, and as his Commandment directed

to me by the Mouth of my Superiours, who are the Instruments and Interpreters of his Will unto me: These Thoughts, I say, presently inspir'd me with Courage and Resolution to undertake this Discovery, with all the Fidelity and Constancy imaginable.

I persuaded my self, that since it was the peculiar Work of God, to open the hard Hearts of that barbarous People, to whom I was sent to publish the glad Tidings of his Gospel, it were as easie for him to compass it by a feeble Instrument, such as I was, as by the most worthy Person in the World.

Having thus prepar'd my self to enter upon the discharge of my *Mission*, and seeing that those who were expected from *Europe* to bear part in this Discovery, were now arriv'd; that the Pilate, Seamen, and Ship-Carpenters were in readiness, and that the Arms, Goods, and Rigging for the Ships were all at hand; I took with me from our Convent a portable Chapel all compleat for my self, and afterwards went and receiv'd the Benediction of the Bishop of *Quebec*, together with his Approbation in Writing; which I likewise receiv'd of Count *Frontenac*, who was a Man that testify'd a great deal of Affection for our *Flemish* Recollects, because of our Candour and Ingenuity; and who was pleas'd to give publick Testimonie to the Generosity of my Undertaking, while we were set at Table.

In short, I embark'd in a little Canou made of the Barks of Birch-Trees, carrying nothing along with me save my portable Chapel, one Blanket, and a Matt of Rushes, which was to serve me for Bed and Quilt; and this was the whole of my Equipage. It was concerted so, that I should go off first, that my Departure might oblige the rest to expedite their Affairs with speed. The Inhabitants of *Canada*, upon both sides the River of *St. Laurence*, betwixt *Quebec* and *Monreal*, entreated me to officiate among
D them,

them, and administer the Sacraments : For they could not assist at Divine Service oftner than five or six times a Year, because there were only Four *Missionaries* in that Country for the extent of Fifty Leagues.

I baptiz'd a Child at a certain Place call'd *St. Hour*, and acquainted the absent *Missionary* of the Place with the same; which done, I continu'd my Voyage; and as I pass'd by *Harpentinie*, the Lord of the Place of one of the ancientest Families in *Canada*, would have sent one of his Sons along with me; but the Canou was too narrow for Four Persons. At length I arriv'd at *Trois Rivieres*, which is a Town only surrounded with Palisado's, lying about Thirty Leagues higher than *Quebec*. Not meeting there Father *Sixte*, a *Recollet-Missionary*, who was gone from thence in Mission, the Inhabitants beseech'd me to preach and perform Divine Service on the First of *October*. The next day, the *Sieur Bonivet*, Lieutenant-General Justiciary of that Place, convey'd me a League up the River *St. Laurence*.

The most laudable Enterprizes are oft-times retarded by surprizing and unexpected Obstacles ; for when I arriv'd at *Monreal*, they debauch'd and entic'd away my Two Boat-Men ; so that I was forc'd to take advantage of an offer which two other Men made to conduct me along in their little shatter'd Boat. Thus was it that those who envy'd the Success of my Undertaking, began to set themselves in opposition to it, and endeavour'd to hinder the most considerable and famous Discovery that has been made in that New World in this Age.

In going up the River, as I pass'd the Lake of *St. Louis*, a little above the Isle of *Monreal*, which is about Twenty five Leagues in circumference, I observ'd that this River *St. Laurence* divides it self into Two Branches ; of which one leads to the ancient Country of the *Hurons*, the *Oustawaucts*, and

and several other Nations situate to the Northward ; and the other to the Country of the *Iroquese*. We went up this last for about Sixty Leagues, in most rapid and horrible Currents, full of great Rocks, where the Water roars Night and Day like Thunder, for Three or Four Leagues together. All which does not hinder the Boat-Men and their Canou's to descend down among these huge Rocks with so much swiftness, that those who are in the Canou are for the time quite blinded. They generally carry Elks-Claws and Shins with them, which they exchange for other Goods, with the Savages of that Country.

I shall not offer to give any circumstantial Account of the Accidents that beset me, which are inseparable Companions of all great Voyages : What is needful to be said is, That I arriv'd at Fort *Catarokouy*, or *Frontenac*, about Eleven a Clock at Night, the next Day after *All-Saints* ; where our Recollet-Fathers, *Gabriel de la Ribourde*, and *Luke Buisset*, Missionaries, receiv'd me with all Expressions of Joy into our House of Mission, which we had caus'd to be built the Year before, upon the brink of the Lake *Ontario*, near to Fort *Frontenac*. This Fort lies about forty four Degrees and some Minutes of Northern Latitude.

I had forgot to acquaint you, that this Lake *Ontario* is form'd by the River *St. Laurence*, and that it is deep enough for large Vessels ; for at seventy Fathom we could discern no Ground. The Waves there are toss'd by mighty Winds which are very frequent ; and their Surges are full as high as those of the Sea, but much more dangerous ; for they are shorter and steeper ; so that a Vessel riding along cannot yield and keep touch with 'em. There are likewise some very plain appearances of a Flux and Reflux ; for they observe the Water to flow and ebb

by little Tides, and that it flows oft-times against the Wind when very high.

The Fishing of this Lake, as of all the other Lakes before-mention'd, is very considerable for all manner of excellent Fishes, especially for Salmon-Trouts, which are there much bigger than our biggest Salmons. The adjacent Country is very fertile, as is confirm'd by the Experience of those who cultivated it in several places. There is excellent Game there for all sorts of Wild Beasts and Wild Fowl: Their Forests are replenish'd with the prettiest Trees in the World, Pines, Cedars, and *Epinetes*, (a sort of Fir-tree very common in that Country.) They have likewise very good Iron-Mines; and no doubt but other Metals might be found if sought after.

While I abode at *Catarokouy*, waiting the coming up of the rest of our Company, I had time to confer with the Reverend Fathers of our Order, concerning what Measures we were to take for converting unto Christ Jesus, such a numerous Train of Nations that had never heard of the Gospel; for it is certain, that such poor helpless Priests as we of the *Franciscan* Order, destitute of all temporal Enjoyments, and cut off from all Humane Means and Assistance, cannot be too cautious in managing the Concerns of so important a Mission, because of the infinite variety of the Tempers of those that were to accompany us in this Voyage; for we had in company some *Flemings*, some *Italians*, and some *Nor-mans*, who were all of different Interests; and it was a very difficult Task for us to comply with, and please so many different Humours; especially when engag'd in such a Voyage as this, in which Laws could not be observ'd with the same Exactness, or retain the same Rigour as in *Europe*, where Men may be entic'd to Good, and scar'd from Evil, by the Love of Rewards or fear of Punishment. But I resign'd my self wholly to the Exercise of my

my Duty, leaving the Conduct of all unto God's Providence, and being ready to encounter whatever Accidents might fall in my way.

The *Iroquese* whom we had brought to settle near this Fort (as was above related) came oft-times to visit us, and made us Presents of the Flesh of Elks, and Roe-bucks; in lieu of which we gave 'em little Knives and some Tobacco, which we had for that purpose. These Savages, when they reflected upon our designed Voyage, us'd to clap their Four Fingers on their Mouths (as they generally do when touch'd with the Admiration of any thing they cannot comprehend) and cry'd aloud, *Otchitagon, Gannonon!* that is, *Bare-Feet, what ye are about to undertake, is of great Importance:* And added, that their most valiant Adventurers had much ado to extricate themselves out of the hands of those barbarous Nations we were going to visit. It is certain, that the *Iroquese* had a most tender Respect for the *Franciscan* Monks, having observ'd them to live all in common, without reserving any particular Possessions.

The Food of the *Iroquese* is in common among 'em. The ancientest Women in the House distribute about to the other Persons in the Family according to their Seniority. When they sit at their Meals, they give freely to eat unto all that come into their Houses; for they would rather chuse to fast for a whole Day, than suffer any one to go from their Houses, without offering them a share of whatever they had.

The *Sieur de la Salle* arriv'd at the Fort some time after me: God preserv'd him (as he did me) from the infinite Dangers he was expos'd to in this great Voyage betwixt *Quebec* and the Fort, having pass'd the great fall of Water mention'd last, and several other most rapid Currents in his way thither. The same Year he sent off Fifteen of our Boat-men, who

were to go before us. They made as if they had been going in their Canou towards the *Illinois*, and the other Neighbouring Nations that border upon the River, call'd by the *Illinois*, *Meschasipi*; that is, a great River; which Name it has in the Map. All this was only to secure to us a good Correspondence with the Savages, and to prepare for us in that Country some Provisions, and other Necessaries, to further this Discovery. But there being among them some villainous Fellows, they stopp'd in the upper Lake at *Missilimakinak*, and diverted themselves with the Savages that live to the Northward of that Lake, lavishing and squandering away the best of the Commodities they had taken with 'em, instead of providing such Things as were needful for building a Ship, which we greatly wanted in order to pass from Lake to Lake to the River *Meschasipi*.

C H A P. XIV.

A Description of my second Imbarkment at Fort Frontenack, in a Brigantine upon the Lake Ontario or Frontenac.

THAT very same Year, on the Eighteenth of November, I took leave of our Monks at Fort Frontenac, and after mutual Embraces and Expressions of Brotherly and Christian Charity, I embark'd in a Brigantine of about ten Tuns. The Winds and the Cold of the Autumn were then very violent, inso-much that our Crew was afraid to go into so little a Vessel. This oblig'd us and the *Sieur de la Motte* our Commander, to keep our course on the North-side of the Lake, to shelter our selves under the Coast, against the North-west Wind, which otherwise wou'd have forc'd us upon the Southern Coast of the Lake. This Voyage prov'd very difficult

cult and dangerous, because of the unseasonable time of the Year, Winter being near at hand.

On the 26th, we were in great danger about Two large Leagues off the Land, where we were oblig'd to lie at an Anchor all that Night at sixty Fathom Water and above; but at length the Wind coming to the North-East, we sail'd on, and arriv'd safely at the further end of the Lake Ontario, call'd by the *Iroquese*, *Skannadario*. We came pretty near to one of their Villages call'd *Tajajagon*, lying about Seven Leagues from Fort Frontenac, or *Catarokouy*.

We barter'd some *Indian* Corn with the *Iroquese*, who could not sufficiently admire us, and came frequently to see us on board our Brigantine, which for our greater security, we had brought to an Anchor into a River, though before we could get in, we run a ground three times, which oblig'd us to put Fourteen Men into Canou's, and cast the Ballast of our Ship over-board to get her off again. That River falls into the Lake; but for fear of being frozen up therein, we were forc'd to cut the Ice with Axes and other Instruments.

The Wind turning then contrary, we were oblig'd to tarry there till the 15th of December, 1678. when we sail'd from the Northern Coast to the Southern, where the River *Niagara* runs into the Lake; but could not reach it that Day, though it is but Fifteen or Sixteen Leagues distant, and therefore cast Anchor within Five Leagues of the Shore, where we had very bad Weather all the Night long.

On the 6th. being St. *Nicholas's* Day, we got into the fine River *Niagara*, into which never any such Ship as ours enter'd before. We sung there *Te Deum*, and other Prayers, to return our Thanks to God Almighty for our prosperous Voyage. The *Iroquese Tjonnontouans* inhabiting the little Village, situated at the mouth of the River, took above Three Hundred Whittings, which are bigger than Carps, and the

best relish'd, as well as the wholesomest Fish in the World; which they presented all to us, imputing their good Luck to our Arrival. They were much surprized at our Ship, which they call'd the *great wooden Canou*.

On the 7th, we went in a Canou two Leagues up the River, to look for a convenient Place for Building; but not being able to get the Canou farther up, because the Current was too rapid for us to master, we went over land about three Leagues higher, though we found no Land fit for culture. We lay that Night near a River, which runs from the Westward, within a League above the great Fall of *Niagara*, which, as we have already said, is the greatest in the World. The Snow was then a Foot deep, and we were oblig'd to dig it up to make room for our Fire.

The next day we return'd the same way we went, and saw great Numbers of Wild Goats, and Wild Turkey-Cocks, and on the 11th, we said the first Mass that ever was said in that Country. The Carpenters and the rest of the Crew were set to work; but Monsieur *de la Motte*, who had the Direction of them, being not able to endure the Fatigues of so laborious a Life, gave over his Design, and return'd to *Canada*, having about two hundred Leagues to travel.

Tho 12th, 13th, and 14th, the Wind was not favourable enough to sail up the River as far as the rapid Current above mention'd, where we had resolv'd to build some Houses.

Whosoever considers our Map, will easily see, that this New Enterprize of building a Fort and some Houses on the River *Niagara*, besides the Fort of *Frontenac*, was like to give Jealousie to the *Iroquese*, and even to the *English*, who live in this Neighbourhood, and have a great Commerce with them. Therefore to prevent the ill Consequences of it, it

was thought fit to send an Embassie to the *Iroquesse*, as it will be mention'd in the next Chapter.

The 15th, I was desir'd to sit at the Helm of our Brigantine, while three of our Men hall'd the same from the Shore with a Rope; and at last we brought her up, and moor'd her to the Shore with a Halser, near a Rock of a prodigious height, lying upon the rapid Currents we have already mention'd. The 17th, 18th, and 19th, we were busie in making a Cabin with Palisadoes, to serve for a Magazine; but the Ground was so frozen, that we were forced to throw several times boiling water upon it to facilitate the beating in and driving down the Stakes. The 20th, 21st, 22^d, and 23^d, our Ship was in great danger to be dash'd in pieces, by the vast pieces of Ice that were hurl'd down the River; to prevent which, our Carpenters made a Capstane to hall her ashore; but our great Cable broke in three pieces; whereupon one of our Carpenters surrounded the Vessel with a Cable, and ty'd to it several Ropes, whereby we got her ashore, tho' with much difficulty, and sav'd her from the danger of being broke to pieces, or carried away by the Ice, which came down with an extreme violence from the great Fall of *Niagara*.

C H A P. XV.

An Account of the Embassie to the Iroquesse Tsonnon-touans.

THESE Savages being the most numerous Nation of that Country, it was requisite to avoid giving them any manner of suspicion; and in order thereto, we thought fit to prepossess those of the little Village of *Niagara* with a favourable opinion of our Design: We told them, that we did not intend to build a Fort on the Bank of their River *Niagara*,
but

but only a grear *Hanger* or Store-house, to keep the Commodities we had brought to supply their Occasions. We accompany'd our Discourse with some small Presents, and told them that we should remain with them, while Six or Seven of our Company went to the great Village of the *Tsonnontouans*, to treat with their chief Captains. And truly it was absolutely necessary to go thither, to remove the Suspicion the Enemies of our Discovery had suggested to that People concerning our Designs.

As I was building a little Cabin of Bark, to perform Divine Service therein, *M. de la Motte*, who was still with us, desir'd me to accompany him in his Embassie, which I was very unwilling to comply with; and therefore intreated him to suffer me to stay there with the greater number of our Men. But notwithstanding the Arguments I us'd, he told me that he was resolv'd to take along with him 7 Men out of 16. that we were in all; that I understood in a manner the Language of their Nation, having been often in conference with them at the Fort of *Frontenac*; that the Glory of God was concern'd in this Undertaking; that he would not trust those that were to accompany him; and in short, that if our Enterprize should miscarry upon that account, the Blame would lie at my door. These with some other secret Reasons, oblig'd me to comply with his Desire, and to follow him.

We travell'd with Shooes made after the *Indian* way, of a single Skin, but without Soles, because the Earth was still cover'd with Snow, and past through Forests for thirty two Leagues together, carrying upon our Backs our Coverings and other Baggage, lying often in open Field, and having with us no other Food but some roasted *Indian* Corn: 'Tis true, we met upon our Road some *Iroquese* a hunting, who gave us some wild Goats, and fifteen or sixteen black Squirrils, which are excellent

cellent Meat. However, after five Days Journey, we came to *Tagarondies*, a great Village of the *Iroqueſe Tſonnontouans*, and were immediately carry'd to the Cabin of their Principal Chief, where Women and Children flock'd to ſee us, our Men being very well dreſt and arm'd. An old Man having according to Cuſtom made publick Cries, to give Notice of our arrival to their Village; the younger Savages waſh'd our Feet, which afterwards they rubb'd over with the Greafe of Deers, wild Goats, and other Beaſts, and the Oil of Bears.

The next Day, which was the Firſt of the Year 1679. after the ordinary Service, I preach'd in a little Chapel made of Barks of Trees, in preſence of two Jeſuites, viz. Father *Garnier* and *Rafeix*; and afterwards we had a Conference with 42 old Men, who make up their Council. Theſe Savages are for the moſt part tall, and very well ſhap'd, cover'd with a ſort of Robe made of Beavers and Wolves-Skins, or of black Squirrels, holding a Pipe or *Calumet* in their Hands. The Senators of *Venice* do not appear with a graver Countenance, and perhaps don't ſpeak with more Maſteſty and Solidity, than thoſe ancient *Iroqueſe*.

This Nation is the moſt cruel and barbarous of all *America*, eſpecially to their Slaves, whom they take above two or three hundred Leagues from their Country, as I ſhall ſhew in my Second Volume; however, I muſt do them the Juſtice to obſerve, that they have many good Qualities; and that they love the *Europeans*, to whom they ſell their Commodities at very reaſonable Rates. They have a mortal Hatred for thoſe, who being too ſelf-intereſted and covetous, are always endeavouring to enrich themſelves to the Prejudice of others. Their chief Commodities are Beavers-Skins, which they bring from above a hundred and fifty Leagues off their Habitations, to exchange them with the *Engliſh* and
Dutch,

Dutch, whom they affect more than the Inhabitants of *Canada*, because they are more affable, and sell them their Commodities cheaper.

One of our own Men, nam'd *Anthony Brossard*, who understood very well the Language of the *Iro-quesse*, and therefore was Interpreter to *M. de la Motte*, told their Assembly,

First, That we were come to pay them a Visit, and smoak with them in their Pipes, a Ceremony which I shall describe anon: And then we deliver'd our Presents, consisting of Axes, Knives, a great Collar of white and blue Porcelain, with some Gowns. We made Presents upon every Point we propos'd to them, of the same nature as the former.

Secondly, We desir'd them, in the next place to give Notice to the five Cantons of their Nation, that we were about to build a Ship, or great wooden Canow above the great Fall of the River *Niagara*, to go and fetch *European* Commodities by a more convenient passage than the ordinary one, by the River *St. Laurence*, whose rapid Currents make it dangerous and long; and that by these means we should afford them our Commodities cheaper than the *English* and *Dutch* of *Boston* and *New-York*. This Pretence was specious enough, and very well contriv'd to engage that barbarous Nation to extirpate the *English* and *Dutch* out of *America*: For they suffer the *Europeans* among them only for the Fear they have of them, or else for the Profit they make in Bartering their Commodities with them.

Thirdly, We told them farther, that we should provide them at the River *Niagara* with a Black-smith and a Gunsmith, to mend their Guns, Axes, &c. having no body among them that understood that Trade, and that for the conveniency of their whole Nation, we would settle those Workmen on the Lake of *Ontario*, at the Mouth of the River *Niagara*.

We

We threw again among them seven or eight Gowns, and some Pieces of fine Cloth, which they cover themselves with from the Waist to the Knees. This was in order to engage them on our side, and prevent their giving ear to any who might suggest ill things of us, entreating them first to acquaint us with the Reports that should be made unto them to our Prejudice, before they yielded their Belief to the same.

We added many other Reasons which we thought proper to persuade them to favour our Design. The Presents we made unto them, either in Cloth or Iron, were worth above 400 Livres, besides some other *European* Commodities, very scarce in that Country: For the best Reasons in the World are not listned to among them, unless they are enforc'd with Presents.

I forgot to observe, that before our Interpreter began to talk of these matters with the Council, M. *de la Motte* order'd him to tell the *Iroquese*, That he would enter into no Particulars in presence of Father *Garnier* a Jesuite, whom he much suspected: Whereupon the old Senators order'd the said Father to withdraw. As I had a great Respect for him, I went out likewise to bear part of the Affront put upon him, and to let M. *la Motte* see that he had no reason to desire me to go to the Council with him, since he had resolv'd to affront in my presence a Jesuite-Missionary, who was amongst that barbarous Nation, without any other Design but to instruct them in the Truth of the Gospel. This was the reason why I was not present in the Council the first Day that we acquainted the *Iroquese* with the subject of our Embassie. I easily observ'd that M. *la Motte* had been bred up amongst People profess'd Enemies of all Monks and Priests; from whence I concluded, that he would lay upon me all the Oversight he might commit in his Negotiation: But I thought

thought it was better he should be deceiv'd by those he employ'd, than to be so my self; and therefore would never meddle with any Temporal Concerns, though earnestly desir'd by him and others. The *Iroquesse*, and other wild Nations, had a great Love for me upon that Account: They have supply'd me with Food for my subsistence, and reliev'd me upon other Occasions, only because they observ'd I was not guided by a private self-Interest; and truly whenever they made me any Presents in return of those I had made unto them, I immediately gave them to their Children.

The next Day the *Iroquesse* answer'd our Discourse and Presents Article by Article, having laid upon the Ground several little pieces of Wood, to put them in mind of what had been said the Day before in the Council; their Speaker, or President, held in his Hand one of these Pieces of Wood, and when he had answer'd one Article of our Proposal, he laid it down, with some Presents of black and white Porcelain, which they use to string upon the smallest Sinews of Beasts; and then took up another Piece of Wood; and so of all the rest, till he had fully answer'd our Speech, of which those Pieces of Wood, and our Presents put them in mind. When his Discourse was ended, the oldest Man of their Assembly cry'd aloud for three times, *Niaoua*; that is to say, *It is well, I thank thee*; which was repeated with a full Voice, and in a tuneful manner by all the other Senators.

'Tis to be observ'd here, that the Savages, though some are more cunning than others, are generally all addicted to their own Interests; and therefore though the *Iroquesse* seem'd to be pleas'd with our Proposals, they were not really so; for the *English* and *Dutch* affording them the *European* Commodities at cheaper Rates than the *French* of *Canada*, they had a greater Inclination for them than for us. That People, tho'
so

so barbarous and rude in their Manners, have however a Piece of Civility peculiar to themselves; for a Man would be accounted very impertinent, if he contradicted any thing that is said in their Council, and if he does not approve even the greatest Absurdities therein propos'd; and therefore they always answer, *Niaoua*; that is to say, *Thou art in the right, Brother; that is well.*

Notwithstanding that seeming Approbation, they believe what they please and no more; and therefore 'tis impossible to know when they are really persuaded of those things you have mention'd unto them, which I take to be one of the greatest Obstructions to their Conversion; For their Civility hindring them from making any Objection, or contradicting what is said unto them, they seem to approve of it, though perhaps they laugh at it in private, or else never bestow a Moment to reflect upon it, such being their Indifference for a future Life. From these Observations, I conclude that the Conversion of that People is to be despair'd of, 'till they are subdu'd by the *Europeans*, and that their Children have another sort of Education, unless God be pleas'd to work a Miracle in their Favour.

While we were still with the *Iroquese*, their Parties made an Excursion toward *Virginia*, and brought two Prisoners with them, one whereof was *Hontouagaha*, which in the Language of the *Iroquese*, signifies a talkative or babling Fellow, and the other of the Nation of *Ganniesinga*, whither some *English Franciscans* were sent Missionaries. The *Iroquese* spar'd the Life of this last, but put to death the former, with such exquisite Torments, that *Nero*, *Domitian*, and *Maximilian*, never invented the like, to exercise the Patience of the Martyrs of the Primitive Church with all.

They use commonly that Inhumanity towards all the Prisoners they take in their Warlike Expeditions; but the worst of it is, that their Torments last some-

sometimes a Month. When they have brought them into their *Canton*, they lay them upon some pieces of Wood, made like a St. *Andrew's* Cross, to which they tie the Legs and Arms of those miserable Wretches, and expose them to Gnats and other Flies, who sting them to death. The Children of those barbarous Parents, cut pieces of Flesh out of their Flanks, Thighs, or some other part of their Bodies; and when they have boyl'd it, force those poor Wretches to eat thereof. The *Iroquese* eat some pieces of it themselves, as well as their Children; and the better to inspire those little Canibals with Hatred for their Enemies, and the desire to extirpate them, they give them their Blood to drink in some little Porrengers made of Barks of Trees. Thus do these poor Creatures end their Life after a long and unspeakable Torment.

That horrid Cruelty oblig'd us to leave the Cabin, or Cotage of the chief Captain of that barbarous People, to shew them the Horrour we had of their Inhumanity, and never eat with them since, but return'd the same way we went through the Woods to the River *Niagara*. And this was all the success of our Ambassie.

C H A P. XVI.

A Description of a Ship of Sixty Tuns, which we built near the Streights of the Lake Erie, during the Winter and Spring of the Year 1679.

ON the 14th of *January* we arrived at our Habitation of *Niagara*, very weary of the Fatigues of our Voyage. We had no other Food but *Indian* Corn; but by good luck for us, the Fishery of the *Whitings*, I have already spoken of, was then in season, and made our *Indian* Corn more relishing. We made

made use of the Water, in which the Fish was boiled, instead of Broth of Meat ; for when it grows cold in the Pot , it congeals it self like some Veal-Broth.

On the 20th arrived *M. de la Salle* from Fort *Frontenac*, from whence he was sent with a great Barque to supply us with Provisions, Rigging, and Tackling for the Ship we design'd to build at the Mouth of the Lake *Erie* ; but that Barque was unfortunately cast away on the Southern Coast of the Lake *Ontario*, by the fault of two Pilots, who could not agree about the Course they were to steer , tho' they were then only within two Leagues of *Niagara*. The Sea-men have call'd this Place the *Mad-Cape*. The Anchors and Cables were sav'd, but several Canows made of Barks of Trees with Goods and Commodities were lost. These disappointments were such as would have dissuaded from any farther Enterprize all other Persons but such who had form'd the generous Design of making a New Discovery in the Country.

M. de la Salle told us, that before he lost his Barque, he had been with the *Iroquoise Tsonmontouans*, and had so dexterously gain'd their Affection, that they had talk'd to him of our Embassie with Applause, and had given him their Consent for the Execution of our Undertaking. This good Intelligence lasted but a little while ; for certain Persons, who made it their Business to cross our Design, inspir'd the *Iroquoise* with many Suspicions about the Fort we were building at *Niagara*, which was in a great forwardness ; and their Suspicions grew so high, that we were oblig'd to give over our Building for some time, contenting our selves with an Habitation encompass'd with Palisado's.

On the 22th of the said Month, we went two Leagues above the great Fall of *Niagara*, where we made a Dock for Building the Ship we wanted for our Voyage. This was the most convenient place

we could pitch upon, being upon a River which falls into the Streight between the Lake *Erie* and the great Fall of *Niagara*. The 26th, the Keel of the Ship and some other Pieces being ready, M. *de la Salle* sent the Master-Carpenter to desire me to drive in the first Pin; but my Profession obliging me to decline that Honour, he did it himself, and promis'd Ten *Louis d'Or's*, to encourage the Carpenter and further the Work. The Winter being not half so hard in that Country as in *Canada*, we employ'd one of the two Savages of the Nation call'd the *Wolf*, whom we kept for Hunting, in building some Cabins made of Rinds of Trees; and I had one made on purpose to perform Divine Service therein on *Sundays*, and other occasions.

M. *de la Salle* having some urgent Business of his own, return'd to Fort *Frontenac*, leaving for our Commander one *Tonti*, an *Italian* by Birth, who had been forc'd to retire into *France* after the Revolution of *Naples*, in which his Father was concern'd. I conducted M. *de la Salle* as far as the Lake *Ontario*, at the Mouth of the River *Niagara*, where he order'd a House to be built for the Smith we had promis'd to the *Iroquesse*; but this was only to amuze them, and therefore I cannot but own that the Savages are not to be blam'd for having not believ'd every thing they were told by M. *la Motte* in his Embassie already related.

He undertook his Journey a-foot over the Snow, having no other Provisions but a little Sack of *Indian* Corn roasted, which fail'd him two Days before he came to the Fort, which is above fourscore Leagues distant from the Place where he left us. However, he got home safely with two Men, and a Dog, who dragg'd his Baggage over the Ice, or frozen Snow.

When I return'd to our Dock, I understood that most of the *Iroquesse* were gone to wage War with a Nation on the other side of the Lake *Erie*. In the mean

mean time, our Men continu'd with great Application to build our Ship; for the *Iroquefe* who were left behind, being but a small number, were not so insolent as before, though they came now and then to our Dock, and express'd some Discontent at what we were doing. One of them in particular, feigning himself drunk, attempted to kill our Smith, but was vigorously repuls'd by him with a red-hot Iron-barr, which, together with the Reprimand he receiv'd from me, oblig'd him to be gone. Some few Days after, a Savage Woman gave us notice, that the *Tsonmontouans* had resolv'd to burn our Ship in the Dock, and had certainly done it, had we not been always upon our Guard.

These frequent Alarms from the Natives, together with the Fears we were in of wanting Provisions, having lost the great Barque from Fort *Frontenac*, which should have reliev'd us, and the *Tsonmontouans* at the same time refusing to give us of their Corn for Money, were a great Discouragement to our Carpenters, whom, on the other hand, a Villain amongst us endeavour'd to seduce: That pitiful Fellow had several times attempted to run away from us into *New-York*; and would have been likely to pervert our Carpenters, had I not confirm'd them in their good Resolution, by the Exhortations I us'd to make every Holy-day after Divine Service; in which I represented to them, that the Glory of God was concern'd in our Undertaking, besides the Good and Advantage of our Christian Colonies; and therefore exhorted them to redouble their Diligence, in order to free our selves from all those Inconveniencies and Apprehensions we then lay under.

The two Savages we had taken into our Service, went all this while a Hunting, and supply'd us with Wild-Goats, and other Beasts for our Subsistence; which encourag'd our Workmen to go on with their Work more briskly than before, insomuch that in a

short time our Ship was in a readiness to be launch'd; which we did, after having bless'd the same according to the use of the *Romish* Church. We made all the haste we could to get it a-float, though not altogether finish'd, to prevent the Designs of the Natives, who had resolv'd to burn it.

The Ship was call'd the *Griffin*, alluding to the Arms of Count *Frontenac*, which have two *Griffins* for *Supporters*; and besides, M. *la Salle* us'd to say of this Ship, while yet upon the Stocks, That he would make the *Griffin* fly above the *Ravens*. We fir'd three Guns, and sung *Te Deum*, which was attended with loud Acclamations of Joy; of which those of the *Iroquese*, who were accidentally present at this Ceremony, were also Partakers; for we gave them some Brandy to drink, as well as to our Men, who immediately quitted their Cabins of Rinds of Trees, and hang'd their Hammocks under the Deck of the Ship, there to lie with more security than a-shoar. We did the like, insomuch that the very same Day we were all on board, and thereby out of the reach of the Insults of the Savages.

The *Iroquese* being return'd from Hunting Beavers, were mightily surpriz'd to see our Ship a-float, and call'd us *Otkon*, that is in their Language, *Most penetrating Wits*: For they could not apprehend how in so short a time we had been able to build so great a Ship, though it was but 60 Tuns. It might have been indeed call'd a moving Fortress; for all the Savages inhabiting the Banks of those Lakes and Rivers I have mention'd, for five hundred Leagues together, were fill'd with Fear as well as Admiration when they saw it.

The best Designs are often cross'd by some unexpected Accidents, which God permits to happen, to try Mens Constancy, as I experienc'd at that time. One of our Crew gave me notice, that the *Sieur de Tonti* our Commander entertain'd some Jealousie of me,

me, because I kept a Journal of all the considerable Things that were transacted; and that he design'd to take the same from me. This Advice oblig'd me to stand upon my Guard, and take all other Precautions, to secure my Observations, and remove the Jealousie that Gentleman had of me: For I had no other Design but to keep our Men to their Duty, and to Exercises of Piety and Devotion, for preventing Disorders, and for the furtherance of our Common Undertaking.

In the mean time, our Enemies spread very disadvantageous Reports of us in *Canada*, where we were represented as rash and inconsiderate Persons, for venturing upon so dangerous a Voyage, from which, in their Opinion, none of us would ever return. This, together with the Difficulties we labour'd under for transporting the Rigging of our Ship, and the other Inconveniencies necessarily attending a Voyage through an unknown Country, Lakes, and Rivers, where no *European* had travell'd before, and the Oppositions from the *Iroquese*, wrought in me an unparallel'd Vexation. But these Reports were still more prejudicial to M. *la Salle*, whose Creditors, without enquiring into the Truth of the Matter, or expecting his Return from Fort *Frontenac*, seiz'd all his Effects in *Canada*; though that very Fort alone, the Property whereof belong'd to him, was worth twice more than all the Debts he ow'd. However, it being impossible to stop the Mouth of our Enemies, who had no other Design, but to oblige us to give over our Enterprize, notwithstanding the Trouble and great Charge we had been at for our Preparations, we resolv'd to wait with Patience, the Opportunities Divine Providence would present us with, and to pursue with Vigour and Constancy our Design.

Being thus prepar'd against all Discouragements, I went up in a Canou with one of our Savages to the

Mouth of the Lake *Erie*, notwithstanding the strong Current which I master'd with great difficulty. I founded the Mouth of the Lake, and found, contrary to the Relations that had been made unto me, that a Ship with a brisk Gale might sail up to the Lake, and surmount the Rapidity of the Current; and that therefore with a strong North, or North-East Wind, we might bring our Ship into the Lake *Erie*. - I took also a view of the Banks of the Streight, and found that in case of need we might put some of our Men a-shoar to hall the Ship, if the Wind was not strong enough.

C H A P. XVII.

The Author's Return to Fort Frontenac.

BEfore we could go on with our intended Discovery, I was oblig'd to return to Fort *Frontenac* to bring along with me two Monks of my own Order, to help me in the Function of my Ministry. I left our Ship riding upon two Anchors, within a league and a half of the Lake *Erie*, in the Streight, between the said Lake and the great Fall of *Niagara*. Mr. *Charon*, an Inhabitant of *Canada*, desir'd to go with me, to avoid the ill Usage he receiv'd from M. *Tonti*, who was an irreconcilable Enemy of all the Subjects of the King of *Spain*, having been, as he thought, hardly us'd by the *Spaniards*, in the Revolution of *Naples*, in which he was concern'd as well as his Father.

We embark'd in a Canou with one of our Savages, and fell down the Streight till we came to the great Fall, where we went a-shoar, and carry'd our Canou over-land to the Foot of the great Rock already mention'd, and from thence we continu'd our Course to the Mouth of the Lake *Ontario*, where we

we found the Barque or Brigantine we have spoken of, which the *Sieur la Forest* had brought from Fort *Frontenac*. *M. la Forest* having spent some Days in that place for Bartering his Commodities with the Natives, we embark'd on board his Brigantine, together with fifteen or sixteen Savage Women, who took the opportunity to sail forty Leagues by Water, which otherwise they had been oblig'd to travel a-foot over-land through the Woods; but they not being us'd to this way of Travelling, fell so sick, that their vomiting created an insufferable Stink in our Ship. Being arriv'd into the River of *Aoueguen*, *M. la Forest* exchange'd some Brandy for Beaver-Skins; but I must confess this Commerce of Strong-Waters was never acceptable to me; for if the Savages drink but a little too much of that Liquor, they are worse and more dangerous than mad Men. Having done our Business in that Place, we sail'd from the Southern to the Northern Coasts of the Lake; and the Wind being favourable we quickly pass'd by the Village which lies on the other side of *Kente* and *Ganeouffe*, but were becalm'd not far from Fort *Frontenac*, which oblig'd me to get into a Canou with two Savages to manage it. We landed in the Island of *Goilans*, so nam'd from Sea-Fouls of that Name, who abound in that Place, and lay their Eggs upon the Sand; where they are hatch'd by the Heat of the Sun. I carry'd away along with us four Baskets full of them, which we found very relishing in Omelets and Pancakes.

I was kindly receiv'd by four Missionaries of my own Order that I found there, *viz.* Father *Gabriel de la Ribourde*, *Luke Buisset*, *Zenobe Mambre*, and *Milithon Watteau*, all Natives of the *Spanish Netherlands*. They told me that they knew how much I had suffer'd in my *Mission* during the Winter, and chiefly from that *Italian* who deserted the Service of his Natural Prince, that is *Tonti* I have already spoken of. I

conceal'd part of the Discouragements I had met with, because I design'd to engage Fathers *Gabriel* and *Zenobe* in our Voyage, and also because I knew that *M. de la Salle*, whose Temper I was acquainted with by my own Experience, made a constant use of this famous Maxim, *Divide & impera*, to dispose with a greater facility of the Men under him to compass his own Designs: And having as great a Passion as he to discover some New Countries, I thought it best to make no Complaints, which he took very kindly, and receiv'd me in a very obliging manner.

That Gentleman was Judicious, and of extraordinary Parts, and very desirous to make himself famous by some New Discoveries, about which we had frequent Conferences. He told me several times, That he knew no Religious Order so fit as ours for improving New Colonies; and he was a very good Judge in those Matters, having spent nine or ten Years in another Order, of which he had disingag'd himself by Consent of the General, who in the Act of his Dismission under his own Hand, gives this noble Character of him, That he had liv'd amongst the Monks of his Order, without giving the least suspicion of *Venial Sin*. These are the very Words of the Act, for I have perus'd it my self. He likewise told me, That being perswaded that we might be very useful to him in his Designs, he was resolv'd to do something in favour of our Order; and having call'd us together on the 27th of May, 1679. he acquainted us, That being Proprietary and Governor of Fort *Frontenac*, he would order in his Will, That no other religious Order but ours, should be suffer'd to settle themselves near the Fort; he afterwards mark'd out a Church-yard; and having created a publick Notary, he order'd him to draw up an Instrument, whereby the said *M. la Salle* gave to our Order the Property of Eighteen Acres of Ground
along

along the side of the Lake *Ontario* near the Fort, and above a Hundred Acres more in the next Forest to be clear'd and grubb'd up. We accepted this Gift in the Name of our Order, and sign'd the Deed, which was the first that ever was transacted in that Country. The Notary's Name was *la Meterie*.

This being done, he desir'd those *Franciscans* that were to come with me, to prepare themselves for their Voyage; but the Wind being against us, we had a sufficient time for it, and to take our Measures concerning our dangerous Mission. We made frequent Visits to the Savages, whom we had persuaded to settle themselves near the Fort, who, together with their Children, whom we had taught to read and write, lamented much our Departure; and assur'd us, That if we did return in a short time, they would persuade the rest of the Inhabitants of the Village of *Ganeouffe*, to come and settle themselves in the Neighbourhood of the Fort.

C H A P. XVIII.

An Account of our Second Embarkment from Fort Frontenac.

AFTER some few Days, the Wind coming fair, Fathers *Gabriel*, *Zenobe*, and I, went on board the Brigantine, and in a short time arriv'd in the River of the *Tsonnontouans*, which runs into the Lake *Ontario*, where we continu'd several Days, our Men being very busie in bartering their Commodities with the Natives, who flock'd in great numbers about us to see our Brigantine, which they admir'd, and to exchange their Skins for Knives, Guns, Powder and Shot, but especially for Brandy, which they love above all things. In the mean time, we had built a small Cabin of Barks of Trees about half

half a League in the Woods, to perform Divine Service therein without interruption, and waited till all our Men had done their Business. *M. la Salle* arriv'd in a Canou about eight Days after; he had taken his course by the Southern Coast of the Lake to go to the Village of the *Tsonnontouans*, to whom he made several Presents to engage them in our Interest, and remove the Jealousie they had conceiv'd of our Undertaking, through the Suggestions of our Enemies. All these Impediments retarded us so long, that we could not reach the River *Niagara* before the 30th of July.

On the 4th of the said Month, I went over-land to the Fall of *Niagara*, with a Serjeant call'd *la Fleur*, and thence to our Dock within six Leagues of the Lake *Ontaria*; but we did not find there the Ship we had built: And met with a new Misfortune; for two young Savages robb'd us of the Bisket we had for our subsistence, which reduc'd us to great Extremity. We found at last a half rotten Canou without Oars, which we mended as well as we could; and having made an Oar, we ventur'd our selves in that weak and shatter'd Canou, and went up the Streight to look for our Ship, which we found riding within a league of the pleasant Lake *Erie*. We were very kindly receiv'd, and likewise very glad to find our Ship well rigg'd, and ready fitted out with all the Necessaries for sailing. She carry'd five small Guns, two whereof were Brass, and three Harquebuzes *a-crock*. The Beak-head was adorn'd with a flying Griffin, and an Eagle above it; and the rest of the Ship had the same Ornaments as Men of War use to have.

The *Iroquesse* were then returning from a Warlike Expedition with several Slaves, and were much surpriz'd to see so big a Ship, which they compar'd to a Fort, beyond their Limits. Several came on board, and seem'd to admire above all things the bigness of
our

our Anchors; for they could not apprehend how we had been able to bring them through the rapid Currents of the River St. Lawrence. This oblig'd them to use often the Word *Gannorom*, which in their Language signifies, That is wonderful. They wonder'd also to find there a Ship, having seen none when they went; and did not know from whence it came, it being about 250 Leagues from *Canada*.

Having forbid the Pilot to attempt to sail up the Currents of the Streight till farther order, we return'd the 16th and 17th to the Lake *Ontario*, and brought up our Bark to the great Rock of *Niagara*, and anchor'd at the foot of the three Mountains, where we were oblig'd to make our *Portage*; that is, to carry over-land our Canou's and Provisions, and other Things, above the great Fall of the River, which interrupts the Navigation: And because most of the Rivers of that Country are interrupted with great Rocks, and that therefore those who sail upon the same, are oblig'd to go over-land above those Falls, and carry upon their Backs their Canou's and other Things. They express it with this Word, To make our *Portage*; of which the Reader is desir'd to take notice, for otherwise the following Account, as well as the Map, would be unintelligible to many.

Father *Gabriel*, though of Sixty five Years of Age, bore with great Vigour the Fatigue of that Voyage, and went thrice up and down those three Mountains, which are pretty high and steep. Our Men had a great deal of trouble; for they were oblig'd to make several Turns to carry the Provisions and Ammunition, and the *Portage* was two Leagues long. Our Anchors were so big, that four Men had much ado to carry one; but the Brandy we gave them was such an Encouragement, that they surmounted cheerfully all the Difficulties of that Journey; and so we got on board our Ship

Ship all our Provisions, Ammunitions, and Commodities.

While we continu'd there, M. *la Salle* told me, That he understood by some of our Men, that I very much blam'd the Intrigues of some Monks of *Canada* with the *Iroquese*, and their Neighbours of *New-York* and *New-Orange*; which oblig'd me in his presence, to tell my Brethren the *Franciscans*, That I perceiv'd that M. *la Salle* was minded to surprize me, and oblige me to revile some Persons, whom he represented as Traders and Merchants; and then abating somewhat of my Tone, I concluded, That notwithstanding the false Reports that had been made to him, I would entertain a good Opinion of those very Persons whom he design'd to make my Enemies; and that I wou'd rather give over our Enterprize than be impos'd upon at that rate. This vigorous Answer surpriz'd M. *la Salle*, who told me, That he was persuaded that those who had made him those Reports, were not honest Men; and that therefore he would take all imaginable care of my Person during the Voyage, and espouse my Interest on all occasions. He was indeed afraid that I should leave him, which had been a great disappointment to his Affairs; for Father *Gabriel* would have left him also. That good Man was come with us without any leave of his Superiour, only upon a Letter from the Provincial Commissioner of *Canada*, whose Name was *Valentin le Roux*, wherein he told M. *la Salle*, that the said Father *Gabriel* might go along with him. However, he did not believe that he would do so without an Order in Writing; and for that reason came, some Days after our departure, to Fort *Frontenac*, where M. *la Salle* obtain'd that Order from him, for fear of being accus'd to have expos'd a Man of that Age to so dangerous a Voyage, in which he was like to perish, as really he did, as we shall see by and by.

M. la Salle understanding that I and the said Father Gabriel, were gone to view the great Fall of *Niagara*, he came to us with some Refreshments to reconcile himself with me, and prevent my return to *Canada*. He met with no great difficulty ; for the great desire I had to discover a New Country, made me very easie ; so that we return'd on board our Ship in the beginning of *August*, 1679.

C H A P. XIX.

An Account of our Third Embarkment from the Mouth of the Lake Erie.

WE have already observ'd, that the *Spaniards* were the first Discoverers of *Canada*, and that the *Recollets* are the first Religious Order, who attended the *French Colonies* in that Country. Those Good Men liv'd in great Friendship with the Savages call'd *Hurons*, by whom they understood that the *Iro-quesse* made frequent Excursions beyond *Virginia* and *New-Sweden*, near a great Lake, from whence they brought a great many Slaves ; which gave occasion to the *Hurons* to call that Lake *Erige*, or *Erike* ; that is to say, the Lake of the Cat. The Inhabitants of *Canada* have softned that Word, and call it *Erie*, as we have already observ'd.

We endeavour'd several times to sail up that Lake ; but the Wind being not strong enough, we were forc'd to wait for it. In the mean time, M. la Salle caus'd our Men to grub up some Land, and sow several sorts of Pot-Herbs and Pulse, for the convenience of those who should settle themselves there, to maintain our Correspondence with Fort *Frontenac*. We found there a great quantity of wild Cherries and *Rocambol*, a sort of Garlick, which grow naturally in that Ground. We left Father *Melithon*, with
some

some Work-men, at our Habitation above the Fall of *Niagara*; and most of our Men went a-shoar to lighten our Ships, the better to sail up the Lake.

The Wind veering to the North-East, and the Ship being well provided, we made all the Sail we could, and with the help of Twelve Men who hall'd from the Shoar, overcame the Rapidity of the Current, and got up into the Lake. The Stream is so violent, that our Pilot himself despair'd of Success. When it was done, we sung *Te Deum*, and discharg'd our Cannon and other Fire-Arms, in presence of a great many *Iroquese*, who came from a Warlike Expedition against the Savages of *Tintonba*; that is to say, the Nation of the Meadows, who live above four hundred Leagues from that Place. The *Iroquese* and their Prisoners were much surpriz'd to see us in the Lake, and did not think before that, we should be able to overcome the Rapidity of the Current: They cry'd several times *Gannorom*, to shew their Admiration. Some of the *Iroquese* had taken the measure of our Ship, and immediately went for *New-York*, to give notice to the *English* and *Dutch* of our sailing into the Lake: For those Nations affording their Commodities cheaper than the *French*, are also more belov'd by the Natives.

On the 7th of *August*, 1679. we went on board, being in all four and thirty Men, including two *Re-collects* who came to us, and sail'd from the Mouth of the Lake *Erie*, steering our Course West-South-West, with a favourable Wind; and though the Enemies of our Discovery had given out, on purpose to deter us from our Enterprize, That the Lake *Erie* was full of Rocks and Sands, which render'd the Navigation impracticable, we run above twenty Leagues during the Night, though we foundered all that while. The next Day the Wind being more favourable, we made above five and forty Leagues, keeping at an equal distance from the Banks of the Lake, and doubled a
Cape

Cape to the West-ward, which we call'd the Cape of *St. Francis*. The next Day we doubled two other Capes, and met with no manner of Rocks or Sands. We discover'd a pretty large Island towards the South-West, about seven or eight Leagues from the Northern Coast; that Island faces the Streight that comes from the Lake *Huron*.

The 10th, very early in the Morning, we pass'd between that Island and 7 or 8 lesser ones; and having sail'd near another, which is nothing but Sand, to the West of the Lake, we came to an Anchor at the Mouth of the Streight, which runs from the Lake *Huron* into that of *Erie*. The 11th, we went farther into the Streight, and pass'd between two small Islands, which make one of the finest Prospects in the World. This Streight is finer than that of *Niagara*, being thirty Leagues long, and every-where one League broad, except in the middle, which is wider, forming the Lake we have call'd *St. Claire*. The Navigation is easie on both sides, the Coast being low and even. It runs directly from North to South.

The Country between those two Lakes is very well situated, and the Soil very fertile. The Banks of the Streight are vast Meadows, and the Prospect is terminated with some Hills covered with Vineyards, Trees bearing good Fruit, Groves, and Forests, so well dispos'd, that one would think Nature alone could not have made, without the Help of Art, so charming a Prospect. That Country is stock'd with Stags, Wild-Goats, and Bears, which are good for Food, and not fierce as in other Countries; some think they are better than our Pork. Turkey-Cocks and Swans are there also very common; and our Men brought several other Beasts and Birds, whose Names are unknown to us, but they are extraordinary relishing.

The Forests are chiefly made up of Walnut-trees, Chesnut-trees, Plum-trees, and Pear-trees, loaded with their own Fruit and Vines. There is also abundance of Timber fit for Building ; so that those whose who shall be so happy as to inhabit that Noble Country, cannot but remember with Gratitude those who have discover'd the way, by venturing to sail upon an unknown Lake for above one hundred Leagues. That charming Streight lies between 40 and 41 Degrees of Northern Latitude.

C H A P. XX.

An Account of what hapned in our Passage from the Lake Erie, unto the Lake Huron.

I Had often advis'd M. *la Salle* to make a Settlement upon the Streight,, between the Lake *Erie* and *Ontario*, where the Fishery is more plentiful ; for that Settlement would have been very advantageous to us, to maintain our Communication with *Fort Frontenac*. I told him also, that it were fit to leave in that Settlement the Smith he and M. *la Motte* had promis'd to the *Iroquese* ; and that it would be a means to engage that wild Nation in our Interest, and to trade only with us, whereby he would grow rich in a little time : But M. *la Salle*, and the Adventurers who were with him, would not hearken to my Advice ; and told me, that they would make no Settlement within 100 Leagues of their Fort, lest other *Europeans* should get before them into the Country they were going to discover. This was their Pretence ; but I soon observ'd that their Intention was to buy all the Furs and Skins of the remotest Savages, who, as they thought, did not know their Value ; and so enrich themselves in one single Voyage.

I endeavour'd also to persuade him to make a Settlement upon this charming Streight; for being in the midst of so many Nations of Savages, we could not but have a good Trade amongst them. This was the Argument I made use of; but the main Reason, which I kept to my self, was to have an Opportunity to preach the Gospel to those ignorant Nations. M. *la Salle* would by no means hearken to my Advice, and told me he wonder'd at my Proposal, considering the great Passion I had a few Months before for the Discovery of a New Country.

The Current of that Streight is very violent, but not half so much as that of *Niagara*; and therefore we sail'd up with a brisk Gale, and got into the Streight between the Lake *Huron*, and the Lake *St. Claire*; this last is very shallow, especially at its Mouth. The Lake *Huron* falls into this of *St. Claire* by several Canals, which are commonly interrupted by Sands and Rocks. We founded all of them, and found one at last about one League broad without any Sands, its Depth being every where from three to eight Fathoms Water. We sail'd up that Canal, but were forc'd to drop our Anchors near the Mouth of the Lake; for the extraordinary quantity of Waters which came down from the upper Lake, and that of *Illinois*, because of a strong North-West Wind, had so much augmented the Rapidity of the Current of this Streight, that it was as violent as that of *Niagara*.

The Wind turning Southerly, we sail'd again; and with the help of twelve Men, who hall'd our Ship from the Shoar, got safely the 23th of *August* into the Lake *Huron*. We sung *Te Deum* a second time, to return our Thanks to the Almighty for our happy Navigation. We found in that Lake a large Bay, the Banks of which the ancient *Hurons* inhabited. They were converted to the Christian Religion

on by the first *Franciscans* that came into *Canada*; but the *Iroqueſe* have in a great meaſure deſtroy'd that Nation.

C H A P. XXI.

An Account of our Navigation on the Lake Huron to Miſſilimakinak.

HAVING thus travell'd above 300 Leagues from *Quebec* to the *Lake Huron*, notwithstanding the rapid Currents and Lakes we went through, we continu'd our Voyage from the Mouth of this Lake, ſteering our Courſe North-North-Eaſt; but the next day, finding our ſelves near the Land, we ſteer'd North-North-Weſt, and croſs'd a Bay call'd *Sakinam*, which may be thirty Leagues broad. The 24th, we run the ſame Courſe, but were becalm'd between ſome Iſlands, where we found but two Fathoms Water, which oblig'd us to make an eaſie ſail part of the Night, to look for a good Anchorage, but in vain; and the Wind turning then Weſterly, we bore to the North, to avoid the Coaſt till the Day appear'd. We founded all the Night long, becauſe our Pilot, though a very underſtanding Man, was ſomewhat negligent. The 25th, we lay becalm'd till Noon, but then run North-Weſt with a brisk Southerly Gale. The Wind turning South-Weſt, we bore to the North to double a Cape; but then the Wind grew ſo violent, that we were forc'd to lie by all the Night. The 26th, the Storm continuing, we brought down our Main Yards and Top-Maſt, and let the Ship drive at the Mercy of the Wind, knowing no place to run into to ſhelter our ſelves. *M. la Salle*, notwithstanding he was a Courageous Man, began to fear, and told us we were undone; and therefore every body fell upon his Knees to ſay his Prayers,
and

and prepare himself for Death, except our Pilot, whom we could never oblige to pray; and he did nothing all that while but curse and swear against *M. la Salle*, who, as he said, had brought him thither to make him perish in a nasty Lake, and lose the Glory he had acquir'd by his long and happy Navigations on the Ocean, However, the Wind being somewhat abated, we hoisted up our Sail, and so we drove not above two Leagues. The 27th, in the Morning, we continu'd our Course North-West with a South-East Wind, which carry'd us the same Day to *Missilimakinak*, where we anchor'd in a Bay at six Fathoms Water, upon a slimy white Bottom. That Bay is shelter'd by the Coast, and a Bank lying from the South-West to the North; but it lies expos'd to the South Winds, which are very violent in that Country.

Missilimakinak is a Neck of Land to the North of the Mouth of the Streight, through which the Lake of the *Illinois* discharges it self into the Lake *Huron*. That Canal is about three Leagues long, and one broad. About fifteen Leagues to the Eastward of *Missilimakinak*, there is another Point at the Mouth of the Streight, whereby the upper Lake runs into that of *Huron*; which Streight is about five Leagues broad at its Mouth, and about fifteen Leagues long; but it grows narrow towards the Fall of *St. Mary*, which is a rapid Stream interrupted by several Rocks. However a Canow may go up by one side, but it requires a great Fatigue; and therefore the safest and easiest way is to make a Portage above the Fall, to go and trade with the Savages inhabiting the Banks of the upper Lake.

We lay between two different Nations of Savages; those who inhabit the Point of *Missilimakinak* are called *Hurons*, and the others, who are about three or four Leagues more Northward, are *Outtaouatz*. Those Savages were equally surpriz'd to see

a Ship in their Country ; and the Noise of our Cannon, of which we made a general Discharge, fill'd them with great astonishment. We went to see the *Outtaouatz*, and celebrated Mass in their Habitation. *M. la Salle* was finely dress'd, having a Scarlet Cloak with a broad Gold Lace, and most of his Men with their Arms attended him. The Chief Captains of that People receiv'd us with great Civilities after their own way, and some of them came on board with us to see our Ship, which rode all that while in the Bay or Creek I have spoken of. It was a diverting Prospect to see every Day above sixscore Canous about it, and the Savages staring and admiring that fine Woodden Canou, as they call'd it. They brought us abundance of Whittings, and some Trouts of 50 and 60 pound Weight.

We went the next Day to pay a Visit to the *Hurons*, who inhabit a rising Ground on a Neck of Land over-against *Missilimakinak*. Their Villages are fortified with Pallisado's of 25 foot high, and always situated upon Eminences or Hills. They receiv'd us with more Respect than the *Outtaouatz*, for they made a triple Discharge of all the small Guns they had, having learn'd from some *Europeans*, that it is the greatest Civility amongst us. However, they took such a Jealousie to our Ship, that, as we understood since, they endeavour'd to make our Expedition odious to all the Nations about them.

The *Hurons* and *Outtaouatz* are in Confederacy together against the *Iroquese* their Common Enemy. They sow *Indian Corn*, which is their ordinary Food; for they have nothing else to live upon, except some Fish they take in the Lakes. They boil it with their *Sagamittee*, which is a kind of Broth made with Water and the Flour of the Corn, which they beat in a Mortar, made of the Trunk of a Tree, which they make hollow with Fire.

There is another Settlement of Savages near the Fall of *St. Mary*. The *French* call them *Leapers*, because they live near that great Fall which they call a *Leap*. These subsist together by Hunting Staggs, Elks, Beavers, and other Beasts, as also upon the Whittings we have already spoken of; who are taken with so much difficulty in this Place, that none but themselves are able to catch any. They sow no *Indian* Corn, because of the thick Fogs that are commonly on the Banks of the upper Lake, which stifle Corn before it grows.

Missilimakinak and the Fall of *St. Mary*, are the two most considerable Passages that all the Savages have of the West and North; for there are above two hundred Canou's that come through these Passes every Year, to carry their Commodities to the *French* at *Montreal* below *Fort Frontenac*.

Our Enterprize had been very successful hitherto; and we had reason to expect, that every body would have contributed to carry on vigorously our great Design to promote the Glory of God, as well as the Good of our Colonies: However, some of our own Men oppos'd it as much as they could; they represented us to the *Outtoauats* and their Neighbours as dangerous and ambitious Adventurers, who design'd to engross all the Trade of Furrs and Skins, and invade their Liberty, the only thing which is dear to that People. The fifteen Men that *M. la Salle* had sent before him, had been seduc'd and almost drawn from his Service. The Goods which he had given them to exchange with the Natives, were dissipated and wasted; and instead of advancing as far as the *Missouri*, as they were order'd, they remain'd amongst the *Hurons*, notwithstanding the Exhortations and the Prayers of *M. Tonti* who Commanded them.

Our Men went into the Country to trade with the Natives, and engag'd themselves too far; so that they did not return to *Missilimakinak* till *November*:

M. *la Salle* being told that the Winds made the Navigation of the Lake very dangerous in the beginning of the Winter, resolv'd to continue his Voyage without tarrying any longer for the return of his Men.

C H A P. XXII.

An Account of our Sailing from Missilimakinak, into the Lake of the Illinois.

ON the 2d of September we weigh'd Anchor, and sail'd into the Lake of the *Illinois*; and came to an Island just at the Mouth of the Bay of the *Puans*, lying about forty Leagues from *Missilimakinak*: It is inhabited by some Savages of the Nation call'd *Pontouatami's*, with whom some of the Men M. *la Salle* had sent the Year before, had barter'd a great quantity of Furrs and Skins. We found our Men in the Island, who began to be very impatient, having so long waited our arrival.

The chief of that Nation had been formerly in *Canada*, and had an extraordinary Respect for *Couronville*, who was Governour thereof; and upon that account receiv'd us with all the civility imaginable, and caus'd his Men to dance the *Calumet*, or Pipe, before us. This is a piece of Civility we shall describe anon. Our Ship was riding in the Bay about thirty Paces from the furthest Point of the Land, at a pretty good Anchorage, where we rode safely, notwithstanding a violent Storm which lasted four Days. And upon this occasion, I cannot omit, without Injustice, the Generosity of that Brave Captain, who seeing our Ship toss'd up by the Waves, and not knowing it was able to resist, ventur'd himself in his little Canou, and came to our assistance. He had the good Luck to get safe on board, and

told us he would at all times venture his Life, for saving the Children of *Ommontio*, Governour of *Canada*, who was his particular Friend. It must be observ'd, that that Governour is call'd *Ommontio* by all the Savages.

M. *la Salle*, without asking any body's Advice, resolv'd to send back his Ship to *Niagara*, laden with Furs and Skins to discharge his Debts; our Pilot and five Men with him were therefore sent back, and order'd to return with all imaginable speed, to join us toward the Sourthen Parts of the Lake, where we should stay for them among the *Illinois*. They sailed the 18th of *September* with a Westerly Wind, and fir'd a Gun to take their leave. Tho' the Wind was favourable, it was never known what Course they steer'd, nor how they perish'd; for after all the Enquiries we have been able to make, we could never learn any thing else but the following Particulars.

The Ship came to an Anchor to the North of the Lake of the *Illinois*, where she was seen by some Savages, who told us that they advis'd our Men to sail along the Coast, and not towards the middle of the Lake, because of the Sands that make the Navigation dangerous when there is any high Wind. Our Pilot, as I said before, was dissatisfy'd, and would steer as he pleas'd, without hearkning to the Advice of the Savages, who, generally speaking, have more Sense than the *Europeans* think at first; but the Ship was hardly a League from the Coast, when it was toss'd up by a violent Storm in such a manner, that our Men were never heard of since; and it is suppos'd that the Ship struck upon a Sand, and was there bury'd. This was a great loss for M. *la Salle* and other Adventurers; for that Ship, with its Cargo, cost above sixty thousand Livres. This will seem incredible to many, but not to those who will consider that the Rigging, Anchors, and Goods were

brought by Canon's from *Quebec* to Fort *Frontenac*; which is such a vast Charge, that the Carriage of every hundred Weight, either of Anchors, Cabels, and the like, cost eleven Livres.

C H A P. XXIII.

An Account of our Embarkment in Canou's to continue our Discovery, from the Bay of Puans, to the Miamis on the Lake of the Illinoi's.

WE left the *Poutouatamis* on the 19th of September to continue our Voyage, being fourteen Men in all, in four Canou's. I had the Conduct of the smallest, though it carry'd 500 Weight and two Men; but my Fellow being newly come from *Europe*, and consequently unskill'd to manage these sort of Boats, I had the whole trouble upon me in any stormy Weather. The other four Canou's were laden with a Smith's Forge, and Instruments, and Tools for Carpenters, Joyners, and Sawers, besides our Goods and Arms.

We steer'd to the South towards the Continent, from which the Island of the *Poutouatamis* is near forty Leagues distant; but about the middle of the way, in the Night-time, we were surpriz'd with a sudden Storm, whereby we were in great danger. The Waves came into our Canou's; and the Night was so dark, that we had much ado to keep Company together: However, we got a-shoar the next Day, where we continu'd till the Lake grew calm again, which was four Days after. In the mean time our Savage went a Hunting, but could kill nothing but a *Porcupine*, which made our Gourds and *Indian* Corn more relishing.

The Weather being fair, we continu'd our Voyage the 25th, and row'd all the Day, and best part of the Night, all along the Western Coast of the Lake of the *Illinois*; but the Wind growing too high for us, we thought fit to land upon a Rock, where we had nothing to shelter our selves against the Snow and the Rain but our Blankets. We continu'd there two Days, having made a little Fire with the Wood the Waves did supply us with. The 28th we proceeded on our Voyage; but the Wind forc'd us towards Night on a Rock cover'd with thick Bushes, where we remain'd three Days, and there made an end of all our Provisions, which consisted of Gourds and *Indian* Corn we had brought from the *Poutouatami's*. Our Canou's were so loaded, that we could not provide our selves for a longer time, and we expected to find provisions enough in our way.

We left that dismal Place the 1st of *October*, and after twelve Leagues rowing, though fasting, came to another Village of the *Poutouatami's*, who came upon the Shoar to receive us: But *M. la Salle* would not suffer any one to land, lest his Men should run away; and notwithstanding the bad Weather, we follow'd him three Leagues farther. We were in so great danger, that he flung himself into the Water with his three Men, and carry'd a-shoar their Canou upon their Shoulders, for else it had been broken to pieces. We were all oblig'd to do the same; and by these means sav'd our Canou's and Goods. I carry'd upon my Back that good Man Father *Gabriel*, whose great Age did not permit him to venture himself into the Water.

As we had no manner of Acquaintance with the Savages of the Village near which we landed, our Men prepar'd themselves to make a vigorous Defence in case they were attack'd; and in order to it, possess'd our selves of a rising Ground, where we could not
be

be surpriz'd, and where we might make head against a great number of Savages. We sent afterwards three Men to buy Provisions in the Village with the *Calumet* or Pipe of Peace, which the *Poutouatami's* of the Island had given us. I had forgot to mention that when they made us that Present, they observ'd a great many Ceremonies; and because that *Calumet* of Peace is the most sacred Thing amongst the Savages, I think fit to describe the same in the next Chapter.

C H A P. XXIV.

A Description of the Calumet, or Great Pipe.

THIS *Calumet* is the most mysterious Thing in the World among the Savages of the Continent of the Northern *America*; for it is us'd in all their important Transactions: However, it is nothing else but a large Tobacco-Pipe made of Red, Black, or White Marble: The Head is finely polish'd, and the *Quill*, which is commonly two Foot and a half long; is made of a pretty strong Reed, or Cane, adorn'd with Feathers of all Colours, interlac'd with Locks of Womens Hair. They tie to it two Wings of the most curious Birds they find, which makes their *Calumet* not much unlike *Mercury's* Wand, or the Staff Ambassadors did formerly carry when they went to treat of Peace. They sheath that Reed into the Neck of Birds they call *Huars*, which are as big as our Geese, and spotted with Black and White; or else of a sort of Ducks who make their Nests upon Trees, though Water be their ordinary Element, and whose Feathers are of many different Colours. However, every Nation adorns the *Calumet* as they think fit according to their own Genius and the Birds they have in their Country.

A Pipe,

A Pipe, such as I have describ'd it, is a Pass and safe Conduct amongst all the Allies of the Nation who has given it ; and in all Embassies, the Ambassadors carry that *Calumet* as the Symbol of Peace, which is always respected ; for the Savages are generally persuaded, that a great Misfortune would befall 'em, if they violated the Publick Faith of the *Calumet*. All their Enterprizes, Delarations of War, or Conclusion of Peace, as well as all the rest of their Ceremonies, are sealed, if I may be permitted to say so, with this *Calumet*. They fill that Pipe with the best Tobacco they have, and then present it to those with whom they have concluded any great Affair, and smoak out of the same after them. I had certainly perish'd in my Voyage, had it not been for this *Calumet* or Pipe, as the Reader will observe in perusing the following Account.

Our three Men, provided with this Pipe as a Pass, and very well Arm'd, went to the little Village of the Savages, which was about three Leagues from the place where we landed ; but they found no body therein ; for the Savages having heard that we had refus'd to land at the other Village, thought we were Enemies, and therefore had left their Habitation. Our Men finding no body in their Cabins, took some *Indian* Corn, and left in stead of it some Goods, to let them see that we were no Robbers, nor their Enemies. However, the Savages, to the number of twenty Men, arm'd with Axes, small Guns, Bows, and a sort of Club, which in their Language they call *Break-heads*, advanc'd near the Place where we stood ; whereupon M. la Salle, with four Men very well arm'd, went toward them to speak with them, and desir'd them to come near us, for fear, as he said, a Party of our Men, who were gone a Hunting, should meet with them and kill them. They were persuaded to sit down at the foot of the Eminence where we were posted, and M. la
Salle

Salle spoke to them all the while of the subject matter of his Voyage, which he had undertaken for their good and advantage, as he told them. This was only to amuse them till our three Men return'd; who appearing with the *Calumet* of Peace, the Savages made a great Shout, and rose, and began to dance. We made them some Excuse because of our Men having taken some of their Corn, and told them they had left the true Value of it in Goods; which they took so well, that they sent immediately for more, and gave us the next Day as much as we could conveniently carry in our Canou's. They retir'd towards the Evening; and *M. la Salle* order'd some Trees to be cut down, and laid cross the way, to prevent any Surprize from the Savages.

The next Morning about ten a Clock, the Oldest of them came to us with their *Calumet* of Peace, and entertain'd us with some wild Goats they had taken. We return'd them our Thanks, and presented them with some Axes, Knives, and several little Toys for their Wives, with which they were very much pleas'd.

C H A P. XXV.

A Continuation of our Discovery; with an Account of our Navigation to the farther End of the Lake of the Illinois in our Canous.

WE left that Place the 2d of *October*, and continu'd our Voyage all along the Coast of the Lake, which is so steep that we could hardly find any Place to land; and the Violence of the Wind oblig'd us to drag our Canou's sometimes to the top of the Rocks, to prevent their being dash'd in pieces by the Waves. The stormy Weather

ther lasted four Days, during which we suffer'd very much; for every time we went a-shoar we were forc'd to step into the Water, and carry our Canou's upon our Shoulders, and to do the like when we embark'd again. The Water being very cold, most of us were sick, and our Provisions fail'd us again; which, together with the Fatigues of Rowing, caus'd old Father *Gabriel* to faint away in such a manner, that I verily thought he could not live; however, I brought him again to his Senses by means of some Confection of *Hyacinth*, which I found very useful in our Voyage. We had no other Subsistence but a handful of *Indian* Corn once every four and twenty Hours, which we roasted, or else boyled in Water; and yet we row'd almost every Day from Morning 'till Night. Our Men found some Hawthorn-Berries and other wild Fruit, which they ate so greedily, that most of them fell sick, and were thought to be poison'd; yet the more we suffer'd, the more by the Grace of God I was strong and vigorous; so that I could often out-row all our other Canou's.

Being in that distress, He that takes care of the meanest Creatures, afforded us an unexpected Relief; We saw upon the Coast a great many Ravens and Eagles; from whence we conjectur'd that there was some Prey; and having landed on that Place, we found above the half of a fat wild Goat, which the Wolves had strangled. This Provision was very acceptable to us, and the rudest of our Men could not but praise the Divine Providence, who took so particular a care of us.

Having thus refresh'd our selves, we continu'd our Voyage directly to the Southern Parts of the Lake, finding every day the Country finer, and the Weather more temperate. On the 16th of *October* we met with abundance of Game: Our Savage kill'd several Staggs and wild Goats, and our Men

a great many Turkey-Cocks very fat and big, where-with we provided our selves for several Days, and so embark'd again. On the 18th we came to the farther end of the Lake, where we landed: Our Men were immediately sent to view the Country round about that Place, and found a great quantity of ripe Grapes, each Grain of which was as big as a Damascen: We fell'd several Trees to gather them, and made pretty good Wine, which we kept in Gourds, and bury'd in Sand to prevent its growing sour. All the Trees in that Country are loaded with Vines, which, if cultivated, would make as good Wine as any in *Europe*. That Fruit was more relishing to us than Flesh, because we wanted Bread.

Our Men discover'd some fresh Prints of Mens Feet, which oblig'd us to stand upon our Guard, without making any Noise till we had rested some time. That Order was not long observ'd; for one of our Men having espy'd a Bear upon a Tree, shot him down dead, and dragg'd him to our Cabins. M. *la Salle* was very angry with him, and to avoid any Surprise, put a Sentinal near our Canou's, under which we had put our Goods to shelter 'em from the Rain.

There were sixscore Savages of the Nation of the *Outtouagamis* inhabiting the Bay of *Puans*, encamp'd not far from us; who having heard the Noise our Man had made, took the Alarm, and sent some of their Men to discover who we were. These creeping upon their Bellies, and keeping great Silence, came in the Night to our Canou's, and stole away the Coat of M. *la Salle's* Footman, and part of the Goods that were under it: But the Sentinel having heard some Noise, call'd us, and every body run to his Arms. The Savages being discover'd, and thinking we were more numerous, cry'd, That they were Friends; but we answer'd them, That Friends did not come in so unseasonable Hours; and that they

they look'd rather like Robbers, who design'd to murder us: Their Captain reply'd, That having heard the Noise of a Gun, and knowing that none of their Neighbours use Fire-Arms, they thought we were a Party of *Iroquese*, and were come with a Design to murder them; but that understanding we were some *Europeans* of *Canada*, whom they lov'd as their Brethren, they could hardly wait till Day to visit us, and smook in our *Calumet*, or large Pipe. This is the usual Compliment of the Savages, and the greatest Mark they can give of their Affection.

We seem'd to be satisfy'd with their Reasons, and gave leave to four of them only to come to us, telling them that we would not suffer a great number because their Youth was addicted to steal, and that our Men could not suffer it. Four old Men came to us, whom we entertain'd till Day, and then they retir'd. After they were gone, we found we had been robb'd; and knowing the Genius of the Savages, and that if we did suffer this Affront, we should be expos'd every Night to their Insults; it was resolv'd to exact Satisfaction from them: Accordingly M. *la Salle* went abroad with some of our Men, to endeavour to take some of them Prisoners; and having discover'd one of their Hunters, he seiz'd him, and examin'd him concerning the Robbery they had committed: He confess'd the Fact, with all the Circumstances; whereupon he left him to the custody of two Men; and advancing farther into the Country, took another, whom he brought along with him, and having shew'd him his Companion, sent him back to tell their Captain, That he would kill him, unless they return'd what they had robb'd.

C H A P. XXVI.

An Account of the Peace made between us and the Out-touagami's.

THE Savages were mightily puzzl'd at the Message sent by M. *la Salle*; for having cut in pieces the Coat, and other Goods they had stoll'n, and divided the Buttons, they could not make a full Restitution; and therefore they resolv'd to deliver their Man by force; and accordingly the next Morning, *October 30.* they advanc'd to attack us. The *Peninsula* where we were encamp'd, was separated from the Forest, where the Savages lay, by a little sandy Plain; and there being near the Wood two or three Eminences, M. *la Salle* resolv'd to possess himself of the higher, and detach'd five Men for that Service, following himself at a little distance with the rest, every one having roll'd his Covering about the left Arm, to defend themselves against the Arrows of the Savages; for there was not above eight of them who had Fire-Arms.

The Savages seeing our Men advancing up to them, were frighted; and the youngest retir'd behind a great Tree, but their Captains stood their ground, while we possessed our selves of the Eminence I have already mention'd. I left the two *Franciscans* reading the usual Prayers, and went with our Men to exhort them to their duty; for having seen some Battels and Sieges in *Europe*, I was very little afraid of the Savages. I saw two of our Men turning pale; but when I had spoken to them, they seem'd hearty enough; and M. *la Salle* was mightily pleas'd with my Exhortations. However I consider'd the consequence this Quarrel might have, and how advantageous and Christian-like it would be to prevent

vent the effusion of Blood, and end it in a friendly manner ; therefore I advanc'd towards the oldest Savage, who seeing me without any Arms , thought I came with a design to be Mediator, and receiv'd me with Civility ; but in the mean time one of our Men having observ'd, that one of the Savages had a piece of the Cloth they had stoll'n about his Head, came up to him, and snatch'd it away. That vigorous Action so much terrify'd the Savages, that though they were near sixscore Men against eleven, they presented me the Pipe or *Calumet* of Peace, which I receiv'd. M. *la Salle* having pass'd his Word that they might come safe to him, two old Men told him in a Speech, That they did not approve what their young Men had done : That they would have restor'd the Goods taken, if it had been possible ; but that having been cut in pieces, they could do no more but offer to restore what was not spoil'd, and pay for the rest. They presented us at the same time with some Gowns made of Beavers-Skins to appease M. *la Salle*, who having frown'd a little, told them , That as he design'd to wrong or affront no body, he would neither suffer any wrong or affront to be put upon him ; but that seeing they did not approve what their Youth had done, and were willing to make satisfaction for the same, he accepted their Offers, and would be their Friend. The Conditions were fully perform'd, and the Peace happily concluded without farther Hostility.

The next Day was spent in Dancing, Feasting, and Speeches ; and the Chief Captain having taken a particular notice of the Behaviour of the *Franciscans*, said, *These Grey Coats we value very much ; they go barefoot as well as we : They scorn our Beaver-Gowns, and refuse all other Presents : They carry no Arms to kill us : They flatter and make much of our Children, and give them Knives and other Toys, without expecting any Reward. Those amongst us who have been in Canada, tell us, That*

Onnontio (so they call the Governour) loves them very much; and that they have quitted all to come to see us. Therefore be pleas'd, Thou who art Captain of these Men, to leave amongst us one of these Grey Coats, whom we shall bring to our Village, when we have kill'd wild Bulls, and make much of him. Thou art likewise Master of these Warriours, and therefore remain amongst us, instead of going among the Illinois, who have resolv'd to murther thee and all thy Soldiers: And how canst thou resist so great a Nation?

The Captain of the Savages told us, that the Illinois had burnt alive an Iroquese, who confess'd that the War the Iroquese made against them, had been fomented by the Inhabitants of Canada, who hated them. He told us also many other things, which frightened our Men, and made M. la Salle very melancholly; for all the Savages we had already met, had told us almost the same thing. However, knowing how great was the Malice of our Enemies, and therefore suspecting that these things might have been suggested to the Savages, in order to oblige us to give over our Enterprize; or else that it was a Contrivance of the Neighbours of the Illinois, who were afraid that they should grow too powerful, if we taught them the use of Fire-Arms, we resolv'd to go on with our Voyage, taking in the mean time all necessary Precautions for our Security. We told the Outtouagami's, That we were much oblig'd to them for their kind Offers and Advice; but that we were not afraid of the Illinois; for the Spirits know how to gain the Friendship of any Nation, by Reason or by Force. 'Tis to be observ'd, that the Savages being not able to conceive how the Europeans can have more Wit than they, and admiring some Toys and other Things we bring from Europe, own that they are but Men, but that we are Spirits, and therefore call us so.

The next Day, *November 1.* we embark'd on the Lake of the *Illinois*, and came to the Mouth of the River of the *Miami's*, which runs from the South, and falls into the Lake. We had appointed that Place for our Rendezvous, and expected to meet there the twenty Men we had left at *Missilimakinak*; who being order'd to come along the other Coast of the Lake, had a much shorter cut than we, and besides their Canou's were not so much loaded as ours. However, we found no body there, nor any Mark whereby it could appear that they had been in that Place. We resolv'd to tell *M. la Salle*, that it was not fit to tarry any longer for them, nor expose our selves to the Hardship of the Winter; and that it would be then very difficult to meet with the *Illinois*, because they divided themselves into Tribes or Families, to subsist more conveniently; that if we were forc'd to remain there during the Winter, and that the Game should come to fail us, all his Men would certainly perish with Hunger; whereas we might expect to find some *Indian* Corn amongst the *Illinois*, who would rather supply with Provisions fourteen Men than two and thirty. We told him likewise, that it would be in a manner impossible to continue our Voyage till the Winter was over, if he tarry'd any longer, because the Rivers would be frozen all over, and therefore we could not make use of our Canou's. Notwithstanding these Reasons, *M. la Salle* told us, that it was necessary to expect the rest of his Men, because we should be then in a Condition to discover our selves to the *Illinois*, and make an Alliance with them; whereas we should be expos'd to their Mercy and Scorn, if we offer'd to enter their Country with so few Men; but that in the mean time he would endeavour to meet with some of that Nation, and gain them by Presents to learn their Language; concluding, that although all his Men should run away, he would remain alone

with our Savage, and find means to maintain the Three Missionaries, meaning I and my two Brethren.

Having therefore call'd his Men together, he told them, That he was resolv'd to expect the rest of their Companions; and propos'd to build a Fort in that Place for securing our Ship; for we did not know then that it had perish'd; as also to secure our Goods and our selves too, in case of any Disgrace. Our Men seem'd very much dissatisfied; but he us'd so many Reasons, that they told him at last, they would entirely follow his Direction.

C H A P. XXVII.

An Account of the Building of a Fort and a House near the River of Miamis.

JUST at the Mouth of the River, there was an Eminence, with a kind of a Platform naturally fortify'd: It was pretty high and steep, of a Triangular Form, defended on two sides by the River, and on the other by a deep Ditch, which the Fall of Waters had made. We fell'd the Trees that were on the top of that Hill, and having clear'd the same from Bushes for about two Musket-shot, we began to build a Redoubt of forty Foot long, and eighty broad, with great square pieces of Timber laid one upon the other; and prepar'd a great Number of Stakes of about twenty five Foot long, to drive into the Ground, to make our Fort the more inaccessible on the River side. We employ'd the whole Month of *November* about that Work, which was very hard, though we had no other Food but the Bears-flesh our Savage kill'd. Those Beasts are very common in that place, because of the great quantity of Grapes they find there; but their Fle-

bein

being too fat and lufhious, our Men began to be weary of it, and defir'd leave to go a hunting, to kill fome wild Goats. *M. la Salle* deny'd them that Liberty, which caus'd fome Murmurs amongft them; and it was but unwillingly that they continu'd their Work. This together with the approach of the Winter, and the apprehenfion *M. la Salle* had that his Ship was loft, made him very melancholy, though he conceal'd it as much as he could. We had made a Cabin, wherein we perform'd Divine Service every Sunday, and Father *Gabriel* and I, who preach'd alternatively, took care to take fuch Texts as were fuitable to our prefent Circumftances, and fit to infpire us with Courage, Concord, and brotherly Love. Our Exhortations produc'd a very good Effect, and hindred our Men from deserting, as they design'd.

We founded in the mean time, the Mouth of the River, and having found a Sand on which our Ship might ftrike, we fix'd two great pofts therein, to which we faftned Bear-Skins as fo many Buoys to direct the Courfe of our Ship through the Channel ſhe ought to pafs; and for a greater Precaution, two Men were ſent back to *Missilimakinak*, to wait there till the return of our Ship, and ſerve as Pilots.

The 20th of November *M. Tonti* arriv'd with two Canou's laden with Stags and Deers, which was a welcom Refreshment to our Men, but he did not bring above half of our Men with him, the reſt being left on the other ſide of the Lake, within three Days Journey from our Fort. *M. la Salle* was very angry with him upon that Account, being afraid that they would run away.

They told us that our Ship had not put into the Bay of *Missilimakinak*, as they were order'd, and that they had heard nothing of her ſince we fail'd, notwithstanding they had enquir'd as much as they could, from the Savages inhabiting the Coaſt of the Lake. This confirm'd the Suſpicion, or rather the

Belief we had that she was cast away: However, M. *la Salle* continu'd the Building of his Fort, which was at last perfected, and call'd *Fort Miamis*.

The Winter drawing so nigh, and M. *la Salle* being afraid that the Ice would stop his Voyage, sent back M. *Tonti* to fetch the Men he had left, and command them to come to him immediately; but meeting with a violent Storm, their Canou was driven against the Coast, and broke in pieces, whereby they lost their Guns and Equipage, and were oblig'd to return over-land. Few Days after, all our Men arriv'd except two, who deserted; so that we prepar'd our selves to continue our Voyage, the Rains that fell about that time having melted the Ice, and made the Rivers navigable.

C H A P. XXVIII.

A Continuation of our Voyage from Fort Miamis to the River of the Illinois.

WE embark'd on the *Third of December*, being Three and thirty Men in Eight Canou's, and having left the Lake of the *Illinois*, went up the River *Miamis*, which we had founded before. We made about five and twenty Leagues to the South-West, but cou'd not discover the Place where we were to land, and carry our Canou's and Equipage into the River of the *Illinois*, which falls into that of *Misshasipi*; that is, in the Language of the *Illinois*, the *Great River*. We had already pass'd the place of the *Portage*, but not knowing whereabouts we were, we thought fit to stay there, to expect M. *la Salle*, who was landed to view the Country: We staid a great while, and seeing he did not come, I went very far into the Woods with two of our Men, who fir'd their Guns to give him notice of the Place where

where we were; and in the mean time two others went up the River in their Canou, in order to find him out; but all our Endeavours were in vain, so that we return'd towards Evening.

The next Day I went up the River my self, but hearing nothing of him, I came back, and found our Men very much perplex'd, fearing he was lost; but about four a-clock in the Afternoon he return'd to us, having his Face and Hands as black as Pitch. He brought along with him two Beasts as big as Musk'd Rats, whose Skins was very fine, and like Ermins. He had kill'd them with a Stick, as they hung by their Tails to the Boughs of Trees.

He told us, that the Marshes he had met in his way, had oblig'd him to fetch a great Compass; and that being much annoy'd by the Snow which fell very thick, it was past Midnight before he could arrive upon the Banks of the River; where he fir'd his Gun twice, and that hearing no answer, he concluded we were gone up higher, and had therefore march'd that way. He added, that after three Hours March, he saw a Fire upon a little Hill, whither he went directly, and hail'd us several Times, but hearing no Answer, he approach'd and found no Body near the Fire, but only some dry Herbs, upon which a Man was a little while afore laid, as he conjectur'd, because they were still warm. He suppos'd that it was a Savage, who lay thereabouts in an Ambuscade, and therefore call'd to him in two or three Languages; but no Body answering, he cry'd as loud as he could, that to shew he was not afraid of him, he was going to lie in his room. However, for fear of any Surprise, he cut several Boughs and Bushes, to imbarass the way, and sat down by the Fire, which had made his Hands and Face black, as I have observ'd. Having thus warm'd and rested himself, he lay down upon the dry Herbs the Savage had gather'd under a Tree, and slept very

G 4

well,

well, notwithstanding the Frost and Snow. Father *Gabriel* and I desir'd him to remain with his Men, and not expose himself for the future, because the Success of our Enterprize depended only upon him; and he promis'd us to follow our Advice.

Our Savage, who remain'd behind for hunting, finding none of us at the Place of the *Portage*, came up higher on the River, and told us, we had mist it; therefore he was sent back with all our Canou's, except one which I kept; for *M. la Salle* was so weary, that he was oblig'd to lie there that Night. I made a little Cabin with Mats of Marsh Rushes, wherein we lay together, but were in great danger of being burnt, for it took fire by an unhappy Accident, while we were fast asleep. The next Morning we joyn'd our Men at the Place of *Portage*, where Father *Gabriel* had made the Day before several Crosses upon the Trees, that we might not miss it another time. We found there a great quantity of Horns and Bones of wild Bulls, as also some Canou's the Savages had made with the Skins of Beasts, to cross the River with their Provisions. This *Portage* lies at the farther End of a large Champion piece of Ground; and at the other End, to the West, lies a Village of the Savages *Miami's*, *Mascouteins*, and *Oiatinon*, who live together. The River of the *Illinois* has its Source near that Village, and springs out of some marshy Lands, which are as so many Quagmires, that one can scarcely walk over them. The Head of the River is only a League and half from that of *Miamis*, and so our *Portage* was not long. We mark'd the way from Place to Place with some Trees for the convenience of those we expected after us; and left at the *Portage*, as well as Fort *Miamis*, Letters hanging down from the Trees, containing *M. la Salle's* Instructions to our Pilot, and the other five and twenty Men, who were to come with him

C H A P. XXIX.

An Account of our Embarkment at the Head of the River of the Illinois.

THIS River is navigable within a hundred Paces from its Source ; I mean for Canou's of Bark of Trees, and not for others ; but it increases so much a little way from thence, that it is as deep and broad as the *Meuse* and the *Sambre* joyn'd together. It runs through vast Marshes, and though it be rapid enough, it makes so many Turnings and Windings, that after a whole Day's Journey, we found we were hardly two Leagues from the Place we left in the Morning. That Country is nothing but Marshes full of Alder-Trees and Rushes ; and we could have hardly found for forty Leagues together, any Place to plant our Cabins, had it not been for the Frost, which made the Earth more firm and solid.

Having past through great Marshes, we found a vast Plain, on which nothing grows but only some Herbs, which were dry at that time, and burnt, because the *Miami's* set them on fire every Year, in their hunting wild Bulls, as I shall mention anon. We found no manner of Game, which was a great Disappointment to us, our Provisions beginning to fail. Our Men travell'd about sixty Miles without killing any thing else but a lean Stag, a small wild Goat, some few Swans, and two Bustards, which was no sufficient Maintenance for two and thirty Men. Most of them were so weary of this laborious Life, that they would have run away, if possible, and gone to the Savages, who were not very far from us, as we judg'd by the great Fires we saw in the Plain. There must be an innumerable quantity

quantity of wild Bulls in that Country, since the Earth is cover'd with their Horns. The *Miami's* hunt them towards the latter end of *Autumn*.

We continu'd our Course upon this River very near the whole Month of *December*; but toward the latter end of the said Month, 1679. we arriv'd at the Village of the *Illinois*, which lies near one hundred and thirty Leagues from Fort *Miamis*, on the Lake of the *Illinois*. We suffer'd very much in this Passage; for the Savages having set the Herbs of the Plain on fire, the wild Bulls were fled away, and so we could kill but one, and some Turkey-Cocks. God's Providence supported us all the while; and when we thought that the Extremities we were reduc'd to, were past all hopes of Remedy, we found a prodigious big wild Bull, lying fast in the Mud of the River. We kill'd him and had much ado to get him out of the Mud. This was a great Refreshment to our Men, and reviv'd their Courage; for being so timely and unexpectedly reliev'd, they concluded that God approv'd our Design.

C H A P. XXX.

A Description of the Hunting of the wild Bulls and Cows, by the Savages; Of the bigness of those Beasts; and of the Advantages and Improvements that may be made of the Plain where they Pasture; and of the Woods thereabouts.

WHEN the Savages discover a great Number of those Beasts together, they likewise assemble their whole Tribe to encompass the Bulls, and then set on fire the dry Herbs about them, except in some places, which they leave free; and therein lay themselves in Ambuscade. The Bulls seeing the Flame round about them, run away through those Passages



quantity of wild Bulls in that Country, since the Earth is cover'd with their Horns. The *Miami's* hunt them towards the latter end of *Autumn*.

We continu'd our Course upon this River very near the whole Month of *December*; but toward the latter end of the said Month, 1679. we arriv'd at the Village of the *Illinois*, which lies near one hundred and thirty Leagues from Fort *Miamis*, on the Lake of the *Illinois*. We suffer'd very much in this Passage; for the Savages having set the Herbs of the Plain on fire, the wild Bulls were fled away, and so we could kill but one, and some Turkey-Cocks. God's Providence supported us all the while, and when we thought that the Extremities we were reduc'd to, were past all hopes of Remedy, we found a prodigious big wild Bull, lying fast in the Mud of the River. We kill'd him and had much ado to get him out of the Mud. This was a great Refreshment to our Men, and reviv'd their Courage; for being so timely and unexpectedly reliev'd, they concluded that God approv'd our Design.

C H A P. XXX.

A Description of the Hunting of the wild Bulls and Cows, by the Savages; Of the bigness of those Beasts; and of the Advantages and Improvements that may be made of the Plain where they Pasture; and of the Woods thereabouts.

WHEN the Savages discover a great Number of those Beasts together, they likewise assemble their whole Tribe to encompass the Bulls, and then set on fire the dry Herbs about them, except in some places, which they leave free; and therein lay themselves in Ambuscade. The Bulls seeing the Flame round about them, run away through those Passages

Page 90 Part 1st







Passages where they see no Fire ; and there fall into the Hands of the Savages, who by these Means will kill sometimes above sixscore in a day. They divide these Beasts according to the number of each Family ; and send their Wives to slay them, and bring the Flesh to their Cabins. These Women are so lusty and strong, that they carry on their Back two or three hundred weight, besides their Children ; and notwithstanding that Burthen, they run as swiftly as any of our Soldiers with their Arms.

Those Bulls have a very fine Coat, more like Wooll than Hair, and their Cows have it longer than the Males ; their Horns are almost black, and much thicker, though somewhat shorter than those of *Europe* : Their Head is of a prodigious Bigness, as well as their Neck very thick, but at the same time exceeding short : They have a kind of Bump between the two Shoulders : Their Legs are big and short, cover'd with long Wooll ; and they have between the two Horns an ugly Bush of Hair, which falls upon their Eyes, and makes them look horrid.

The Flesh of these Beasts is very relishing, and full of Juice, especially in *Autumn* ; for having grazed all the Summer long in those vast Meadows, where the Herbs are as high as they, they are then very fat. There is also amongst them abundance of Stags, Deers, and wild Goats ; and that nothing might be wanting in that Country, for the Convenience of those Creatures, there are Forests at certain distances, where they retire to rest, and shelter themselves against the violence of the Sun.

They change their Country according to the Seasons of the Year ; for upon the approach of the Winter, they leave the North to go to the Southern Parts. They follow one another, so that you may see a Drove of them for above a League together, and stop all at the same place ; and the Ground where they use to lie is cover'd with wild Purslain ; which makes
me

me believe, that the Cows Dung is very fit to produce that Herb. Their Ways are as beaten as our great Roads, and no Herb grows therein. They swim over the Rivers they meet in their Way, to go and graze in other Meadows. But the Care of the Cows for their Young Ones, cannot be too much admir'd; for there being in those Meadows a great quantity of Wolves, who might surprize them, they go to calve in the Islands of the Rivers, from whence they don't stir till the young Calves are able to follow them; for then they can protect them against any Beast whatsoever.

These Bulls being very convenient for the Subsistence of the Savages, they take care not to scare them from their Country; and they pursue only those whom they have wounded with their Arrows: But these Creatures multiply in such a manner, that notwithstanding the great Numbers they kill every Year, they are as numerous as ever.

The Women spin the Wooll of these Bulls, and make Sacks thereof to carry their Flesh in, which they dry in the Sun, or broil upon Gridirons. They have no Salt, and yet they prepare their Flesh so well, that it keeps above four Months without breeding any Corruption; and it looks then so fresh, that one wou'd think it was newly kill'd. They commonly boil it, and drink the Broth of it instead of Water. This is the ordinary Drink of all the Savages of *America*, who have no Commerce with the *Europeans*. We follow'd their Example in this particular; and it must be confess'd, that that Broath is very wholesome.

The Skin of one of those Bulls usually weighs about sixscore Pound; but the Savages make use only of the thinnest part, as that of the Belly, which they dress with the Brains of all sorts of Beasts, and thereby make it as soft as our *Shamoi's* Skins. They paint them with several Colours, and adorn with pieces
of

of Porcupine-Skins, red and white, the Gowns they make thereof, to appear splendidly at Feasts, and on other solemn Occasions. They make other Gowns against cold Weather, wherewith they cover themselves during the Winter; but these plain Gowns, cover'd with curl'd Wooll, are, in my Opinion, the finest as well as the best.

When they kill any Cows, their young Calves follow them, and lick their Hands. They bring them to their Children, who eat them, after having for some time play'd with them. They keep the Hoofs of those little Creatures, and when they are very dry, they tie them to some Wand, and move them according to the various Postures of those who sing and dance. This is the most ridiculous Musical Instrument that I ever met with.

These young Calves might be easily tam'd, and made use of to plow the Land, which would be very advantageous to the Savages. These Bulls find in all Seasons Forrage to subsist by; for if they are surpriz'd in the Northern Countries by the Snow, before they can reach the Southern Parts, they have the dexterity to remove the Snow, and eat the Grass under it. They bellow like our *European* Bulls, but not so frequently.

Though these Bulls are taller and bigger than those of *Europe*, they are however so swift, that no Savage can overtake them: They are so timorous, that they run away from any Man, except when they are wounded; for then they are dangerous, and often kill the Savage who pursues them. 'Tis a diverting Prospect to see near the Banks of the Rivers, several Drovers of those Bulls of about four or five hundred together, grazing in those green Meadows.

There are several other Beasts in that Country, as I observ'd in my Account of *Louisiana*, as Stags, wild Goats, Beavers, and Otters; there are also Bustards, which have an excellent Taste; Swans, Tortoises, Turkey-

Turkey-Cocks, Parrots, and Partridges. There are also an incredible quantity of Pelicans, whose Bills are of a prodigious Size ; and a great many other sorts of Birds, and other Beasts.

The Rivers are plentifully stock'd with Fish, and the Soil is very fertile. The Forests afford all manner of Timber fit for Building, and especially Oak, which is there much better than in *Canada*, and would be excellent for building Ships. That Timber might be squar'd, saw'd, and ready prepar'd upon the Spot, and brought over into *Europe* ; which would be very convenient, and give time to the Trees of our Forests to grow, whereas they are in a manner exhausted.

There are in those Forests abundance of Trees bearing good Fruit, and of wild Vines, which produce Bunches of Grapes a foot and a half long, and of which when ripe may be made very good Wine. One may see there also large Countries cover'd with good Hemp, growing naturally six or seven foot in height. In short, by the Experiments I made among the *Istati*, and the *Illinois*, I am perswaded that the Soil of that Country would produce all manner of Corn, Fruits, &c. even more plentifully than in any part of *Europe*, seeing there are two Crops every Year.

The Air is very temperate, clear, and open, and the Country water'd with several Lakes, Brooks and Rivers, which are for the most part navigable. The Gnats and other little Flies that are so troublesome in *Canada*, and some other dangerous Beasts, are unknown in this Country ; which in two Years time might supply its Inhabitants, if cultivated, with all things necessary for Life, without wanting any thing from *Europe* ; and the Islands of *America*, with Wine, Bread, and Flesh. The *Bucaniers* might kill in that Country a greater number of Bulls than in all the Islands they resort to. There are Mines of Coal,

Coal, Slate, and Iron ; and several Pieces of fine red Copper, which I have found now and then upon the Surface of the Earth, makes me believe that there are Mines of it ; and doubtless of other Metals and Minerals, which may be discover'd one time or another. They have already found Allom in the Country of the *Iroquese*.

C H A P, XXXI.

An Account of our Arrival to the Country of the Illinois, one of the most numerous Nations of the Savages of America.

THIS Word *Illinois* comes, as it has been already observ'd, from *Illini*, which in the Language of that Nation signifies *A perfect and accomplish'd Man*. The Villages of the *Illinois* are situated in a Marshy Plain, about the Fortieth Degree of Latitude, on the Right side of the River, which is as broad as the *Meuse*. Their greatest Village may have in it Four or five hundred Cabins, every Cabin five or six Fires, and each Fire one or two Families, who live together in great Concord. Their Cabins are cover'd with Mats of flat Rushes, so closely sew'd together, that no Wind, Rain, or Snow can go thro' it. The Union that reigns amongst that Barbarous People, ought to cover with Shame the Christians ; amongst whom we can see no Trace of that brotherly Love, which united the Primitive Professors of Christianity.

When the Savages have gather'd in their *Indian* Corn, they dig some Holes in the Ground, where they keep it for Summer-time, because Meat does not keep in hot Weather ; whereas they have very little occasion for it in Winter ; and 'tis then their Custom to leave their Villages, and with their whole Families to go a hunting wild Bulls, Beavers, &c. carrying
with

with them but a small quantity of their Corn, which however they value so much, that the most sensible Wrong one can do them, in their Opinion, is to take some of their Corn in their absence. We found no Body in the Village, as we had foreseen; for the *Illinois* had divided themselves, according to their Custom, and were gone a hunting. Their Absence caus'd a great Perplexity amongst us; for we wanted Provisions, and yet durst not meddle with the *Indian* Corn the Savages had laid under Ground, for their Subsistence, and to sow their Lands with. However, our Necessity being very great, and it being impossible to continue our Voyage without any Provisions, especially seeing the Bulls and other Beasts had been driven from the Banks of the River, by means of Fire, as I have related in my former Chapter, M. *la Salle* resolv'd to take about forty Bushels of Corn, in hopes to appease the Savages with some Presents.

We embark'd again with these fresh Provisions, and continu'd to fall down the River, which runs directly to the South. Four Days after, being the First of *January*, 1680. we said Mass; and having wish'd a happy New-year to M. *la Salle*, and to all others, I thought fit to make a patheticall Exhortation to our Grumblers, to encourage them to go on chearfully, and inspire them with Union and Concord. Father *Gabriel*, *Zenobe*, and I, embrac'd them afterwards; and they promis'd us to continue firm in their Duty. The same Day we went thro' a Lake form'd by the River, about seven Leagues long, and one broad. The Savages call that Place *Pimiton*; that is, in their Tongue, *A Place where there is abundance of fat Beasts*. When the River of the *Illinois* freezes, which is but seldom, it freezes only to this Lake, and never from thence to the *Meschasipi*, into which this River falls. M. *la Salle* observ'd here the Elevation of the Pole, and found that this Lake lies

in the Latitude of thirty three Degrees and forty five Minutes.

We had been inform'd that the *Illinois* were our Enemies ; and therefore M. *la Salle* had resolv'd to use all manner of Precaution when we should meet with them ; but we found our selves on a sudden in the middle of their Camp, which took up both sides of the River. M. *la Salle* order'd immediately his Men to make their Arms ready, and brought his Cannon's into a Line, placing himself to the Right, and M. *Tonti* to the Left ; so that we took almost the whole breadth of the River. The *Illinois*, who had not yet discover'd our Fleet, were very much surpriz'd to see us coming so swiftly upon them ; for the Stream was extraordinary rapid in that Place : Some run to their Arms ; but most took their Flight, with horrid Cries and Howlings.

The Current brought us in the mean time to their Camp ; and M. *la Salle* went the very first a-shoar, follow'd by his Men ; which encreas'd the Consternation of the Savages, whom we might have easily defeated ; but as it was not our Design, we made a Halt to give them time to recover themselves, and see that we were no Enemies. M. *la Salle* might have prevented their Confusion, by shewing his *Calumet*, or Pipe of Peace ; but he was afraid the Savages wou'd impute it to our Weakness.

The *Illinois* being exceedingly terrify'd, tho' they were several thousand Men, tender'd us the *Calumet* of Peace ; and then we offer'd them ours ; which being accepted on both sides, an extraordinary Joy succeeded the terrible Fears the had been under upon our landing. They sent immediately to fetch back those who fled away ; and Father *Zenobe* and I went to their Cabins. We took their Children by the Hand, and express'd our Love for them with all the Signs we cou'd : We did the like to the Old Men, having Compassion of those poor Creatures, who

H

are

are so miserable as to be ignorant of their Creator and Redeemer.

Most of the Savages, who had run away upon our landing, understanding that we were Friends, return'd; but some others had been so terrifi'd, that they did not come back till three or four Days after, that they were told that we had smoak'd in their *Calumet* of Peace. In the mean time we had discours'd the Chief of the *Illinois* by our Interpreter, and told them, that we were Inhabitants of *Canada*, and their Friends; that we were come to teach them the Knowledge of the Captain of Heaven and Earth, and the Use of Fire-arms, which were unknown to them; with several other things relating to their Advantage. We were forc'd to make use of these metaphorical Expressions, to give them some *Idea* of the Supreme DEITY. They heard our Discourses with great attention, and afterwards gave a great Shout for Joy, repeating these Words: *Tepatoui-Nika*; That is, *Well, my Brother, my Friend*; *thou hast done very well*. These Savages have more Humanity than all the others of the Northern *America*; and understanding the Subject of our Errand, express'd great Gratitude thereupon. They rubb'd our Legs and Feet near the Fire, with Oil of Bears and Wild Bulls Fat, which, after much Travel, is an incomparable Refreshment; and presented us some Flesh to eat, putting the three first Morfels into our Mouth with great Ceremonies. This is a great piece of Civility amongst them.

M. *la Salle* presented them with some Tobacco from *Martinico*, and some Axes; and told them, that he had desir'd them to meet to treat about some weighty Matters; but that there was one in particular, which he would discourse them upon before any other. He added, that he knew how necessary their Corn was to them; but that being reduc'd to an unspeakable Necessity when he came to their Village,

lage, and seeing no probability to subsist, he had been forc'd to take some Corn from their Habitations without their leave : That he would give 'em Axes, and other things, in lieu of it, if they could spare it ; that if they could not, they were free to take it again ; concluding, That if they were not able to supply us with Provisions, he design'd to continue his Voyage, and go to their Neighbours, who would heartily give him what was necessary for his Subsistence ; but however, to shew them his Kindness, he would leave a Smith among them, to mend their Axes and other Tools we should supply them with. The Savages having consider'd our Proposals, granted all our Demands, and made Alliance with us.

We were oblig'd to use many Precautions to make our Alliance lasting and solid, because our Enemies did their utmost to prevent it. The very same Day we came to the Camp of the *Illinois*, one of the Chief Captains of the *Mascoutens*, whose Name was *Monso*, arriv'd also with some *Miami's*, and other young Men, who brought with them some Axes, Knives, Kettles, and other Goods. Our Enemies had chosen him for that Embassie, knowing that the *Illinois* would rather believe him than the *Miami's*, because they had never been in War with the *Mascoutens*. This Savage arriv'd pretty late, and caball'd all the Night long against us : He told them, That M. *la Salle* was a great Friend of the *Iroquese*, who were to follow him speedily, with some of the *Europeans* from *Canada*, to invade them, and destroy their Nation ; and that he was sent by some of the *Europeans* themselves, who could not approve that Treachery of their Country-men, to give them notice thereof, that they might not be surpriz'd. He enforc'd his Arguments, by presenting them with all the Goods he had brought along with him ; and thinking he had gain'd his Point, went back the same Night, fearing, with much Reason, that M. *la Salle* would re-

sent that Master-piece of Villany, and punish him for it. The *Illinois* were assembled in Council all the Night, (for they never treat of any secret Affairs during the Day) and did not know what Measures to take; for tho' they did not believe all the Stories the *Mascouten* had made unto them, yet the next Day they appear'd very indifferent, and mistrustful of us. As they seem'd to contrive something against us, we began to be uneasie; but M. *la Salle*, who suspected that their sudden Alteration towards us was the Effect of a false Report, made such Presents to one of their Chiefs, that he told him all the Particulars of the Embassie and Negotiation of *Monso*; and thereby enabled him to remove the Jealousie of the *Illinois*, and confound the wicked Designs of our Enemies.

He manag'd that Point with such Dexterity, that he did not only regain the Friendship of that Nation, but likewise undeceiv'd the *Mascouten* and *Miami's*; and was Mediator between the latter and the *Illinois*, who by his means made an Alliance, which lasted all the while we remain'd in those Countries.

C H A P. XXXII.

An Account of what hapned to us while we remain'd among the Illinois, till the Building of a New Fort.

SOME Days after, *Nikanape*, Brother to *Cheffagouasse*, the most considerable Chief of the *Illinois*, who was then absent, invited us to a great Feast; and before we sat down to eat, made a long Speech, very different from what the other Captains had told us upon our arrival. He said that he had invited us not so much to give us a Treat, as to endeavour to dissuade us from the Resolution we had taken, to go down to the Sea by the great River *Meschasipi*. He added, That several had perish'd, having ventur'd upon

upon the same Enterprize, the Banks of that River being inhabited by barbarous and bloody Nations, whom we should be unable to resist, notwithstanding our Valour and the Goodness of our Arms ; that that River was full of dangerous Monsters, as Crocodiles, Tritons , (meaning a Sea-monster) and Serpents ; that supposing the Barque we design'd to build was big enough to protect us against the Dangers he had mention'd, yet it would avail us nothing against another which was inevitable : For, said he, *the River Meshalipi is so full of Rocks and Falls towards its Mouth, that the Rapidity of the Current cannot be master'd, which will carry your Barque into a horrid Whirlpool, that swallows up every thing that comes near it ; and even the River it self, which appears no more, losing it self in that hideous and bottomless Gulf.*

He added so many other Circumstances, and appear'd so serious, and so much concern'd for us, that two of our Men, who understood their Language, but not their Politicks, were mov'd at it, and their Fear appear'd in their Faces. We observ'd it, but could not help it ; for it would be an unpardonable Affront to interrupt a Savage ; and besides, we had perhaps encreas'd the Alarms of our Men. When Nkanape had made an end of his Discourse, we answer'd him in so calm a manner, that he cou'd not fancy we were surpris'd at his Objections against our Voyage.

Our Interpreter told him, by order of M. la Salle, that we were much oblig'd to him for the Advices he gave us ; but that the Difficulties and Dangers he had mention'd, would make our Enterprize still more glorious ; that we fear'd the Master of the Life of all Men, who rul'd the Sea, and all the World ; and therefore wou'd think it a Happiness to lay down our Lives to make his Name known to all his Creatures. We added, that we believ'd that most of the Dangers he had mention'd were not in being ; but that

the Friendship he had for us, had put him 'upon that Invention, to oblige us to remain with them. We thought fit, however, to let him know, that we perceiv'd our Enemies had fomented some Jealousies in their Mind, and that they seem'd to mistrust our Designs; but as we were sincere in our Dealings, we desir'd them to let us know freely, and without any Disguise, the Grounds of their Suspicions, that we might satisfy them, and clear our selves; concluding, that seeing our Demand was so just and equitable, we expected they would grant it, or else that we should have reason to think that the Joy they had express'd upon our Arrival, and the Friendship they had since shew'd to us, was nothing but a Deceit and Dissimulation. *Nikanape* was not able to answer us, and therefore chang'd his Discourse, desiring us to eat.

The Dinner being over, our Interpreter reassum'd his Discourse, and told the Company, that we were not surpriz'd at the Envy their Neighbours express'd about our Arrival into their Country, because they knew too well the Advantages of Commerce, and therefore would engross it to themselves, and obstruct by all means our good Correspondence; but that we wonder'd that they wou'd give Ear to the Suggestions of our common Enemies, and conceal any thing from us, since we had so sincerely acquainted them with our Designs.

We did not sleep, Brother, said he, directing his Discourse to Nicanape, when Monso was caballing amongst you in the Night to our Prejudice, endeavouring to make you believe that we were Spies of the Iroquese. The Presents he made to enforce his Lies, are still hiddden in this Cabin. But why has he run away immediately after, instead of appearing publickly to justify his Accusation? Thou art a Witness thy self, that upon our landing we might have kill'd all thy Nephews, and done what our Enemies tell you we design to do, after we have made Alliance with thee, and settled our selves amongst you. But if it were our Design,
why

why should we defer to put it into execution? And who hinders our Warriours, who are here with me, to kill all of you, whilst your young Men are a hunting? Thou hast been told, that our Valour is terrible to the Iroquese themselves; and therefore we need not their Assistance to wage War with thee, if it were our Design.

But to remove even the least Pretence of Suspicion and Jealousie, send somebody to bring back that malicious Accuser, and we will stay here to confute him in thy Presence: For how can he know us, seeing he never saw us in his Life? And how can he be acquainted with the secret League we have made with the Iroquese, whom he knows only by Name? Consider our Equipage; we have nothing but Tools and Goods, which can never be made use of, but for the Good of thy Nation, and not for its Destruction, as our Enemies would make thee believe.

This Discourse mov'd them very much; and they sent after *Monso* to bring him back; but the Snow which fell that Night spoil'd the Tract, and so he could not be over-taken. He had remain'd for some Days not far from us, to know what would be the success of his Embassie. However, some of our Men lay under such terrible Apprehensions, that we could never recover their Courage, nor remove their Fears; so that six of them who had the Guard that Night (amongst which were two Sawers, the most necessary of our Workmen for building our Ship) run away, taking with them what they thought necessary; but considering the Country through which they were to travel, and the Season of the year, we may say, that for avoiding an uncertain Peril, they expos'd themselves to a most certain Danger.

M. la Salle seeing that those six Men were gone, and fearing that this Desertion would make a disadvantageous Impression upon the Savages, he order'd his Men to tell the *Illinois*, that he had resolv'd to send after them to punish them as they deserv'd; but that the Season being so hard, he was loth to expose

his Men; and that those Deserters would be severely punish'd in *Canada*. In the meam time we exhorted the rest to continue firm in their Duty, assuring them, That if any were afraid of venturing themselves upon the River *Meschasipi*, because of the Dangers *Nikanape* had mention'd, M. *la Salle* would give them leave to return next Spring to *Canada*, and allow them a Canou to make their Voyage; whereas they could not venture to return home at this time of the Year, without exposing themselves to perish with Hunger, Cold, or the Hands of the Savages.

They promis'd Wonders; but M. *la Salle* knowing their Inconstancy, and dissembling the Vexation their want of Courage and Resolution caus'd him, resolv'd to prevent any farther Subornation, and to leave the Camp of the *Illinois*; but lest his Men should not consent to it, he call'd them together and told them we were not safe among the *Illinois*, and that perhaps the *Iroquese* would come in a little time to attack them; and that these being not able to resist, they were like to run away, and betake themselves to the Woods, and leave us expos'd to the Mercy of the *Iroquese*, whose Cruelty was sufficiently known to us; therefore he knew no other Remedy but to fortifie a Post, where we might defend our selves both against the *Illinois* and *Iroquese*, as occasion should require. These Reasons, with some other Arguments which I added to the same purpose, proved powerful enough to engage them to approve M. *la Salle's* Design; and so it was resolv'd to build a Fort in a very advantageous Place on the River, four Day's Journey below the great Village of the *Illinois*.

C H A P. XXXIII.

Reflections upon the Temper and Manners of the Illinois, and the little Disposition they have to embrace Christianity.

BEFORE I speak in particular of the *Illinois*, I think fit to observe here, that there is a Nation of the *Miami's*, who inhabit the Banks of a fine River, within fifteen Leagues from the Lake, in the Latitude of 41 Degrees. The *Maskoutens* and *Outtouagami's* live more Northward on the River *Mellioki*, which runs into the Lake in the Latitude of 43 Degrees. To the West of it live the *Kikapous* and *Ainoves*, who have two Villages; and to the West of these there is the Village of the *Illinois Cascaschia*, situated towards the Source of the River *Checagoumenans*. The *Authoutantas* and *Maskoutens-Nadouessians* live within one hundred and thirty Leagues of the *Illinois*, in three great Villages, on the Banks of a fine River which discharges it self into the great River *Meschasipi*. We shall have occasion to talk of these and several other Nations.

Most of these Savages, and especially the *Illinois*, make their Cabins of flat Rushes, which they sew together, and line them with the same; so that no Rain can go through it. They are tall, strong, and manage their Bows and Arrows with great dexterity; for they did not know the use of Fire-Arms before we came into their Country. They are Lazy, Vagabonds, Timorous, Pettish, Thieves, and so fond of their Liberty, that they have no great Respect for their Chiefs.

Their Villages are open, and not enclos'd with Palisado's, as in some other Places, because they have not Courage enough to defend them, for they fly
away

away as soon as they hear their Enemies approach. Besides their Arrows, they use two other Weapons, a kind of a Pike, and a Club of Wood. Their Country is so fertile, that it supplies them with all Necessaries for Life, and especially since we taught them the use of Iron Tools to cultivate it.

Hermaphrodites are very common amongst them, which is so much the more surprizing, because I have not observ'd any such thing amongst the other Nations of the Northern *America*. Poligamy is allow'd amongst them; and they generally marry several Sisters, thinking they agree better than Strangers. They are exceedingly jealous, and cut the Noses of their Wives upon the least suspicion. Notwithstanding they have several Wives, they are so lascivious as to be guilty of Sodomy, and keep Boys whom they cloath with Womens Apparel, because they make of them that abominable Use. These Boys live in their Families amongst Women, without going either to their Wars or Hunting. As to their Religion I observ'd that they are very superstitious; but I could never discover that they had any Worship, nor any Reason for their Superstition. They are great Gamblers, as well as all the other Savages that I have known in *America*.

As there are some stony Places in this Country, where there is a great quantity of Serpents, very troublesome to the *Illinois*, they know several Herbs which are a quicker and surer Remedy against their Venom, than our Treacle or Orvietan. They rub themselves with these Herbs, after which they play with those dangerous Serpents, without receiving any hurt. They take the young ones and put them sometimes into their Mouth. They go stark naked in Summer-time, wearing only a kind of Shooes made of the Skins of Bulls; but the Winter being pretty severe in their Country, tho' very short, they wear Gowns made of the Skins of Wild Beasts, or of Bulls, which they

they dress and paint most curiously, as I have already observ'd.

The *Illinois*, as most of the Savages of *America*, being brutish, wild, and stupid, and their Manners being so opposite to the Morals of the Gospel, their Conversion is to be despair'd of, till Time and Commerce with the *Europeans* has remov'd their natural Fierceness and Ignorance, and thereby made 'em more apt to be sensible of the Charms of Christianity. I have met with some who were more teachable; and Father *Zenobe* told me, that he Baptiz'd two or three of them at the point of Death, because they desir'd it; and shew'd some good Disposition to induce him to grant that Demand. They will readily suffer us to baptize their Children, and would not refuse it themselves; but they are incapable of any previous Instruction concerning the Truth of the Gospel, and the Efficacy of the Sacraments. Would I follow the Example of some other Missionaries, I could have boasted of many Conversions; for I might have easily baptiz'd all those Nations, and then say, as I am afraid they do without any ground, That I had converted them.

Father *Zenobe* had met with two Savages, who had promis'd to follow him every where, whom he instructed and baptiz'd; but tho' they were more tractable than the rest, they would not leave their Country; and he understood afterwards, that one of them, whose Name was *Chassagouache*, was dead in the hands of the *funglers*, and consequently in the Superstitions of his Country-Men; so that his Baptism serv'd only to make him *duplo Filius Gehennæ*.

C H A P. XXXIV.

An Account of the Building of a New Fort on the River of the Illinois, named by the Savages Checagou, and us Fort Crevecoeur; as also a Barque to go down the River Meschasipi.

I Must observe here, that the hardest Winter has not above two Months in this charming Country; so that on the 15th of *January* there came a sudden Thaw, which made the Rivers navigable, and the Weather so mild as it is with us in the middle of the Spring. *M. la Salle* improving this fair Season, desir'd me to go down the River with him to choose a Place fit to build our Fort. After having view'd the Country we pitch'd upon an Eminence on the Bank of the River, defended on that side by the River, and on two others by two Ditches the Rains had made very deep by succession of Time; so that it was accessible only by one way; therefore we cast a Line to joyn those two natural Ditches, and made the Eminence steep on every side, supporting the Earth with great pieces of Timber. We made a hasty Lodgment thereupon, to be ready to defend us in case the Savages would obstruct the building of our Fort; but no body offering to disturb us, we went on diligently with our work. Fathers *Gabriel*, *Zachary*, and I, made in the mean time a Cabin of Placks, wherein our Workmen came to Prayers every Morning and Evening; but having no Wine, we could not say Mass. The Fort being half finish'd, *M. la Salle* lodg'd himself in the middle with *M. Tonti*; and every body took his Post. We plac'd our Forge along the Courtin on the side of the Wood, and laid in a great quantity of Coals for that use.

In the mean time our thoughts were always bent toward

towards our Discovery, and M. *la Salle* and I had frequent Conferences about it: But our greatest difficulty was to build a Barque; for our Sawers being gone, we did not know what to do. However, as the Timber was cheap enough, we told our Men, that if any of them would undertake to saw Boards for Building the said Barque, we might surmount all other Difficulties. Two Men undertook it; and though they had never try'd it before, they succeeded very well, so that we began to build a Barque, the Keel whereof was forty two Foot long. Our Men went on so briskly with the Work, that on the first of *March* our Barque was half built, and all the Timber ready prepar'd for the finishing of it. Our Fort was also very near finish'd; and we nam'd it the Fort of *Crevecoeur*, because the desertion of our Men, and the other Difficulties we labour'd under, had almost broke our Hearts.

Though the Winter is not harder nor longer in the Country of the *Illinois*, than in *Provence*, the Snow remain'd upon the Earth, in the Year 1680, for twenty days together, which had not been seen in the Memory of Man. This made the Savages mightily concern'd, and brought upon us a World of Inconveniencies, besides the many others we suffer'd. In the mean time we perfected our Fort; and our Barque was in such a forwardness, that we might have expected to be in a condition to sail in a very short time, had we been provided with all other Necessaries; but hearing nothing of our Ship, and therefore wanting the Rigging and other Tackle for our Barque, we found our selves in great perplexity, and did not know what to do in this sad Juncture, being above five hundred Leagues from Fort *Frontenac*, whither it was almost impossible to return at that time, because the Snow made the travelling very dangerous by Land, and the Ice made it impracticable to our Canou's.

M. *la Salle* did not doubt then but his belov'd *Griffin* was lost; but neither this nor the other Difficulties dejected him; his great Courage buoy'd him up, and he resolv'd to return to Fort *Frontenac* by Land, notwithstanding the Snow, and the unspeakable Dangers attending so great a Voyage. We had a long Conference about it in private, wherein having examin'd all things, it was resolv'd, that he should return to Fort *Frontenac* with three Men, to bring along with him the necessary things to proceed on our Discovery, while I with two Men should go in a Canoe to the River *Meschasipi*, and endeavour to get the Friendship of those Nations inhabiting the Banks of that River. Our Resolution was certainly very great and bold; but there was this essential difference, that the Inhabitants of the Countries through which M. *la Salle* was to travel, knew the *Europeans*; whereas those Savages, whom I design'd to visit, had never heard of us in their Life; and had been represented by the *Illinois*, as the most barbarous Nations in the World. However, M. *la Salle* and I had Courage enough to undertake our difficult Task; but we had much ado to perswade five of our Men to follow us, or to engage to expect our Return at Fort *Crevecoeur*.

C H A P. XXXV.

Containing an Account of what was transacted at Fort Crevecoeur before M. la Salle's return to Fort Frontenac; and the Instructions we receiv'd from a Savage concerning the River Meschasipi.

BEfore M. *la Salle* and I parted, we found means to undeceive our Men, and remov'd the groundless Fears they had conceiv'd from what the *Illinois*, through the Suggestions of *Monso*, had told us concerning

cerning the Dangers, or rather the Impossibility of Sailing upon the River *Meschasipi*. Some Savages inhabiting beyond that River, came to the Camp of the *Illinois*, and gave us an Account of it, very different from what *Nikanape* had told us ; some other Savages own'd that it was navigable, and not interrupted by Rocks and Falls, as the *Illinois* would make us believe ; and one of the *Illinois* themselves, being gain'd by some small Presents, told us in great secrecy, that the Account their Chief had given us, was a downright Forgery, contriv'd on purpose to oblige us to give over our Enterprize. This reviv'd somewhat our Men ; but yet they were still wavering and irresolute ; and therefore M. *la Salle* said, that he would fully convince them, that the *Illinois* had resolv'd in their Council to forge that Account, in order to stop our Voyage ; and few days after we met with a favourable opportunity for it.

The *Illinois* had made an Excursion South-ward ; as they were returning with some Prisoners, one of their Warriours came before their Comrades, and visited us at our Fort ; we entertain'd him as well as we could, and ask'd him several Questions touching the River *Meschasipi*, from whence he came, and where he had been oftentimes, giving him to understand, that some other Savage had given us an Account of it. He took a piece of Charcoal, and drew a Map of the Course of that River, which I found afterwards pretty exact ; and told us, that he had been in a *Pyroque* ; that is, a Canou made of the Trunk of a Tree, from the Mouth of this River, very near the Place where the *Meschasipi* falls into the great Lake ; for so they call the Sea : That there was neither Falls, nor rapid Currents, as we had been told ; that it was very broad towards the great Lake, and interrupted with Banks of Sand ; but that there were large Canals betwixt them, deep enough for any *Pyroque*. He told

us also the Name of several Nations inhabiting the Banks of *Meschasipi*, and of several Rivers that fall into it. I set down in my Journal all that he told of which I shall perhaps give a larger Account in another place. We made him a small Present, to thank him for his Kindness, in discovering a Truth which the Chief of his Nation had so carefully conceal'd. He desir'd us to hold our tongue, and never to mention him, which we promis'd; and gave him an Axe, wherewith we shut his mouth, according to the Custom of the Savages, when they recommend a Secret.

The next day, after Prayers, we went to the Village of the *Illinois*; whom we found in the Cabin of one of their Chiefs; who entertain'd them with a Bear, whose Flesh is much valu'd among them. They desir'd us to sit down upon a fine Mat of Rushes: And some time after our Interpreter told them, that we were come to acquaint them, that the Maker of all Things, and the Master of the Lives of Men, took a particular Care of us, and had been pleas'd to let us have a true Account of the River *Meschasipi*; the Navigation whereof they had represented to us as impracticable. We added all the Particulars we had learn'd, but in such Terms, that it was impossible they should suspect any of their Men.

The Savages were much surpriz'd, and did not doubt but we had that Account by some extraordinary Way; therefore they shut their Mouths with their Hands; which is their usual Custom to express their Admiration by. They told us frankly afterwards, that the great desire they had to stop amongst our Captain, and the *Grey-Coats* or *Barefoot*, as they call the *Franciscans*, had oblig'd them to forge the Stories they had told us, and to conceal the Truth; but since we had come to the Knowledge of it by another way, they would tell us all that they knew; and confirm'd every Particular their Warriour

told us. This Confession remov'd the Fears of our Men, who were few days after still more fully perswaded that the *Illinois* had only design'd to frighten us from our Discovery : For several Savages of the Nations of *Osages*, *Cikaga*, and *Akanfa*, came to see us, and brought fine Furrs to barter for our Axes. They told us that the *Meschasipi* was navigable almost from its Source to the Sea ; and gave us great Encouragement to go on with our Design, assuring us, that all the Nations inhabiting along the River, from the Mouth of that of the *Illinois*, to the Sea, would come to meet us, and dance the *Calumet* of Peace, as they express it, and make an Alliance with us.

The *Miami's* arriv'd much about that time, and danc'd the *Calumet* with the *Illinois*, making an Alliance with them against the *Iroquese*, their implacable Enemies. We were Witnesses to their Treaty ; and M. *la Salle* made them some Presents , the better to oblige both Parties to the Observation of their League.

We were three Missionaries for that handful of Europeans at Fort *Crevecœur* ; and therefore we thought fit to divide our selves : Father *Gabriel* being very old, was to continue with our Men ; and Father *Zenobe* among the *Illinois*, having desir'd it himself, in hopes to convert that numerous Nation : And I, as I have already related, was to go on with our Discovery. Father *Zenobe* liv'd already among the *Illinois*, but the rude Manners of that People made him soon weary of it. His Landlord, whose Name was *Oma-bouba*, that is to say *Wolf*, was the Head of a Tribe, and took a special Care of Father *Zenobe*, especially after M. *la Salle* had made him some Presents : He lov'd him as his Child ; but however, I perceiv'd in the Visits he made us, (for he liv'd but within half a League of our Fort) that he was not satisfi'd to live amongst that brutish Nation, though he had already learn'd their Tongue. This oblig'd me to offer him

to take his place, provided he would supply mine, and go on with our Discovery amongst several Nations, whose Language we did not understand, and who had never heard of us; but Father *Zenobe* foreseeing the Danger and Fatigue I was like to be expos'd to, chose to remain with the *Illinois*, whose Temper he knew, and with whom he was able to converse.

M. la Salle left *M. Tonti* to command in Fort *Crevœur*, and order'd our Carpenter to prepare some thick Planks of Oak, to fence the Deck of our Barque in the nature of a Parapet, to cover it against the Arrows of the Savages, in case they design'd to shoot at us from the Shoar. Then calling his Men together, he desir'd them to obey *M. Tonti's* Orders in his Absence, to live in a Christian Union and Charity; to be courageous and firm in their Design; and above all, to give no credit to the false Reports that the Savages might make unto them, either of him, or of their Comrades that were going with me. He assur'd them, that he would return with all the speed imaginable, and bring along with him a fresh Supply of Men, Ammunition, and Rigging for our Barque; and that in the mean time he left them Arms, and other things necessary for a vigorous Defence, in case their Enemies should attack them before his Return.

He told me afterwards, that he expected I should depart without any farther Delay; but I told him, that tho' I had promis'd him to do it, yet a Deffluxion I had on my Gums a Year since, as he knew very well, oblig'd me to return to *Canada*, to be cur'd; and that I would then come back with him. He was very much surpriz'd, and told me, he would write to my Superiours, that I had obstructed the good Success of our Mission, and desir'd Father *Gabriel* to perswade me to the contrary. That good Man had been my Master, during my Novitiate in our

our Convent of *Bethune*, in the Province of *Artois*; and therefore I had so great a Respect for him, that I yielded to his Advice; and consider'd, that since a Man of his Age had ventur'd to come along with me in so dangerous a Mission, it would look as Pusillanimity in me to return and leave him. That Father had left a very good Estate, being Heir of a Noble Family of the Province of *Burgundy*; and I must own, that his Example reviv'd my Courage upon several Occasions.

M. *la Salle* was mightily pleas'd when I told him I was resolv'd to go, notwithstanding my Indisposition: He embrac'd me, and gave me a *Calumet* of Peace; and two Men to manage our Canou, whose Names were *Anthony Auguel*, surnam'd the *Picard du Gay*; and *Mitchel Ako*, of the Province of *Poitou*, to whom he gave some Commodities to the value of about 1000 Livres, to trade with the Savages, or make Presents. He gave to me in particular, and for my own use, ten Knives, twelve Shooe-maker's Auls or Bodkins, a small Roll of Tobacco from *Martinico*, about two Pounds of *Rassade*; that is to say, Little Pearls or Rings of colour'd Glass, wherewith the Savages make Bracelets, and other Works, and a small Parcel of Needles to give to the Savages; telling me, that he would have given me a greater quantity, if it had been in his Power.

The Reader may judge by these Particulars, of the rest of my Equipage for so great an Undertaking; however, relying my self on the Providence of God, I took my leave of M. *la Salle*, and embrac'd all our Men, receiving the Blessing of Father *Gabriel*, who told me several things, to inspire me with Courage; concluding his Exhortation by these Words of the Scripture, *Viriliter age, & confortetur Cor tuum.*

M. *la Salle* set out a few days after for *Canada*, with three Men, without any Provisions, but what they kill'd in their Journey, during which they suffer'd

very much, by reason of the Snow, Hunger and cold Weather.

C H A P. XXXVI.

The Author sets out from Fort Creveccœur, to continue his Voyage.

WHosoever will consider the Dangers to which I was going to expose my self, in an unknown Country, where no *European* had travell'd before, and amongst some Savages, whose Language I did not understand, will not blame the Reluctancy I expressed against that Voyage: I had such an Idea of it, that neither the fair Words, or Threats of *M. la Salle*, would have been able to engage me to venture my Life so rashly, had I not felt within my self a secret but strong Assurance, if I may use that Word, that God would help and prosper my Undertaking.

We set out from Fort *Creveccœur* on the 29th of *February*, 1680, and as we fell down the River, we met with several Companies of Savages, who return'd to their Habitations, with their *Pirogues* or Wooden-Canou's, loaded with the Bulls they had kill'd: they would fain persuade us to return with them, and the two Men who were with me, were very willing to follow their Advice; telling me that *M. la Salle* had good to have murther'd us: But I oppos'd their Design, and told them that the rest of our Men would stop them as they shou'd come by the Fort, if they offer'd to return, and so we continu'd our Voyage. They confess'd to me the next Day, that they had resolv'd to leave me with the Savages, and make their Escape with the Canou and Commodities, thinking that there was no Sin in that, since *M. la Salle* was indebted to them in a great deal more than their Value; and that I had been very safe. This was the

first Discouragement I met with, and the Forerunner of a great many others.

The River of the *Illinois* is very near as deep and broad as the *Meuse* and *Sambre* before *Namur* ; but we found some Places where 'tis about a quarter of a League broad. The Banks of the River are not even, but interrupted with Hills, dispos'd almost at an equal distance, and cover'd with fine Trees. The Valley between them is a Marshy Ground, which is overflow'd after great Rains, especially in the Autumn and the Spring. We had the Curiosity to go up one of those Hills, from whence we discover'd vast Meadows, with Forests, such as we had seen before we arriv'd at the Village of the *Illinois*. The River flows so softly, that the Current is hardly perceptible, except when it swells : But it will carry at all times great Barques for above 100 Leagues ; that is, from the said Village to its Mouth. It runs directly to the South-west. On the 7th of *March* we met, within two Leagues from the River *Meschasipi*, a Nation of the Savages call'd *Tamaroa* or *Maroa*, consisting of about 200 Families. They design'd to bring us along with them to their Village, which lies to the West of *Meschasipi*, about seven Leagues from the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois* ; but my Men follow'd my Advice, and wou'd not stop, in hopes to exchange their Commodities with more Advantage in a more remote Place. Our Resolution was very good ; for I don't question but they would have robb'd us ; for seeing we had some Arms, they thought we were going to carry them to their Enemies. They pursu'd us in their *Pyrogues* or Wooden-Canows ; but ours being made of Bark of Birch-Trees, and consequently ten times lighter than theirs, and better fram'd, we laugh'd at their Endeavours, and got clear of them. They had sent a Party of their Warriours to lie in Ambuscade on a Neck of Land advancing into the River, where they thought we should pass that Evening or the next Morning ;

but having discover'd some Smoak on that Point, we spoil'd their Design, and therefore cross'd the River, and landed in a small Island near the other side, where we lay all the Night, leaving our Canou in the Water, under the Guard of a little Dog; who doubtless wou'd have awak'd us, if any body had offer'd to come near him; as we expected the Savages might attempt it, swimming over in the Night; but no body came to disturb us. Having thus avoided those Savages, we came to the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*, distant from their great Village about 100 Leagues, and 50 from Fort *Crevecoeur*. It falls into the *Meschasipi* between 35 and 36 Degrees of Latitude, and within 120 or 130 Leagues from the Gulph of *Mexico*, according to our Conjecture, without including the Turnings and Windings of the *Meschasipi*, from thence to the Sea.

The Angle between the two Rivers on the South-side, is a steep Rock of forty Foot high, and flat on the Top, and consequently a fit Place to build a Fort, and on the other side of the River, the Ground appears blackish, from whence I judge that it would prove fertile, and afford two Crops every Year, for the subsistence of a Colony. The Soil looks as if it had been already manur'd.

The Ice which came down from the Source of the *Meschasipi*, stopp'd us in that Place till the 12th of *March*; for we were afraid of our Canou: But when we saw the Danger over, we continu'd our Course, sounding the River, to know whether it was navigable. There are three small Islands over-against the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*, which stop the Trees and Pieces of Timber that come down the River; which by succession of time, has form'd some Banks: But the Canals are deep enough for the greatest Barques; and I judge that in the driest Summer, there is Water enough for flat-bottom-Boats.

The *Meschasipi* runs to the South-South-Weſt, between two Ridges of Mountains, which follow the great Windings of the River. They are near the Banks, at the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*, and are not very high ; but in other Places, they are ſome Leagues diſtant ; and the Meadows between the River and the Foot of thoſe Hills, are cover'd with an infinite number of wild Bulls. The Country beyond thoſe Hills is ſo fine and pleaſant, that according to the Account I have had, one might juſtly call it the *Delight of America*.

The *Meschasipi* is in ſome places a League broad, and half a League where it is narroweſt. The Rapidity in its Current is ſomewhat abated, by a great number of Iſlands, cover'd with fine Trees interlac'd with Vines. It receives but two Rivers from the weſt Side, one whereof is call'd *Otontenta* ; and the other diſcharges it ſelf into it near the Fall of St. *Anthony of Padoua*, as we ſhall obſerve hereafter ; But ſo many others run into the *Meschasipi* from the North, that it ſwells very much toward its Mouth.

I am reſolv'd to give here an Account of the Courſe of that River ; which I have hither to conceal'd, for the Sake of M. *la Salle*, who wou'd aſcribe to himſelf alone the Glory, and the moſt ſecret Part of this Diſcovery. He was ſo fond of it, that he has expos'd to viſible danger ſeveral Perſons, that they might not publiſh what they had ſeen, and thereby prejudice his ſecret Deſigns.

C H A P. XXXVII.

The Course of the River Meschasipi from the Mouth of the River of the Illinois, to the Sea; which the Author did not think fit to publish in his Louisiana; with an Account of the Reasons he had to undertake that Discovery.

THERE is no Man but remembers with Pleasure the great Dangers he has escap'd; and I must confess, that when I call to mind the great Difficulties I was under at the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*, and the Perils I was expos'd to in the Discovery of the Course of the *Meschasipi*, my Joy and Satisfaction cannot be express'd. I was as good as sure that *M. la Salle* wou'd slander me, and represent me to my Superiors as a wilful and obstinate Man, if I presum'd to go down the *Meschasipi* instead of going up to the North, as I was desir'd, and as we had conserted together; and therefore I was very loath to undertake it: But on the other Hand, I was expos'd to starve, and threatned by my two Men, that if I oppos'd their Resolution of going down the River, they would leave me a-shoar during the Night, and carry away the Canou where-ever they pleas'd; so that I thought it was reasonable to prefer my own Preservation to the Ambition of *M. la Salle*; and so I agreed to follow my Men; who seeing me in that good Disposition, promis'd that they would be faithful to me.

We shook Hands, to seal these Promises; and after Prayers, imbarck'd in our Canou the 8th of March, 1680. The Ice which came down from the North, gave us a great deal of trouble; but we were so careful, that our Canou receiv'd no hurt; and after six Hours rowing, we came to a River of a Nation call'd *Osages*, who live toward the *Messorites*. That River

River comes from the Westward, and seems as big as the *Meschasipi*; but the Water is so muddy, that 'tis almost impossible to drink of it.

The *Iffati*, who inhabit toward the Source of the *Meschasipi*, make sometimes Excursions as far as the Place where I was then; and I understood afterwards from them, having learn'd their Language, that this River of the *Osages* and *Messorites*, is form'd from several other Rivers, which spring from a Mountain about twelve Day's Journey from its Mouth. They told me farther, that from that Mountain one might see the Sea, and now and then some great Ships; that the Banks of that River are inhabited by several Nations; and that they have abundance of wild Bulls and Beavers.

Tho' this River is very big, the *Meschasipi* does not visibly swell by the accession of it; but its Waters continue muddy to its Mouth, albeit seven other Rivers fall into it, which are near as big as the *Meschasipi*, and whose Waters are extraordinary clear.

We lay every Night in Islands, at least if it were possible, for our greater Security; and as soon as we had roasted or boyl'd our *Indian* Corn, we were very careful to put out our Fire; for in these Countries they smell Fire at two or three Leagues distance, according to the Wind. The Savages take a particular notice of it, to discover where their Enemies are, and endeavour to surprize them.

The 9th we continu'd our Voyage, and six Leagues from the River of the *Osages*, discover'd on the South-side of the *Meschasipi*, a Village, which we thought to be inhabited by the *Tamaroa*, who had pursu'd us, as I have related. Seeing no body appear, we landed, and went into their Cabins, wherein we found *Indian* Corn, of which we took some Bushels, leaving in lieu of it six Knives, and a small quantity of little Glass-Beads. This was good luck for us; for we durst

durst not leave the River, and go a hunting for fear of falling into the Hands of the Savages.

The next Day, being the Tenth of *March*, we came to a River within Forty Leagues of *Taman* near which, as the *Illinois* inform'd us, there is a Nation of Savages call'd *Quadebache*. We remain'd there till the Fourteenth, because one of our Men kill'd a wild C^{ow}, as she was swimming over the River, whose Flesh we were oblig'd to dry with Smoak, to preserve it from putrifying. Being thus provided with *Indian* Corn and Flesh, we left that Place the Fourteenth, and saw nothing worth Observation. The Banks of the River are so muddy, and so full of Rushes and Reeds, that we had much ado to find a Place to go ashore.

The Fifteenth we discover'd three Savages, who came from Hunting, or from some Expedition. As we were able to make head against them, we landed and march'd up to them; whereupon they run away, but after some Signs, one return'd, and presented us the *Calumet* of Peace, which we receiv'd; and the others came back. We did not understand a Word of what they said; nor they, I suppose, what we told them: Tho' having nam'd them two or three different Nations, one answer'd three times *Chikacha*, or *Sikacha*, which was likely the Name of his Nation. They gave us some *Pelicans* they had kill'd with their Arrows; and we presented them with part of our Meat. Our Canou being too little to take them in, they continu'd their way, making several Signs with their Hands, to follow them along the Shore, but we quickly lost the Sight of them.

Two days after, we saw a great number of Savages near the River-side; and heard immediately after a certain Noise, as of a Drum; and as we came near the Shore, the Savages cry'd aloud *Sasacowé*; that is to say, *Who goes there?* as I have been inform'd. We were unwilling to land; but they sent us a *Pi-*

rogue or heavy Wooden Canou, made of the Trunk of a Tree, which they make hollow with Fire; and we discover'd amongst them the three Savages we had met two Days before. We presented our *Calumet* of Peace, which they receiv'd; but gave us to understand by Signs, that we must go to the *Akanfa*; for they repeated so often that Word, pointing at the Savages a-shore, that I believe this is the right Name of their Nation. We cou'd not avoid it; and as soon as we were landed, the three *Chikacha* took our Canou upon their Shoulders, and carry'd it to the Village. The Savages receiv'd us very kindly, and gave us a Cabin for our selves alone; and presented us with Beans, *Indian Corn*, and Flesh to eat. We made them also some Presents of our *European* Commodities, which they admir'd: They put their Fingers upon their Mouth, especially when they saw our Guns; and I think this way of expressing their Surprise, is common to all the Savages of the Northern America.

These Savages are very different from those of the North, who are commonly sad, pensive, and severe; whereas these appear'd jovial, civil, and free. Their Youth are so modest, that they dare not speak before Old Men, unless they are ask'd any Question. I observed they have tame Poultry, as Hens, Turkey-Cocks, and Bustards, which are as tame as our Geese. Their Trees began to shew their Fruit, as Peaches, and the like; which must be a great deal bigger than ours. Our Men lik'd very well the Manner of these People; and if they had found any Furrs and Skins to barter for their Commodities, they would have left me amongst them; but I told them, that our Discovery was more important to them than their Trade; and advis'd them to hide their Commodities under-ground, which they might take again upon our return, and exchange them with the Savages of the North. They approv'd my Advice, and were sensible

sensible that they should prevent many Dangers; for Men are covetous in all Countries.

The Eighteenth we embark'd again, after having been entertain'd with Dancing and Feasting; and carry'd away our Commodities, tho' the Savages were very loth to part with them; but having accepted our *Calumet* of Peace, they did not presume to stop us by Force.

C H A P. XXXVIII.

A Continuation of our Voyage on the River Meschasipi.

AS we fell down the River, we look'd for a fit Place to hide our Commodities, and at last pitch'd upon one between two Eminences near a Wood. We took up the green Sodds, lay'd them by, and digg'd a Hole in the Earth, where we put our Goods, and cover'd them with Pieces of Timber and Earth, and then put on again the green Turf; so that 'twas impossible to suspect that any Hole had been digg'd under it, for we flung the Earth into the River. We tore afterwards the Bark of three Oaks and of a large Cotton-tree, and ingrav'd thereon four Crosses, that we might not miss the Place at our Return. We embark'd again with all speed, and past by another Village of Savages about six Leagues from *Akanfa*, and then landed at another two Leagues lower, where we were kindly entertain'd. Men, Women, and Children came to meet us; which makes me believe that the first *Akanfa* had given notice of our arrival, to all the Villages of their Nation. We made them some Presents of little Value, which they thought very considerable. Presents are the Symbols of Peace in all those Countries.

The Twenty first those Savages carry'd us in a *Pyrogue* to see a Nation farther off into the Country, which

which they call *Taensa*; for they repeated often that Word, so that we could not but remember it. Those Savages inhabit the Banks of a Lake form'd by the *Meschafipi*; but I had not time enough to make any particular Observation concerning several of the Villages which I saw.

These Savages receiv'd us with much more Ceremonies than the *Akanssa*; for their Chief came in great Solemnity to the Shore to meet us. He had a kind of a white Gown on, made of Cloth of Bark of Trees, which their Women spun; and two Men carry'd before him a thin Plate of Copper, as shining as Gold. We presented our *Calumet* of Peace, which he receiv'd with Joy and much Gravity. The Men, Women, and Children, who attended him, express'd a great Respect for me, and kiss'd the Sleeves of the *Habit of St. Francis*; which made me believe that they had seen some *Spanish Franciscans* from *New Mexico*, it being usual there to kiss the *Habit of our Order*: But this is a meer Conjecture; tho' I observ'd they did not pay that Respect to the two Men that were with me.

The *Taensa* conducted us into a fine Cabin of flat Rushes and shining Reeds, and entertain'd us as well as their Country could afford; and then Men and Women, who are half cover'd in that Country, danc'd together before us. Their way of Dancing is much more difficult than ours, but perhaps as pleasant, were it not for their Musick, which is very disagreeable. Women repeat every Word the Men have sung.

That Country is full of Palm-trees, wild Laurels, Plum-trees, Mulberry-trees, Peach-trees, Apple-trees, and Walnut-trees of five or six kinds, whose Nuts are a great deal bigger than ours. They have also several sorts of Fruit-trees unknown in *Europe*, but I could not discern the Fruit, because of the Season of the Year.

The Manners and Temper of that Nation is very different from that of the *Iroquefe*, *Hurons*, and *Illinois*. These are Civil, Easie, Tractable, and capable of Instructions ; whereas the others are meer Brutes, as fierce and cruel as any wild Beasts. We lay that Night in their Village, and were entertain'd as civilly as we could have wish'd for ; and we did likewise our utmost to oblige them : We shew'd them the Effect of our Fire-Arms, and a Pistol which shot four Bullets one after another, without needing to be new charg'd. Our Men took their best Cloth, which pleas'd them very much ; and they seem'd well satisfy'd with us, as they express'd by many Signs and Demonstrations. They sent over-night to the *Koroa*, who are their Allies, to give them notice of our Arrival ; and their Chief came next Morning in great Ceremony to see us. They seem'd transported with Joy, and 'tis great pity we could not understand what they told us, to know what Opinion they entertain'd of us, and from what Part of the World they fancied we came. I order'd my Men to square a Tree, and having made a Cross, we planted it near the Cabin where we lay.

The Twenty second we left that obliging People, and the Chief of the *Koroa* attended us to his Village, which is situated about ten Leagues lower, upon the River, in a fertile Soil, which produces abundance of *Indian* Corn, and other things necessary for Life. We presented them with three Axes, six Knives, seven Yards of good Tobacco, several Awls and Needles. They receiv'd our Presents with great Shouts, and their Chief presented us with a *Calumet* of Peace of red Marble, the Quill whereof was adorn'd with Feathers of five or six sorts of Birds.

They gave us also a Noble Treat according to their own way, which I lik'd very well ; and after we had din'd, the Chief of that Nation understanding by our Signs which way we were bound, took a Stick, and
made

made such Demonstrations, that we understood that we had not above seven Days Journey to the Sea, which he represented as a great Lake with large wooden Canou's. The next Day we prepar'd to continue our Voyage; but they made such Signs to oblige us to stay a Day or two longer, that I was almost perswaded to do it; but seeing the Weather so favourable for our Journey, we embark'd again. The Chief of that Nation, seeing we were resolv'd to be gone, sent several Men in two *Pyrogues*, to attend us to the Mouth of the River with Provisions; but when I saw that the three *Chikacha*, of whom I have spoken, follow'd us every where, I bid my Men to have care of them, and observe their Motions upon our landing, for fear of any Surprize. It was then *Easter-day*, which we kept with great Devotion, tho' we could not say Mass for want of Wine; but we spent all the Day in Prayers in sight of the Savages, who wonder'd much at it.

The *Meschasipi* divides it self into two Channels, and thereby forms a large Island, which to our thinking was very long, and might be about sixty Leagues broad. The *Koroa* oblig'd us to follow the Canal to the Westward, tho' the *Chikacha*, who were in their *Pyrogues*, endeavour'd to perswade me to take the other: But as we had some suspicion of them, we refus'd to follow their Advice; tho' I was afterwards convinc'd, that they design'd only to have the Honour to bring us to several Nations on the other Side of the River, whom we visited in our return.

We lost quickly the Company of our Savages; for the Stream being very rapid in this Place, they could not follow us in their *Pyrogues*, which are very heavy. We made that Day near forty Leagues, and landed in the Evening upon the Island, where we pitch'd our Cabin.

The Twenty fourth we continu'd our Voyage; and about five and thirty Leagues below the Place
we

we had lain, we discover'd two Fishermen, who immediately ran away. We heard some time after a great Cry, and the Noise of a Drum; but as we suspected the *Chikacha*, we kept in the middle of the River, rowing as fast as we could. This was the Nation of *Quinipissa*, as we understood since. We landed that Night in a Village belonging to the Nation of *Tangibac*, as we have been inform'd; but the Inhabitants had been surpriz'd by their Enemies, for we found ten of them murther'd in their Cabins; which oblig'd us to embark again, and cross the River, where we landed, and having made a Fire, roasted our *Indian Corn*.

The Twenty fifth we left the Place early in the Morning; and after having row'd the best part of the Day, came to a Point where the *Meschasipi* divides it self into three Channels: We took the middle one, which is very broad and deep. The Water began there to taste brackish, but four Leagues lower it was as salt as the Sea. We rowed about four Leagues farther, and discover'd the Sea, which oblig'd us to go a-shore to the Eastward of the River.

C H A P. XXXIX.

Reasons which oblig'd us to return towards the Source of the River Meschasipi, without going any farther toward the Sea.

MY two Men were very much afraid of the Spaniards of *New Mexico*, who inhabit to the Westward of this River; and they were perpetually telling me, that if they were taken, the Spaniards would never spare their Lives, or at least give them the Liberty to return into *Europe*. I knew their Fears were not altogether unreasonable; and therefore I resolv'd to go no farther, tho' I had no reason to be afraid

afraid for my self, our Order being so numerous in *New Mexico*, that, on the contrary, I might expect to have had in that Country a peaceable and easie Life.

I don't pretend to be a Mathematician, but having learn'd to take the Elevation of the Pole, and make use of the Astrolabe, I might have made some exact Observations, had *M. la Salle* trusted me with that Instrument : I however, I observ'd that the *Meschasipi* falls into the Gulph of *Mexico*, between the 27th and 28th Degrees of Latitude, where, as I believe, our Maps mark a River call'd *Rio Escondido*, the Hidden River. The *Magdalen* River runs between this River and the Mines of *St. Barbe* that are in *New Mexico*.

The Mouth of the *Meschasipi* may be about thirty Leagues from *Rio Bravo*, sixty from *Palmas*, and eighty or a hundred from *Rio Panuco*, the nearest Habitation of the *Spaniards* ; and according to these Observations, the Bay *di Spirito Sancto* lies to the North-East of the *Meschasipi*, which from the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois* to the Sea, runs directly to the South, or South-West, except in its Windings and Turnings, which are so great, that by our Computation there are about 340 Leagues from the River of the *Illinois* to the Sea, whereas there are not above 150 in a direct Line. The *Meschasipi* is very deep, without being interrupted by any Sands, so that the biggest Ships may come into it. Its Course from its Source to the Sea, may be 800 Leagues, including Windings and Turnings, as I shall observe anon, having travell'd from its Mouth to its Head.

My Men were very glad of this Discovery, and to have escap'd so many Dangers ; but, on the other hand, they express'd a great deal of dissatisfaction to have been at such trouble, without making any Profit, having found no Furrs to exchange for their Commodities. They were so impatient to return, that they would never suffer me to build a Cabin up-

on the Shoar, and continue there for some days, the better to observe where we were. They squar'd a Tree of twelve foot high, and made a Cross thereof, which we erected in that Place, leaving there a Letter sign'd by me and my two Men, containing an Account of our Voyage, of our Country, and Profession. We kneel'd then near the Cross, and having sung the *Vexilla Regis*, and some other Hymns, embark'd again on the first of *April* to return towards the Source of the River.

We saw no body while we continu'd there, and therefore cannot tell whether any Natives inhabit that Coast. We lay, during the time we remain'd a-shoar, under our Canou's, supported with four Forks; and the better to protect us against the Rain, we had some Rolls of Birch-Bark, wherewith we made a kind of Curtains about our Canou, hanging from the top down to the ground. 'Tis observable, that during the whole Course of our Sailing, God protected us against the Crocodiles, which are very numerous in that River, and especially towards the Mouth: They look'd dreadful, and would have attack'd us, had we not been very careful to avoid them. We were very good Husbonds of our *Indian* Corn; for the Banks of the River being full of Reeds, it was almost impossible to land to endeavour to kill some Beasts for our Subsistence.

Our Canou being loaded only with three Men and our Provisions, did not draw three Inches Water, and therefore we could row very near the Shoar, and avoid the Current of the River; and besides, my Men had such a desire to return to the North, that that very day we came to *Tangibao*; but because the Savages we had found murder'd in their Cabins, made us believe, that that Place was not safe, we continu'd our Voyage all the Night long, after having supp'd, lighting a great Match to fright the Crocodiles away; for they fear nothing so much as Fire.

The next day, *April 2.* we saw towards break of Day a great Smoak not far from us, and a little while after we discover'd four Savage Women loaded with Wood, and marching as fast as they could to get to their Village before us; but we prov'd too nimble for them at first. However, some Bustards coming near us, one of my Men could not forbear to shoot at them; which so much frightened these Women, that they left their Load of Wood, and run away to their Village, where they arriv'd before us. The Savages having heard the Noise, were in as great fear as their Wives, and left the Village upon our approach; but I landed immediately, and advanc'd alone with the *Columet* of Peace; whereupon they return'd, and receiv'd us with all the Respect and Civility imaginable. They brought us into a great Cabin, and gave us several things to eat, sending notice in the mean time to their Allies, that we were arriv'd there; so that a great number of People crowd'd about to see us. They admir'd our Guns, and lifting up their Hands to Heaven, made us conceive they compar'd them to Thunder and Lightning; but seeing us shoot Birds at a great distance, they were so amaz'd that they could not speak a word. Our Men were so kindly entertain'd, that had it not been for the Commodities they had hid under-ground, they would have remain'd amongst that Nation; and truly it was chiefly to prevent any such thing, that I order'd them to do it; judging from the Civility of those Savages, that they were like to be tempted to remain with them. This Nation call'd themselves *Quapids*.

We made them some small Presents, to shew our Gratitude for their kind Entertainment, and left that Place, *April 4.* and row'd with such diligence, that we arriv'd the same day at *Koroo*. That Nation was not frighted as at the first time, but receiv'd us with all imaginable Demonstrations of Joy, carrying our

Canou upon their Shoulders in a triumphant manner, and twelve Men dancing before us with fine Feathers in their hands. The Women follow'd us with their Children, who held me by my Gown and Girdle, expressing much the same Kindness to my two Men. They conducted me in that manner to the Cabin they had prepar'd for us, made of fine Mats of painted Rushes, and adorn'd with white Coverings made of the Bark of Trees, spun as finely as our Linen-Cloth; and after we had refresh'd our selves, with the Victuals they had prepar'd for us, they left us alone, to give us time to rest our selves, which we did all the Night long. The next Morning I was surpriz'd to see their *Indian Corn*, which we left very green, grown already to Maturity; but I have learn'd since, that that Corn is ripe sixty days after it is sown. I observ'd there also another sort of Corn; but for want of understanding their Language, I was not able to know its Use and Name.

C H A P. XL.

An Account of our Departure from Koroa, to continue our Voyage.

I Left *Koroa* the next day, *April 5.* with a design to visit several Nations inhabiting the Coast of the *Meschasipi*, but my Men would never consent therunto, telling me that they had no Business there, and they were oblig'd to make all the haste they could towards the North, to exchange their Commodities for Furs. I told them, that the Publick Good was to be preferr'd to Private Interest; but I could not persuade them to any such thing; and they told me that every one ought to be free; that they were resolv'd to go towards the Source of the River, but that I might remain amongst those Nations, if I thought fit. In short, I found my self oblig'd to submit to that

their Will, though they had receiv'd Orders to obey my Direction. We arriv'd the 7th in the Habitation of the *Taensa's*, who had already been inform'd of our return from the Sea, and were prepar'd to receive us; having for that end sent for their Allies inhabiting the in-land Country to the West-ward of the River. They us'd all possible endeavours to oblige us to remain with them, and offer'd us a great many things; but our Men would not stay one single day; though I confess the Civility of that People, and the good Disposition I observ'd in them, wou'd have stopp'd me amongst them, had I been provided with things necessary for the Function of my Ministry.

We parted the 8th, and the *Taensa's* follow'd us several Leagues in their lightest *Pyrogues*, but were at last oblig'd to quit us, being not able to keep pace with our Canou. One of our Men shot three Wild-Ducks at once, which they admir'd above all things, it being impossible to do so with their Arrows. We gave them some Tobacco, and parted from them, our Men rowing with all their Strength, to let them see we had kept company with them out of meer Civility.

The 9th, we came to the Place where our Men had hidden their Commodities; but when my Men saw that the Savages had burnt the Trees which we had mark'd, they were so afraid, that they were near sounding away, and did not doubt but their Goods were lost. We went a-shoar; and while I was mending our Canou, they went to look for their Treasure, which they found in good condition. They were so transported with Joy, that *Picard* came immediately to tell me that all was well. In the mean time, the *Akanfa's* having receiv'd advice of our Return, came down in great numbers along the River to meet us; and lest they should see our Men taking again their Goods from under the Ground, I advanced to meet them with the *Calumet* of Peace, and

stopt them to smoak, it being a sacred Law amongst them to smoak in such a Juncture; and whosoever would refuse, must run the danger of being murder'd by the Savages, who have an extraordinary Veneration for the *Calumet*.

Whilst I stopt them, my Men put their Commodities into their Canou, and came to take me into it. The Savages saw nothing of it, of which I was very glad; for though they were our own, perhaps they might claim part of them upon some Pretence or other. I made several signs upon the Sand, to make them apprehend what I thought; but with what Success I don't know, for I could not understand a word of what they said, their Language having no affinity with those of their Neighbours I have convers'd withal, both since and after my Voyage to the Mouth of the *Meschasipi*.

I got into the Canou, and went by Water to the Village of the *Akanfa's*, while they went by Land; but our Men row'd so fast, that they could hardly keep pace with us. One of them, who was a good Runner, arriv'd at the Village before us, and came to the Shoar with the Women and Children to receive us, which they did even with more Civility than they had express'd the first time. Our Men suspected that this was only to get our Commodities, which they admir'd; but they are certainly a good sort of People; and instead of deserving the Name of a Barbarous Nation, as the *Europeans* call all the Natives of *America*, I think they have more Humanity than many Natives of *Europe*, who pretend to be very civil and affable to Strangers.

It would be needless to give here an exact Account of the Feasts and Dances that were made for our Entertainment, or of the Melancholy they express'd upon our Departure. I must own, that I had much a-do to leave them, but my two Men would not give me leave to tarry a day, seeing these Nations, having had

had no Commerce with the *Europeans*, did not know the Value of Beavers Skins, or other Furs, whereas they thought that the Savages inhabiting about the Source of the *Meschasipi*, might have been inform'd thereof by the Inhabitants of the Banks of the upper or Great Lake, which we found to be true, as we shall observe anon. We left the *Akanſa's* upon the 24th of *April*, having presented them with several little Toys, which they receiv'd with an extraordinary Joy; and during sixty Leagues, saw no Savage neither of the Nation of *Chikacha*, or *Messorite*, which made us believe they were gone a hunting with their Families, or else fled away, for fear of the Savages of *Tintonha*, that is to say, such as inhabit the Meadows, who are their irreconcilable Enemies.

This made our Voyage the more easie, for our Men landed several times to kill some Fowl and other Game, with which the Banks of the *Meschasipi* are plentifully stock'd; however, before we came to the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*, we discover'd several of the *Messorites*, who came down all along the River; but as they had no *Pyrogues* with them, we cross'd to the other side; and to avoid any Surprise during the Night, we made no fire; and thereby the Savages could not discover whereabout we were; for doubtless they would have murder'd us, thinking we were their Enemies.

I had quite forgot to relate, that the *Illinois* had told us, that towards the Cape, which I have call'd in my Map *St. Anthony* near the Nation of the *Messorites*, there were some *Tritons*, and other Sea-Monsters painted, which the boldest Men durst not look upon, there being some Enchantment in their Faces. I thought this was a Story; but when we came near the Place they had mention'd, we saw instead of these Monsters, a Horse and some other Beasts painted upon the Rock with red Colours by the Savages. The *Illinois* had told us likewise, that the Rock on which

these dreadful Monsters stood, was so steep that no Man could climb up to it; but had we not been afraid of the Savages more than of the Monsters, we had certainly got up to them. There is a common Tradition amongst that People, That a great number of *Miami's* were drown'd in that Place, being pursu'd by the Savages of *Matsigamea*; and since that time, the Savages going by the Rock, use to smoak, and offer Tobacco to those Beasts, to appease, as they say, the *Munitou*, that is, in the Language of the *Algonquins* and *Accadians*, an evil Spirit, which the *Iroquese* call *Otkon*; but the Name is the only thing they know of him.

While I was at *Quebec*, I understood that M. *Jolliet* had been upon the *Meschasipi*, and oblig'd to return without going down that River, because of the Monsters I have spoken of, who had frighted him, as also because he was afraid to be taken by the *Spaniards*; and having an Opportunity to know the Truth of that Story from M. *Jolliet* himself, with whom I had often travell'd upon the River *St. Laurence*, I ask'd him whether he had been as far as the *Akansa's*: That Gentleman answer'd me, That the *Outaouats* had often spoke to him of those Monsters; but that he had never gone farther than the *Hurons* and *Outaouats*, with whom we had remain'd to exchange our *European* Commodities with their *Furrs*. He added, that the Savages had told him, that it was not safe to go down the River, because of the *Spaniards*. But notwithstanding this Report, I have found no-where upon that River any Mark, as Crosses, and the like, that could persuade me that the *Spaniards* had been there; and the Savages inhabiting the *Meschasipi* would not have express'd such Admiration as they did when they saw us, if they had seen any *Europeans* before. I'll examine this Question more at large in my Second Volume.

C H A P. XLI.

A particular Account of the River Meschasipi; Of the Country thro' which it flows; and of the Mines of Copper, Lead, and Coals we discover'd in our Voyage.

FROM thirty Leagues below *Maroa*, down to the Sea, the Banks of the *Meschasipi* are full of Reeds or Canes; but we observ'd about forty places, where one may land with great facility. The River overflows its Banks now and then; but the Inundation is not very considerable, because of the little Hills which stop its Waters. The Country beyond those Hills is the finest that ever I saw, it being a Plain, whose Bounds I don't know, adorn'd now and then with some Hills and Eminences cover'd with fine Trees, making the rarest Prospect in the World. The Banks of the small Rivers flowing through the Plain, are planted with Trees, which look as if they had been disposed into that curious Order by the Art of Men; and they are plentifully stock'd with Fish, as well as the *Meschasipi*. The Crocodiles are very dangerous upon this great River, as I have already observ'd; and they devour a Man if they can surprize him; but 'tis easie to avoid them, for they don't swim after Men, nor follow them a-shoar.

The Country affords all sorts of Game, as Turkey-Cocks, Partridges, Quails, Parrots, Wood-Cocks, Turtle-Doves, and Wood-Pidgeons; and abundance of wild Bulls, wild Goats, Stags, Beavers, Otters, Martins, and wild Cats: But as we approach'd nearer the Sea, we saw no Beavers. I design to give a particular Account of these Creatures in another place; in the mean time we shall take notice of two others, who are unknown in *Europe*.

I have

I have already mention'd a little Animal, like a Musk'd-Rat, that M. *la Salle* kill'd as we came from Fort *Miamis* to the *Illinois*, which deserves a particular Description. It looks like a Rat as to the Shape of its Body, but it is as big as a Cat : His Skin looks Silver-like, with some fair black Hair, which makes the Colour the more admirable. His Tail is without any Hair, as big as a Man's Finger, and about a Foot long, wherewith he hangs himself to the Boughs of Trees. That Creature has under the Belly a kind of a Bag, wherein they put their young ones when they are pursu'd ; which is one of the most wonderful things of the World, and a clear Demonstration of the Providence and Goodness of the Almighty, who takes so particular a Care of the meanest of his Creatures.

There is no fierce Beast in all that Country that dares attack Men ; for the *Mechibichi*, the most terrible of all, and who devours all other Beasts whatsoever, runs away upon the approach of a Savage. The Head of that Creature is very like that of the spotted Lynx, but somewhat bigger : his Body is long, and as large as a wild Goat, but his Legs are shorter ; his Paws are like a Cat's-Foot ; but the Claws are so long and strong, that no other Beast can resist them. When they have kill'd any Beast, they eat part of it, and carry the rest upon their Back, to hide it in the Woods ; and I have been told that no other Beast dare meddle with it. Their Skin is much like that of a Lion, as well as their Tail ; but their Head is much bigger.

The Savages gave us to understand that to the Westward of their Habitation, there are some Beasts who carry Men upon their Backs, and shew'd us the Hoof and part of the Leg of one, which was certainly the Hoof of a Horse ; and surely Horses must not be utterly unknown in the Northern *America* : for then how cou'd the Savages have drawn upon

upon the Rock I have mention'd, the Figure of that Animal?

They have in that Country all sorts of Trees we have in *Europe*, and a great many other unknown to us. There are the finest Cedars in the World; and another sort of Tree, from which drops a most fragrant Gum, which in my opinion exceeds our best Perfumes. The Cotton-Trees are of a prodigious height; the Savages make them hollow with Fire, to make their *Pyrogues* of them; and we have seen some of them all of a-piece, above an hundred Foot long. The Oak is so good, that I believe it exceeds ours for building Ships. I have observ'd that Hemp grows naturally in that Country, and that they make Tarr and Pitch toward the Sea-Coasts; and as I don't question but that there are some Iron-Mines, the Building of Men of War wou'd be very cheap in the River *Meschafipi*.

I took notice in my Description of *Louisiana*, that there are vast Meadows, which need not to be grubb'd up, but are ready for the Plow and Seed; and certainly the Soil must be very fruitful, since Beans grow naturally, without any Culture. Their Stalks subsist several Years, bearing Fruit in the proper Seasons: They are as big as one's Arm, and climb up the highest Trees, just as Ivy does. The Peach-Trees are like ours, and so fruitful, that they wou'd break if they were not supported. Their Forests are full of Mulberry-Trees and Plum-Trees, whose Fruit is be-musk'd. They have also plenty of Pomegranate-Trees and Chestnut-Trees: And 'tis observable, that all these Trees are cover'd with Vines, whose Grapes are very big and sweet.

They have three or four Crops of *Indian Corn* in one Year; for they have no other Winter than some Rains. We had not time enough to look for Mines; but we found in several Places some Pit-Coal; and the Savages shew'd us great Mines of Lead and Copper.

per. They have also Quarries of Freestone; and of black, white, and Jasper-like Marble, of which they make their *Calumets*.

These Savages are good-natur'd Men, affable, civil, and obliging; but I design to make a particular Tract concerning their Manners, in my *Second Volume*. It seems they have no Sentiments of Religion; though one may judge from their Actions that they have a kind of Veneration for the Sun, which they acknowledge, as it seems, for the Maker and Preserver of all things.

When the *Nadouessians* and *Iffati* take Tobacco, they look upon the Sun, which they call in their Language *Louis*; and as soon as they have lighted their Pipe, they present it to the Sun with these Words, *Tchen-diouba Louis*, that is to say, *Smoak Sun*; which I took for a kind of Adoration. I was glad when I heard that this only *Deity* was call'd *Louis*, because it was also my Name. They call the Moon *Louis Basatsche*, that is to say, *The Sun of the Night*; so that the Moon and Sun have the same Name, except that the Moon is distinguish'd by the Word *Basatsche*.

They offer also to the Sun the best Part of the Beast they kill, which they carry to the Cabin of their Chief, who makes his Profit thereof, and mumbles some Words as it raises. They offer also the first Smoak of their *Calumets*, and then blow the Smoak towards the four Corners of the World. This is all I have observ'd concerning their Religion; which makes me believe that they have a religious Veneration for the Sun.

C H A P. XLII.

An Account of the various Languages of the Nations inhabiting the Banks of the Meschafipi ; of their Submission to their Chief ; of the Difference of their Manners from the Savages of Canada ; and of the Difficulties, or rather Impossibilities attending their Conversion.

TIS very strange that every Nation of the Savages of the Northern *America* should have a peculiar Language ; for though some of them live not ten Leagues one from another, they must use an Interpreter to talk together, there being no universal Language amongst them ; as one may call the *Lingua Franca*, which is understood upon all the Coast of the *Mediterranean-Sea* ; or the *Latin Tongue*, common to all the Learned Men of *Europe*. However, those who live so near one another, understand some Words us'd amongst their Neighbours, but not well enough to treat together without an Interpreter ; and therefore they us'd to send one of their Men to each of their Allies, to learn their Language, and remain with them as their Resident, and take Care of their Concerns.

These Savages differ from those of *Canada* both in their Manners, Customs, Temper, Inclinations, and even in the Shape of their Heads ; those of the *Meschafipi* having their Heads very flat. They have large Places in their Villages, where they meet together upon any publick Rejoycings ; and where they have publick Games at certain Seasons of the Year. They are lively and active, having nothing of that Morosity and Pensiveness of the *Iroquesse* and others. Their Chiefs have a more absolute Authority than those of the other Savages, which Power is very narrow ; and those who live the nearest to the Mouth of the River, have such a Deference for their Chief,

Chief, that they dare not pass between him and a Flambeau, which is always carry'd before him in all Ceremonies. These Chiefs have Servants and Officers to wait upon them: They distribute Rewards and Presents as they think fit. In short, they have amongst them a Form of Political Government; and I must own they make a tolerable use of their Reason.

They were altogether ignorant of Fire-Arms, and all other Instruments and Tools of Iron and Steel, their Knives and Axes being made of Flint, and other sharp Stones: And whereas we were told that the *Spaniards* of *New Mexico* liv'd not above forty Leagues from them, and supply'd them with all the Tools, and other Commodities of *Europe*; we found nothing among them that might be suspected to come from the *Europeans*, unless it be some little pieces of Glass strung upon a Thread, with which their Women use to adorn their Heads. They wear Bracelets and Ear-Rings of fine Pearls, which they spoil, having nothing to boar them with, but with Fire. They made us to understand that they have them in exchange for their *Calumets*, from some Nations inhabiting the Coast of the great Lake to the South-ward, which I take to be the *Gulph of Florida*.

I'll say nothing here, or at least very little, concerning their Conversion, reserving to discourse fully upon that Subject, in another *Volume*, wherein I promise my self to undeceive many People about the false Opinions they entertain on this Matter. Wherever the Apostles appear'd, they converted so great a number of People, that the Gospel was known and believ'd in a short time, thro' most part of the then known World. But our Modern Missions are not attended with that Grace and Power, and therefore we are not to expect those miraculous Conversions. I have imparted to them, as well as I cou'd, the chief and general Truths of the *Christian Religion*: But, as
I have

have observ'd already, the Languages of those Nations having little or no Affinity one with another, cannot say that my Endeavours have been very successful, tho' I learn'd the Language of the *Iffati* or *Nadoussians*, and understood indifferently well that of the *Illinois*: But the Truths of Christianity are so sublime, that I fear, neither my Words nor Signs and Actions have been able to give them an Idea of what I preach'd unto them. GOD alone, who knows the Hearts of Men, knows also what success my Endeavours have had. The Baptism I have administer'd to several Children, of whose Death I was morally assur'd, is the only certain Fruit of my Mission. But after all, I have only discover'd the Way for other Missionaries, and shall be ready at all times to return thither, thinking my self very happy if I can spend the rest of my Days in endeavouring my own and other Mens Salvation; and especially in favour of those poor Nations, who have been hitherto ignorant of their Creator and Redeemer. But lest I shou'd tire the Reader, I reassume the Thread of my Discourse.

C H A P, XLIII.

An Account of the Fishery of the Sturgeons; and of the Course we took, for fear of meeting some of our Men from Fort Crevecoeur.

WE embark'd the Twenty fourth of April, as I have already said; and our Provisions being spent some Days after, we had nothing to live upon, but the Game we kill'd, or the Fish we cou'd catch. Stags, wild Goats, and even wild Bulls are pretty scarce toward the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*; for this Nation comes as far as the *Meschasipi* to hunt them; but by good chance we found a great quantity

tity of Sturgeons, with *long Bills*, as we call'd them, from the shape of their Head. It was then the Season that these Fishes spawn; and they come as near the Shore as they can; so that we kill'd as many as we wou'd with our Axes and Swords, without spending our Powder and Shot. They were so numerous, that we took nothing but the Belly, and other dainty Parts, throwing off the rest.

As we came near the Mouth of the River of the *Illinois*, my Men begun to be very afraid to meet with their Comrades of Fort *Crevecoeur*; for having not yet exchange'd their Commodities, as they were order'd, and refus'd to go Northward at first, as I desir'd them, they had great reason to fear that they wou'd stop them, and punish them for not having follow'd my Directions. I was likewise afraid that by these Means our Voyage towards the Sea wou'd be discover'd, (there being some Reasons to keep it secret, as I shall observe in another place) and our farther Discovery stopt; and therefore to prevent any such thing, I advis'd them to row all the Night, and to rest our selves during the Day in the Islands, which are so numerous in that River. The Trees and Vines wherewith those Islands are cover'd, are so thick, that one can hardly land; and so we might lie there very safe, it being impossible to discover us. This Advice was approv'd, and thereby we avoided any Rencontre; for I did not doubt but our Men came now and then from Fort *Crevecoeur*, to observe the *Meschasipi*, and get Intelligence of us. But when we found our selves pretty far from the River of the *Illinois*, we travell'd in the Day-time, as we used to do, in order to make our Observations, and view the Country; which does not appear so fertil, nor cover'd with so fine Trees above the River of the *Illinois*, as it is below, down the *Meschasipi* to the Sea.

C H A P. XLIV.

A short Account of the Rivers that fall into the Meschafipi; of the Lake of Tears; of the Fall of St. Anthony; of the wild Oats of that Country; and several other Circumstances of our Voyage.

NO Rivers, as I have already said, run into the *Meschafipi* between the River of the *Illinois* and the Fall of *St. Anthony*, from the Westward, but the River *Ottenta*, and another which discharges it self into it within eight Leagues of the said Fall: But on the Eastward we met with a pretty large River, call'd *Ouisconsin*, or *Misconsin*, which comes from the Northward. This River is near as large as that of the *Illinois*; but I cannot give an exact Account of the length of its Course, for we left it about sixty Leagues from its Mouth, to make a *Portage* into another River, which runs into the Bay of *Puans*, as I shall observe when I come to speak of our return from *Issati* into *Canada*. This River *Ouisconsin* runs into the *Meschafipi* about an hundred Leagues above that of the *Illinois*.

Within five and twenty Leagues after, we met another River coming from the Eastward, nam'd by the *Issati* and *Nadoussians*, *Chebadeba*, that is, *The Black River*. I can say very little of it, having observ'd only its Mouth; but I judge from that, that it is not very considerable. About thirty Leagues higher we found the Lake of *Tears*, which we nam'd so, because the Savages, who took us, as it will be hereafter related, consulted in this Place what they should do with their Prisoners; and those who were for murdering us, cry'd all the Night upon us, to oblige, by their Tears, their Companions to consent to our Death. This Lake is form'd by the *Meschafipi*, and may be

seven Leagues long, and five broad. Its Waters are almost stagnant, the Stream being hardly perceptible in the middle. We met, within a League above the Lake, another River, call'd, *The River of the Wild Bulls*, because of the great number of those Beasts grazing upon its Banks. It falls with a great rapidity into the *Meschasipi*; but some Leagues above its Mouth, the Stream is very gentle and moderate. There is an infinite number of large Tortoises in that River, which are very relishing. A Row of Mountains fence its Banks in some places.

There is another River, which falls forty Leagues above this last, into the *Meschasipi*; thro' which one may go into the Upper Lake, by making a *Portage* from it into the River *Nissipikouet*, which runs into the same Lake. It is full of Rocks and rapid Streams. We nam'd it *The River of the Grave*, or *Mausolæum*, because the Savages bury'd there one of their Men, who was bitten by a Rattle-Snake. They us'd great Ceremonies in his Funeral, which I shall describe in another place; and I put upon his Corps a white Covering; for which the Savages return'd me their publick Thanks, and made a great Feast, to which above an hundred Men were invited.

The Navigation of the *Meschasipi* is interrupted ten Leagues above this River of the *Grave*, by a Fall of fifty or sixty Foot, which we call'd *The Fall of St. Anthony of Padua*, whom we had taken for the Protector of our Discovery. There is a Rock of a Pyramidal Figure, just in the middle of the Fall of the River.

The Row of Mountains fencing the Banks of the *Meschasipi*, ends at the Mouth of the River of *Ojiconsin*; and there we likewise observ'd, that that River, which runs from thence to the Sea almost directly North and South, runs then from the Westward or the North-West. The Misfortune we had of being taken Prisoners, hindred us from going as far as its
Source,

Source, which we cou'd never learn from the Savages, who told us only, that about twenty or thirty Leagues above the Fall of *St. Anthony*, there is another Fall; near which a Nation of Savages inhabit at certain Seasons of the Year. They call those Nations *Tintonba*, that is, *The Inhabitants of the Meadows*.

Eight Leagues above the Fall of *St. Anthony*, we met with the River of the *Iffati* or *Nadoussians*, which is very narrow at the Mouth. It comes out from the Lake of the *Iffati*, lying about seventy Leagues from its Mouth. We call'd this River *The River of St. Francis*; and it was in this Place that we were made Slaves by the *Iffati*.

The Course of the *Meschasipi*, according to our best Computation, is about Eight hundred Leagues long, from *Tintonba* to the Sea, including its Windings and Turnings; which are very great, and may be navigable from the Fall of *St. Anthony*, for flat-bottom'd Boats, provided the Islands were clear'd from Trees, and especially from Vines; which having ty'd the Trees together, wou'd stop a Boat in many Places.

The Country about the Lake *Iffati* is a Marshy Ground, wherein grows abundance of wild Oats, which grow without any Culture or Sowing, in Lakes, provided they are not above three Foot deep. That Corn is somewhat like our Oats, but much better; and its Stalks are a great deal longer when it is ripe. The Savages gather it, and live thereupon several Months of the Year, making a kind of Broath thereof. The Savage Women are oblig'd to tie several Stalks together with White Bark of Trees, to fright away the Ducks, Teals, or Swans, which otherwise wou'd spoil it before it be ripe.

This Lake of *Iffati* lies within sixty Leagues to the Westward of the Upper Lake; but 'tis impossible to travel by Land from one to the other, unless it be in

a hard Frost, because of the Marshy Grounds, which otherwise sink under a Man ; but, as I have already said, they may use their Canou's, tho' it be very troublesom, because of the many *Portages*, and the length of the Way, which, by Reason of the Windings of the River, is about a hundred and fifty Leagues. The shortest way is by the River of the *Grave*, thro' which we went in our return. We found nothing but the Bones of the Savage we had bury'd there, the Bears having pull'd out with their Paws the great Stakes the Savages had beat deep into the Ground round about the Corps ; which is their usual Way of Burying their Dead. We found near the Grave a *Calumet* or Pipe of War, and a Pot, in which the Savages had left some fat Meat of Wild Bulls, for the Use of their dead Friend, during his Voyage into the Country of *Souls* ; which sheweth that they believe their Immortality.

There are many other Lakes near the River *Issati* from which several Rivers spring. The Banks of those Rivers are inhabited by the *Issati*, the *Nadoussians*, the *Tintonha* or *Inhabitants of Meadows*, the *Oudabathon* or *Men of Rivers*, the *Chongasketon* or *Nation of the Wolf* or *the Dog*, for *Chonga* signifies either of these Creatures. There are also several other Nations, which we include under the general Denomination of *Nadoussians*. These Savages may bring into the Field eight or nine thousand Men : They are Brave, Bold, great Runners, and good Marksmen with their Arrows. It was a Party of these Savages that took us Prisoners, and carry'd us to the *Issati*, as I am going to relate in the following Chapter.

C H A P. XLV.

The Author and his Canou-Men are taken by the Savages, who, after several Attempts upon their Lives, carry them away with them into their Country above the River Meschasipi.

WE used to go to Prayers thrice a Day, as I have elsewhere observ'd; and my constant Request to God was, That when we shou'd first meet the Savages, it might happen to be by Day. Their Custom is, to kill as Enemies all they meet by Night, to enrich themselves with their Spoils, which are nothing but a parcel of Hatchets, Knives, and such like Trifles; which yet they value more than we do Gold or Silver. They make no scruple to assassinate even their own Allies, when they think they can handsomely conceal the Murder; for by such Exploits it is they hope to gain the Reputation of being great Soldiers, and to pass for Men of Courage and Resolution.

'Twas with a great deal of Satisfaction that we survey'd the Pleasures of the River *Meschasipi*, all along our Passage up it, which had been since the first of *April*. Nothing as yet had interrupted our Observations, whether it were navigable above or below. In our way we kill'd seven or eight Bustards or Wild Turkeys, which in these Countries encrease mightily, as well as all other Wild Creatures. We had also plenty of Bulls, Deers, Castors, Fish, and Bears Flesh; which last we kill'd as they were swimming over the River.

And here I cannot forbear seriously reflecting on that secret Pleasure and Satisfaction of Mind, which is to be found in Prayer, and the real Advantages which may be drawn from thence, when I consider how

effectually my own were heard : For the same Day, being the Twelfth of *April*, as our two Men were boiling one of the Bustards, and my self resitting our Canou on the Banks of the River, I perceiv'd all of a sudden, about Two in the Afternoon, not less than fifty Canou's, which were made of Bark, and mann'd with a hundred and twenty Savages, who were stark naked, and came down the River with an extraordinary Swiftness, to surprize the *Miami's*, *Illinois*, and *Marobans*, their Enemies.

We threw away the Broath which was a preparing, and getting aboard as fast as we cou'd, made towards them, crying out thrice, *Mistigouche* and *Ditatchez*, which in the Language of the *Iroquese* and *Algonquins*, is as much as to say, *Comrades, we are Men of Wooden Canou's* ; for so they call those that sail in great Vessels. This had no effect, for the Barbarians understood not what we said ; so that they surrounded us immediately, and began to let fly their Arrows at a distance, till the Eldest amongst them perceiving that I had a *Calumet* or Pipe of Peace in my hand, came up to us, and prevented our being murdered by their Warriours.

These Men who are more brutal than those of the lower River, fell a jumping out of their Canou's, some upon Land, others into the Water ; surrounding us on all Sides with Shrieks and Out-cries that were indeed very terrifying. 'Twas to no purpose to resist, being but three to so great a number. One of them snatch'd the Pipe of Peace out of my Hand, as our Canou and theirs were fastned together on the Bank of the River. We presented them with some small Pieces of *Martinico* Tobacco, because it was better than what they had. As they receiv'd it, the Elders of them cry'd out *Miabima*, *Miabima* ; but what they meant by it, we knew not. However, we made Signs with our Oars upon the Sand, that the *Miami's* their Enemies, whom they were in search of, had pass'd

pass'd the River, and were upon their Flight to join the *Illinois*.

When they saw themselves discover'd, and consequently out of all hopes of surprizing their Enemies, three or four of the eldest of them laid their hands on my Head, and began to weep bitterly, accompanying their Tears with such mournful Accents as can hardly be express'd; till with a sorry Handkerchief of *Armenian* Cloth, which I had left, I made a Shift to dry up their Tears: However, to very little purpose; for refusing to smook in our *Calumet* or Pipe of Peace, they thereby gave us to understand, that their design was still to murder us. Hereupon with an horrid Out-cry, which they set up all at once, to make it yet the more terrible, they hurry'd us cross the River, forcing us to redouble the Stroaks of our Oar, to make the more speed; and entertaining us all the while with such dismal Howlings, as were capable of striking Terrour into the most resolute and daring Souls. Being come a-shoar on the other side, we unloaded our Canou, and landed our Things, part of which they had robb'd us of already. Some time after our Landing, we made a fire a second time, to make an end of boiling our Bustard. Two others we presented the Barbarians, who having consulted together what they should do with us, two of their Leaders came up to us, and made us to understand by Signs, that their Warriours were resolv'd upon our Death. This oblig'd me, wilst one of our Canou-Men look'd after our Things, to go with the other, and apply my self to to their Chiefs. Six Hatchets, fifteen Knives, some pieces of Tobacco, was the Present that I made them. After which, bending my Neck, and pointing to a Hatchet, I signifi'd to them by that Submission, that we threw our selves on their Mercy.

The Present had the good effect to soften some of them, who, according to their Custom, gave us

some Flesh of Beaver to eat, themselves putting the three first Bits in our Mouths; having first blown upon it, because the Meat was hot. After this they set their Platter before us, which was made of the Bark of a Tree, leaving us at liberty to feed after our own fashion. These Civilities did not hinder us from passing the Night very uneasily, because in the Evening before they went to sleep, they had return'd us our *Calumet* of Peace. The two Canou-Men resolv'd to sell their Lives as dear as they could, and to defend themselves like Men to the last, in case they shou'd attack us. For my part, I told them I resolv'd to suffer my self to be slain without the least Resistance, in Imitation of our Saviour, who resign'd himself up voluntarily into the hand of his Executioner. However, we watch'd all Night by turns, that we might not be surpriz'd in our Sleep.

C H A P. XLVI.

The Resolution which the Barbarians took to carry the Author and his two Men along with them up into their Country, above the River Meschasipi.

THE 13th of April, very early in the Morning, one of their Captains, whose Name was *Nar-rhetoba*, being one of those who had been for killing us, and whose Body was painted all over, came and demanded my Pipe of Peace. It being deliver'd him, he fill'd it with Tobacco of their own growth, and made those of his own Band smoak in it first; then all the rest that had been for putting us to death. After this he made Signs, that we must go with them into their Country; whither they were then about to return. This Proposal did not startle me much, for having learn'd the Enterprize which they had fram'd

fram'd against their Enemies to miscarry, I was not unwilling to embrace any opportunity of making farther Discoveries amongst these barbarous Nations.

That which perplex'd me most, was the Difficulty I had of saying my Office, and performing the rest of my Devotions, in the presence of these Wretches. Many of them observing my Lips to move, told me in a harsh and severe Tone, *Ouackanche*; from whence, because we understood not a word of their Language, we concluded them to be very angry. *Michael Ako*, one of the Canou-Men, told me with a frightful Air, that if I continu'd to say my Breiary, we should infallibly be murther'd by them. *Picard du Gay* desir'd me at least to say my Prayers in private, for fear of enraging them too far. The last Advice seem'd the best; but the more I endeavour'd to conceal my self, the more of them had I at my Heels. If at any time I retir'd into the Woods, they immediately concluded 'twas to hide something: So that I knew not which way to turn me for the performance of my Duty; for they would never suffer me a moment out of their Sight.

This compell'd me at last to acquaint the two Canou-Men, that I cou'd no longer dispense with my self in omitting the Duty of my Office: That if they shou'd murder us on this Account, I shou'd indeed be the innocent Cause of their Death as well as my own; that therefore I ran the same Risque as they, but that no Danger was great enough to justify me in the dispensing with my Duty. In fine, the Barbarians understood by the Word *Ouackanche*, that the Book in which I read, was an evil Spirit, as I afterwards understood by being amongst them. However, I then knew by their Gestures, that they had an aversion for it. Wherefore to use them to it by degrees, I was wont to sing the Litanies, as we were upon the Way, holding the Book in my Hand. They fondly

fondly believ'd my Breviary was a Spirit, which taught me to sing thus for their Diversion. All these People naturally love Singing.

C H A P. XLVII.

The many Outrages done us by the Savages, before we arriv'd in their Country. They frequently design against our Lives.

TH E many Outrages which were done us by these Barbarians, through the whole Course of our Voyage, are not to be imagin'd. Our Canoe was both bigger and heavier laden than theirs. They seldom carry any thing but a Quiver full of Arrows, a Bow, and some sorry Skin or other, which usually serves two of them for a Coverlet. The Nights were sharp as yet for the Season, by reason of our advancing still Northwards; so that at Night 'twas necessary to keep our selves as warm as we could.

Our Conductors observing that we did not make so much way as themselves, order'd three of their Warriours to go aboard us. One seated himself on my Left, the other two behind the Men, to help them to row, that we might make the more haste. The Barbarians sometimes row no less than thirty Leagues a day, when they are in haste to take the Field, and design to surprize their Enemies. Those who took us were of divers Villages, and as much divided in their Sentiments, in regard of us. Every Evening 'twas our peculiar Care to plant our Cabin near the young Chief, who had taken Tobacco in our Pipe of Peace; signifying to him thereby, that we put our selves under his Protection.

This we did, by reason of the Divisions which reign'd amongst the Savages. *Aquipaguetin*, one of their Chiefs, who had a Son kill'd by the *Miami's*, finding

finding he could not revenge himself of that Nation, thought of venting his Passion upon us. Every Night would he bewail his Son, whom he had lost in the War, thinking thereby to stir up those of his Band to revenge his Death, by killing us, seizing our Effects, and after that pursuing the *Miami's*. But the other Savages, who were very fond of *European* Commodities, thought it more adviseable to protect us, that other *Europeans* might be encourag'd to come amongst them. They chiefly desir'd Guns, upon which they set the highest Value, having seen the use of them upon one of our Canou-Men's killing three or four Bustards or wild Turkies, at one single Discharge of his Fusil; whereas they could not kill above one at a time with their Bows.

We have understood by them since, that the Words *Manza Ouackanche* signifie *Iron possess'd by an Evil Spirit*. So they call the Fusil, which breaks a Man's Bones; whereas their Arrows glide only between the Flesh and the Muscles, which they pierce without breaking the Bone at all, or very seldom at least. For which reason it is, that these People do much easier cure the Wounds which are made by the Arrow or Dart, than those of the Fusil.

When we were first taken by the Barbarians, we were got about an hundred and fifty Leagues up the River, from that of the *Illinois*. We row'd afterwards in their Company for nineteen Days together, sometimes North, sometimes North-East, as we judg'd by the Quarters from whence the Wind blew, and according to the best Observations we could make by our Compass. So that after these Barbarians had forc'd us to follow them, we made more than two hundred and fifty Leagues upon that same River. The Savages are of an extraordinary Force in a Canou. They'll row from Morning to Night without resting, or hardly allowing themselves so much time as to eat their Victuals.

To oblige us to follow them the faster, there were usually four or five of their Men a-board us ; for our Canou was larger, and deeper loaden than theirs, so that we had need of their Assistance, to be able to keep 'em company. When it rain'd, we set up our Tilts ; but when 'twas fair, the Heavens were our Canopy. By this means we had leisure to take our Observations from the Moon and the Stars when it was clear. Notwithstanding the fatigue of the Day, the youngest of the Warriours went at Night and danc'd the *Reed* before four or five of their Captains till Midnight. The Captain to whose Quarter they went, sent with a deal of Ceremony to those that danc'd, a Warriour of his own Family, to make them smoak one after another in his own *Reed* of War, which is distinguish'd from that of Peace by its Feathers.

This sort of Ceremony is always concluded by the two Youngest of those who have had any Relations kill'd in the Wars. These take several Arrows, and laying them a-cross at the point, present them in that manner to their Captains, weeping very bitterly ; who, notwithstanding the excess of their Sorrow, return them back to be kiss'd. In short, neither the Fatigues of the Day, nor Watchings, are sufficient to prevail with the Elders so much as to shut their Eyes, most of them watching till almost Break of Day, for fear of being surpriz'd by their Enemies. As soon as the Morning appears, one of them sets up the ordinary Cry, when in a moment the Warriours are all in their Canou's. Some are sent to encompass the Islands, and to see what Game they can meet with ; whilst others that are more swift, go by Land to discover by the Smoak the Place where the Enemies lie.

C H A P. XLVIII.

The Advantages which the Savages of the North have over those of the South, in relation to the War : As also the Ceremony which was perform'd by one of our Captains, having caus'd us to halt at Noon.

WHEN the Savages of the North are at War, 'tis their Custom to post themselves upon the point of some one of those many Islands, of which this River is full, where they look upon themselves to be always safe. Those of the South, who are their Enemies, having nothing but *Pyrogues*, or Canou's of Wood, with which they cannot go very fast, because of their weight. None but the Northern Nations have Birch to make Canou's of their Bark. The People of the South are depriv'd of this Advantage, whereas those of the North can with an admirable facility pass from Lake to Lake, and River to River, to attack their Enemy. Nay, when they are discover'd, they value it not, provided they have time to recover their Canou's ; for 'tis impossible for those who pursue them either by Land, or in the *Pyrogues*, to do it with any Success.

As to what relates to Ambuscades, no Nation in the World comes near those Northern Savages, being patient of Hunger, and the utmost Severities of the Weather, beyond belief. 'Tis their sure Game ; and they never fail being succour'd by three or four of their Comrades, whenever their Enemies attack 'em. So that they always bring their Designs about this way, at least, if not over-power'd so by Numbers, as not to be able to recover their Canou's, and save themselves by flight.

One of the nineteen Days of our most tiresome Voyage, a Captain call'd *Aquipagnetin*, who afterwards

wards adopted me for his Son, as we shall see anon, thought it advisable to halt about Noon in a fine large Meadow, situate on the West of the River *Medasipi*. This Chief had kill'd a large fat Bear, to which he invited the principal Captains of the Warriors. After the Repast, these Savages having all of them certain Marks in the Face, and their Bodies painted with the Figure of some Beast, such as every one fancy'd best, their Hair being also anointed with the Oil of Bears, and stuck all over with red and white Feathers, and their Heads cover'd with the Down of Birds, began to dance with their Hands all upon their Hip, and striking the Soles of their Feet with that violence against the Earth, that the very Marks appear'd. During the Dance, one of the Sons of the Master of the Ceremonies, made 'em all smother in the Pipe of War, himself shedding abundance of Tears during the whole Action. And the Father, who marshall'd the whole melancholy Scene, accompany'd him with a Voice so lamentable and broken with so many rising Sighs, as were capable of melting the most obdurate Heart, bathing himself all the while in his Tears: Sometimes would he address himself to the Warriour, sometimes to me, laying his Hands on my Head, as he did also on my Mens. Sometimes would he lift up his Eyes to Heaven, repeating the Word *Louis*, which in their Speech signifies the Sun, appealing to him for Justice on the Murderers of his Son, and hoping to engage his Followers to avenge his Death.

As for us, as far as we could judge, all this Grimace boded us no good: And indeed we afterwards understood, that this Barbarian meant nothing less than our Destruction by it, as well now as at other times. But finding the opposition he was like to meet with from the other Chiefs, who were of a contrary Opinion, he was content to suffer us to embark, resolving however to make use of some o-

ther

ther Stratagem to get into his own Hands, by little and little the rest of our Things. To take them from us openly by force, tho' he easily could, he durst not, for fear of those of his own Nation, who for such an Action would have accus'd him of a Baseness of Spirit, which even the most barbarous disdain.

C H A P. XLIX.

What Tricks and Artifices were us'd by Aquipaguetin to cheat us handsomely of our Goods; with many other Accidents that hapned in our Voyage.

BY what has been said, it plainly appears that Aquipaguetin was a crafty designing Knave. He had with him the Bones of one of his deceas'd Friends, which he kept very choicely in the Skin of a Beast, adorn'd with several red and black Lists of a Porcupine's. He would be from time to time assembling his Followers to make them smoak; and then would he send for us one after another, and oblige us to cover the Bones of their Deceas'd with some of our *European* Merchandise, in order to dry up the Tears which he had shed for him and his Son, who had been kill'd by the *Miami's*.

To appease the crafty old Savage, we strew'd on the Bones of the Deceas'd several Pieces of *Martinique* Tobacco, Hatchers, Knives, Beads, and some Bracelets of black and white Porcelain. Thus you see how we were drain'd by such Methods and Pretences, as we could not easily gainsay. He gave us to understand, That what he had thus demanded of us, was not for himself but the Dead, and to give the Warriours that he brought with him; and indeed he distributed amongst them whatever he took from us. He would have had us understood by this, That

as a Captain he would take nothing himself but what we should freely present him with.

All this while we lay at the point of the *Lake of Tears*; we nam'd it so by reason of the Tears which this Chief did shed here every Night. When he was weary of Weeping, he made one of his Sons come and supply his Place. His Design in this was to excite the Compassion of the Warriors, and to prevail with them to kill us, and after that to pursue their Enemies; and so revenge the Death of his Son which he had lost.

Sometimes they sent the swiftest amongst them by Land to seek for prey, who would drive whole Drovers of wild Bulls before them, and force them to swim the River. Of these they sometimes kill'd forty or fifty, but took only the Tongues, and some other of the best Pieces: The rest they left, not to burden themselves, that they might make the more haste home.

'Tis true, we had Provisions plenty and good, but then we had neither Bread nor Wine, nor Salt, nor indeed any thing else to season it; and this lasted during the Four last Years of the almost Twelve that I liv'd in *America*. In our last Voyage, we liv'd much after the same manner, sometimes abounding, and at other times again reduc'd to the last Extremity; so that we have not eat a bit for four and twenty hours together, and sometimes longer. The reason is, because in small Canou's of Bark, one can stow but little: So that whatever Precaution a Man may use, he will often find himself destitute of all things necessary for Life. Did the Religious of *Europe* undergo half the Fatigues, or did they but observe the Fasts that we have kept for so long a time together in *America*, there would need no Proofs to Canonize them. But then it must be own'd, that what destroys the Merits of our Fasts, was, that if we did suffer on such occasions, our Sufferings proceeded not

nor from our Choice ; but, as the proverbial Saying is, our Virtue was our Necessity.

CHAP. L.

The Elders weep for us during the Night. New Outrages done us by Aquipaguetin. The manner how the Savages make Fire by Friction.

MAny Nights together some or other of the Elders came and wept over us. They rubb'd our Arms and Bodies very often with their Hands, which they afterwards laid on our Heads. These Tears gave us many uneasie Thoughts; 'twas impossible to sleep for them; and yet we had need enough of Rest, after the great Fatigues of the Day. Nor was I easier by Day : I knew not what to think ; sometimes I fancied that they bewail'd us, as knowing some of the Warriors had resolv'd to kill us ; and other times again I flatter'd my self, that their Tears were the effect of their Compassion, for the evil Treatment they made us undergo. However it were, I am sure these Tears affected me more than those that shed them.

About this time, *Aquipaguetin* had another opportunity of persecuting us afresh : He had so dexterously manag'd the Matter with the Warriors of his Party, that it was one Day impracticable for us to encamp near the young Chief *Narbetoba*, who protected us, but were forc'd to go and place our selves, with our Canou and Effects at the end of the Camp. Then it was that these Barbarians gave us to understand, that the aforesaid Captain was fully resolv'd to have our Heads. This oblig'd us to have recourse once more to our Chest, and to take out twenty Knives and some Tobacco, which we distributed among

mong them with an Air that sufficiently testify'd our Discontent.

The unreasonable Wretch look'd earnestly upon his Followers one after another, as if he were in doubt what to do, and consequently to demand their Advice, whether he ought to receive our Present or refuse it. But whilst we were inclining our Necks, and delivering him the Ax, the young Commander, who seem'd to be our Protector (and it may be really was) came and snatch'd us by the Arm, and all in a rage hurry'd us away to his Cabin. His Brother too taking up some Arrows, broke 'em in our sight, to assure us by that Action, that he would protect our Lives at the hazard of his own.

The next Day they left us alone in our Canou without putting any of their Men a-board to assist us, as they had hitherto done: However, they kept all in the reer of us. After rowing four or five Leagues, another of their Captains came up to us, and made us land. As soon as we got on shoar, he fell to cutting of Grass, which he made into three little Heaps, and bade us sit down upon them: Then he took a piece of Cedar, which was full of little round Holes, into one of which he thrust a Stick of a harder Substance than the Cedar, and began to rub it about pretty fast between the Palms of his Hands, till at length it took fire. The use he put it to was to light the Tobacco in his great Pipe; and after he had wept some time over us, and laid his Hands on our Heads, he made me smoak in a *Calumet*, or Pipe of Peace; and then acquainted us by Signs, that within sixteen Days we should be at home.

C H A P. LI.

Ceremonies us'd by the Savages when they share their Prisoners. Continuation of our Journey by Land.

HAVING thus travell'd nineteen Days in our Canou by Water, we arriv'd at length within five or six Leagues of the Fall, to which we had formerly given the Name of *St. Anthony*, as we came to understand afterwards. Here the Barbarians order'd us to land in a Creek of the River *Meschasipi*; after which, they held an Assembly, to consult what they were to do with us. In short, they separated, and gave us to three of their Chiefs, instead of three of their Sons which had been kill'd in the War: Then they seiz'd our Canou, and took away all our Equipage. The Canou they pull'd to pieces, for fear it might assist us to return to their Enemies: Their own they hid amongst the Alders, to use again when they should have occasion to hunt that way. So that tho' we might have gone conveniently enough quite up into their Country by Water, yet were we oblig'd, by their Conduct, to travel no less than sixty Leagues a-foot.

Our ordinary Marches were from break of Day till ten at Night: And when we met with any Rivers, we swam them, themselves (who for the Most part are of an extraordinary size) carrying our Clothes and Equipage on their Heads, and the Canou-Men, who were less than me, upon their Shoulders, because they could not swim. As I us'd to come out of the Water, which was oftē full of Ice, for we travell'd still North, I was hardly able to stand upon my Legs. In these Parts the Frosts continue all Night even at this time of the Year; so

that our Legs were all over Blood, being cut by the Ice, which we broke by degrees in our Passage as we waded o'er the Lakes and Rivers. We never eat but once in four and twenty Hours, and then nothing but a few Scraps of Meat dry'd in Smoak after their Fashion, which they afforded us with abundance of regret.

I was so weak that I often laid me down, resolving rather to die than follow these Savages any farther, who travell'd at a rate so extraordinary, as far surpasses the Strength of any *European*. However, to hasten us, they sometimes set fire to the dry Grass in the Meadows through which we pass'd; so that our Choice was march or burn. I had a Hat which I had taken with me, to fence me from the Sun during the Heats of the Summer. This would often fall from my Head into the Fire, because it was not over-fit, and the Fire so very near. The Barbarians would snatch it out again, and lend me a hand to save me from the Flames, which they had kindled, as well as to hasten our March, as I have said, as to give notice to their People of their return. I must here acknowledge, that had it not been for *du Gay*, who did all he could to encourage me, through the whole Course of this tiresome March, I had certainly sunk under the Fatigues of it, having neither Spirits nor Strength left to support me.

C H A P. LII.

A great Contest arises amongst the Savages, about dividing our Merchandise and Equipage ; as also my Sacerdotal Ornaments and little Chest.

AFTER having travell'd about sixty Leagues a-foot, and undergone all the Fatigues of Hunger, Thirst, and Cold, besides a thousand Outrages daily done us in our Persons, after we had march'd Night and Day without ceasing, wading through Lakes and Rivers, and sometimes swam. As we now began to approach the Habitations of the Barbarians, which are situated in Morasses inaccessible to their Enemies, they thought it a proper time to divide the Merchandise which they had taken from us. Here they had like to have fallen out and cut one another's Throats, about the Roll of *Martinico-Tobacco*, which might still weigh about fifty Pound. These People value this Commodity far beyond what we do Silver or Gold. They have very good of their own growth ; but this was so well dress'd, and made up into such beautiful Rings, that they were perfectly charm'd with it. The most reasonable amongst them made us understand by Signs, that they would give their Canou-Men several Castor-Skins in return for what they had taken : But others looking upon us as Slaves, because they said we had furnish'd Arms to their Enemies, maintain'd that they were no ways oblig'd to make any return for the Things they had taken.

The reason why they divided the Spoil here, was, because this Band was compos'd of two or three different People : So that those that liv'd at a distance, were apprehensive lest the others, who were just at home, might detain all the Merchandise which they

had taken, in the first Villages they should come at; and therefore were resolv'd to play a sure Game, and have their Share aforehand. Nor had they any greater Respect for what belong'd to me, than for the Merchandise which they took from the Canoumen; for they seiz'd my Brocard Chasuble, and all the Ornaments of my portable Chapel, except the Chalice, which they durst not touch. They observ'd that this Vessel, which was of Silver gilt, cast a glittering Light, so that as often as they chanc'd to look towards it, they would shut their Eyes; The reason was, as we understood afterwards, because they believ'd it to be a Spirit which would kill them. I had a little Chest, which I kept lock'd; they made me understand by Signs, that if I did not open it, or break the Lock, they would do it for me, against some sharp Stones which they shew'd me. The reason why they threatned me thus, was, because they had not been able to open it all the way, though they attempted it several times, to see what was in it. These People understand nothing of Locks and Keys: Besides, their Design was not to cumber themselves with the Box it self, but only to take out the Things that were in it. After I had open'd it, and they saw there was little or nothing in it but Books and Papers, they left it me untouch'd.

C H A P. LIII.

The Troop approaches the Village. A Grand Consult among the Savages, whether they should kill us, or save and adopt us for their Sons. The Reception which we had from them; and the use they made of my Chasuble.

AFTER five hard Days travel, without so much as resting, except a little by Night in the open Air, we perceiv'd at last abundance of Women and Children

Children coming out to meet our little Army : All the Elders of the Nation were assembled upon this Occasion. We observ'd several Cabins, near the Posts of which lay several Trusses of Straw and dry'd Weeds, where these Barbarians are wont to fasten and burn the Slaves which they bring home with them from their Wars. Here they order'd *Picard du Gay* to sing, who all the time rattled a hollow Gourd full of little round Stones, which he held in his Hand. I observ'd moreover, that his Hair and Face were painted with different Colours, and that they had fastned a Tuft of white Feathers to his Head. These Ceremonies renew'd our Fears; and we thought we had more reason than ever to believe, that they had still a Design to put us to death. Nor were our Fears groundless, since these, with many others, are the Ceremonies which they use at the burning of their Enemies.

The worst was, we could not make our selves be understood. However, after many Vows and secret Prayers which we offer'd up to God on this Occasion, the Barbarians at last gave us some wild Oats to eat, of which I have spoken elsewhere. They gave them us in great Dishes made of Birch-trees; and the Savage Women season'd them with *Bluez*. This is a sort of Black Grain, which they dry in the Sun in the Summer, and are as good as Corrans : The *Dutch* call them *Clake-besien*.

All the while the Feast lasted, which was the best Meal that we had made ever since we had been taken, there was a high Dispute between *Aquipaguetin* and the others, about the Distribution they were to make of the two Canou-men and my self. At last *Aquipaguetin*, as Head of the Party, carry'd it; who turning from one of the principal Captains towards me, presented me to smoak in his *Calumet* of Peace, receiving from me at the same time that which we had brought, as a certain Pledge of the Union which

was to be for the future 'twixt them and us. After this, he adopted me for his Son, in the room of him that he had lost in the War.

Cnarhetoba and another Captain did the same by the two Canou-men. This Separation was very grievous to us, tho' somewhat allay'd by the Satisfaction we had to find that our Lives were safe. *Du Gay* took me aside to confess him, being sensible of the uncertain Condition his Life was in, amongst so barbarous a People. This oblig'd him to embrace me very heartily, and to beg my Pardon for what was past, having first made the same Request to God. I should have been overjoy'd to have seen *Michael Aka* as well dispos'd: However, I did not omit to shew both the one and the other all the Marks of a most tender Affection.

In short, the Savages having parted us, led us away each to his own Village. Our Way lay over a Morass, where we march'd half way the Leg in Water for a League together, at the end of which we were met by five of *Aquipaguetin's* Wives, who receiv'd me in one of the three Canou's of Bark which they had brought with them, and then carry'd me a little League farther into a small Island, where their Cabins were.

C H A P. LIV.

*The Authors Reception by the Relations of Aquipaguetin.
They make him sweat to recover him of his Fatigues.
The use they make of his Chasuble and other Ornaments.*

I Arriv'd at this Place in the Month of *May*, 1680. the Day I cannot precisely tell; for I was so harass'd by the Savages on the Way, that I could not make all the little Observations which otherwise I would have done: Besides, there is some seven or eight

eight Hours difference between the Days and Nights of *Europe*, and those of *North-America*, because of the Retrogradation of the Sun. The Cape was always to West of us from *Rochel* to *Quebec*; but to South-west from thence, till we came to *Meschasipi*, which made a considerable Variation in the Needle.

This Variation was occasion'd by the unconstant motion of the Needle, which in certain Latitudes would encline to the North, or North-East; whereas in others 'twould turn from the North to the North-west. We never could be so well assur'd of our Computations in our long Voyages, as to know exactly the way our Canou's made in a Day, or what was the Variation of the Needle in each Latitude. But we found there were many Minutes of Variation, according to the Point the Wind was in. To say the truth, able Men might have lost the Memory of many things under the same Circumstances with my self.

At the entry of the Captain's Cabin who had adopted me, one of the Barbarians, who seem'd to be very old, presented me with a great Pipe to smook in, and weeping over me all the while with abundance of Tears, rubb'd both my Arms and my Head. This was to shew how concern'd he was to see me so harass'd and fatigu'd: And indeed I had often need enough of two Men to support me when I was up, or raise me when I was down. There was a Bears-Skin before the Fire, upon which the youngest Boy of the Cabin caus'd me to lie down, and then with the Grease of wild Cats anointed my Thighs, Legs, and Soles of my Feet.

Aquipaguetin's Son, who call'd me Brother, had got my Brocard Chasuble, and was strutting up and down with it upon his naked Back. He had wrapp'd up in it the Bones of a Man who had been very considerable amongst them, for whose Memory they had still a wonderful Respect. The Priest's Girdle, which

was

was made of red and white Wooll, with two Loops at the end, serv'd him to fasten it, whilst he carry'd it up and down in Triumph, calling it *Louis Chimen*, which signifies, as I since understand, the Robe of him, who is nam'd the *Sun*. After they had for some time us'd my Chafuble as an Ornament to cover the Bones of their Dead, at the celebrating their most solemn Rites, they made a Present of it to a People in Alliance with them, who liv'd 4 or 500 Leagues distant towards the West, but were come in Embassage, and had danc'd the *Calumet*.

The Day after my Arrival, *Aquipaguétin*, who was Head of a Great Family, put me on a Robe which was made of the Skins of the Bellies of wild Bulls. He gave me a second, made of ten large Castor-Skins. Then he shew'd me six or seven of his Wives, (for Poligamy is in fashion here;) he told them, as I afterwards understood, That they were to esteem me as one of their Sons. After this, he set a Bark-Dish before me, in which were Bremes, and other white Fish, to regale me withal. He gave Orders to those about him, to give me the Title that was due to the Rank which I was to hold amongst my new Kindred.

Farther; this new Father of mine observing that I could not well rise without two or three to help me, order'd a Stove to be made, into which he caus'd me to enter stark-naked with four Savages; who before they began to sweat, ty'd their *Prepuces* about with certain Strings made of the Bark of a white Wood. This Stove was cover'd with the Skins of wild Bulls, and in it they put Flints and other Stones red-hot. They order'd me by Signs to hold my Breath, time after time, as long as I could, which I did, as well as those that were with me. As for the Privy Parts, I had only a Handkerchief to cover me.

As soon as the Savages that were with me had let go their Breath, which they did with a great force, *Aquipaguetin* began to sing with a loud and thundring Voice; the others seconded him; and laying their Hands on my Body, began to rub it, and at the same time to weep bitterly. I was like to fall into a Swoon; and so was forc'd to quit the Stove. At my coming out, I was scarce able to take up my Habit of *St. Francis* to cover me withal, I was so weak: However, they continu'd to make we sweat thrice a Week, which at last restor'd me to my pristine Vigour, so that I found my self as well as ever.

C H A P. LV.

The Author like to be famish'd. They admire his Compass, and an Iron Pot which he had. He makes a Dictionary, and instructs them in Points of Religion, in relation to Polygamy and Celibacy.

MAny a melancholy Day did I pass amongst these Savages. *Aquipaguetin*, who adopted me, gave me nothing to eat but a few wild Oats five or six times a Week, and the Roes of dry'd Fish. All this Trash the Women boil'd up in an Earthen Pot: Besides, he sent me into a Neighbouring Isle, with his Wives, Children, and Servants, where I was to hough and dig with a Pick-axe and Shovel, which I had recover'd from those that robb'd us. Here we planted Tobacco, and some *European* Pulse, which I brought from thence, and were highly priz'd by *Aquipaguetin*.

This Man, to make himself the more considerable amongst those of his Tribe, would often assemble the Ancients of his Village, and in presence of them, send for my Compass, which I had still by me. Upon my turning the Needle with a Key, he took occasion

casion to tell them, and with Truth enough, That by the Guidance of that Machine it was, that we *Europeans* travell'd the whole World. Nay, being an able Spokesman, he possess'd them farther, That we were Spirits; and that we were capable of bringing things to pass that were altogether out of their power. At the end of his Discourse, which was very pathetic, all the Elders wept over me, admiring in what they could not comprehend.

I had an Iron Pot about three foot round, which had the Figure of a Lion on it, which during our Voyage serv'd us to bake our Victuals in. This Vessel was not so apt to break as our ordinary Kettles, which are more brittle; for which reason it was, not being likely to meet with Braziers to furnish us with new upon occasion, that we took this with us. This Pot the Barbarians durst never so much as touch, without covering their Hands first in something of Callos Skin. And so great a Terrour was it to the Women, that they had it hung abroad upon the Bough of a Tree; for they durst not come or sleep in the Cabin when it was there.

We would have made a Present of it to some of their Chiefs; but none of them would either accept or make use of it, because they thought that there was a Spirit hid within, that would certainly kill them. These People are all of them subject to the like Superstition. Their Jugglers impose whatever they think fit upon their Belief. 'Twas some time I spent amongst 'em, before I could make my self be understood. But Hunger beginning to press me hard, I set about making a Dictionary in their Tongue, to which I did by means of their Children, with whom I made my self as familiar as possible, to inform my self by their Prattle.

When once I had got the Word *Tabetchah*, which signifies in their Language, *How call you this?* I began to be soon able to talk of such things as are
most

most familiar. This difficulty was hard to surmount at first, because there was no Interpreter that understood both Tongues. For Example; If I had a mind to know what to *run* was in their Tongue, I was forc'd to mend my pace, and indeed actually run from one end of the Cabin to t'other, till they understood what I meant, and had told me the Word; which I presently set down in my Dictionary. The Principal of them observing the great Inclination I had to learn their Language, would often tell me, *Vatchison égagabé, Spirit, thou takest a great deal of Pains. Put Black to White.* One day they told me the Names of all the Parts of a Man's Body. However, I forbore setting down several immodest Terms, which these People scruple not to use every foot. Observing it, they would often cry *égagabé, égagabé; Spirit, Spirit, set down that Word as well as the rest.*

Thus would they divert themselves with me, and often say to one another, *When we ask Father Louis any thing, (for they had heard our Canou-Men call me so) he does not answer us. But when he has lookt upon the White, (for they have no word for Paper) he then talks, and makes us understand his Thoughts. This White thing, wou'd they add, must needs be a Spirit, which teaches him to understand all we say.* Hence they concluded, that neither of the Canou-Men had so much Wit as my self, because they could not *work upon that which was White.* So that this Qualification in me, made them fondly imagine that I could do any thing else.

One day, seeing the Rain fall in such abundance, that they fear'd 'twould spoil their hunting, they order'd me to bid it cease. I told them, pointing with my Finger to the Clouds, *That He, who was the Great Captain of Heaven; was the sole Master of the Rain and Sunshine; That He was the Great Disposer of all the Events that happen to Mortals, or the Universe in general; That what they bid me do, depended not on me, but the First Mover, who had sent me thither, to teach them to acknowledge him for their Creatour and Redeemer.*

Observing

Observing me distinguish'd from the Canou-Men by my Habit, and having no Notion of Celibacy, they would often ask what Age I was, and what Wives and Children I had. Their way of reck'ning their Years is by Winters. These Wretches, void of Light and Instruction, were strangely surpriz'd at the Answer I made them. I told them, pointing to the two Canou-Men, whom I was come three Leagues to visit, *That with us, one Man might marry but one Wife, and that nothing cou'd separate him again from that One, but Death : That for my self, I had promis'd the Great Master of Life never to marry any ; but to come and dwell amongst them, and instruct them in the Commands of the Great Master of Heaven and Earth, and to live poorly amongst them, far from my own Country, where all good Things did abound.*

'Tis true, says one of them, here is little or no Hunting in these Parts, and thou sufferest much : But have but patience till Summer, we shall then go into the hot Countries, where we shall kill Bulls enough, and then thou wilt make thy self sufficient amends for the time thou hast spent here. I had been well content, had they let me eat as their Children did ; but they hid the Victuals from me, and wou'd rise to eat in the Night, when I knew nothing of it. And although Women have usually more Compassion than Men, yet they kept the little Fish that they had, all for their Children. They consider'd me as a Slave whom their Warriours had taken in their Enemy's Country ; and prefer'd the Lives of their Children before any Consideration they had for me ; as indeed it was but reasonable they shou'd.

However, some of the Elders would come often, and mourn over me in a very doleful manner. One would call me *Grandson*, another *Nephew* ; and all would say to me, *I am strangely afflicted to see thee so long without eating, and to understand thou hast been so ill treated in thy Journey.* Those were young Warriours without Courage, who wou'd have kill'd thee, and who robb'd thee of what thou

thou badst. If thou wou'dst have had Robes of Castors, or wild Bulls, to dry thy Tears, we wou'd have given 'em thee; but thou wou'dst accept of nothing we have presented thee.

C H A P. LVI.

The most considerable Captain of the Issati and Nadouessians upbraid those that took us. The Author baptizes the Daughter of Mamenisi.

Ouasicoude, that is to say, *The Pierc'd Pine*, the wisest and most considerable of all the Chiefs of the Issati and Nadouessians, made it publickly appear, that he was highly incens'd against the Warriors that had us'd us so very ill. He said once in a full Council, That those who had robb'd us of our Things, were to be compar'd to famish'd Dogs, which having stole a piece of Flesh out of a Dish, sneak away with it when they have done: That they that had acted much after the same rate in regard of us, ought to be look'd upon as Dogs, who cou'd put such unworthy Affronts upon Men, who brought them Iron, and other Merchandizes, which they had no knowledge of, though they were found to be so useful: That for Himself, he shou'd one day have an opportunity of being reveng'd on him, who had been Author of all our Sufferings. This Reprimand was worthy the Character of a Person of Ouasicoude's Authority: And the Generosity of the Action redounded since to the Benefit of the whole Nation, as we shall see anon.

Going one day, as I often did, to visit the Cabins, I found the Infant-Child of one call'd *Mamenisi*, very sick. Having a little examin'd the Symptoms of its Distemper, I found the Child past hopes of Recovery. I desir'd our two Canou-Men to give me their

Opinions,

Opinions, telling them, I thought my self oblig'd in Conscience to baptize it. *Michael Ako* cou'd not be prevail'd with to enter the Cabin where the Infant lay. He said in excuse, That I could not forget what a Risque we had run once already, of being murder'd by the Savages through my Obstinacy, in persisting to say my Breviary; whence 'twas to be fear'd, that what I was now going to do, might expose us again to the same Danger.

The Wretch had rather comply with certain Superstitions of the Barbarians, than assist me in so pious a Design. Being follow'd then by none but *Picard du Gay*, who assisted as God-father, or rather Witness of the Baptism, I christen'd the Child, and nam'd it *Antonetta*, from St. *Anthony of Padua*; and the rather, because the said *Peter du Gay's* Name was *Anthony Anguelle*, Native of *Amiens*, and Nephew of *Monsieur du Canroï*, Proctor-General of the *Premièstres*, and since Abbot of *Beaulieu*, to whom I presented him safe at our Return from *Canada*. But to proceed; for want of more proper Utensils, I took a wooden Dish, and having put some common ordinary Water into it, sprinkled it upon the Head of the little Savage, pronouncing the following Words, *Creature of God, I baptize thee in the Name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost*. Then I took half my Altar-Cloth, which I had snatch'd out of the Hands of a Savage, who had stole it from me, and spread it o'er the Body of the Infant.

The Baptism was accompany'd with no other Ceremony, because I was no longer in a Condition to say Mass, my Sacerdotal Robes being all taken from me. I believ'd the Linen could not serve to a more proper End than a Winding-Sheet to the first Infant of the Country, that had the Happiness to be baptized. I know not how far its Pains might be allwaid by Virtue of the Linen, or what Alterations it might feel. I am sure I saw it laughing the next Day.

its Mother's Arms, who believ'd I had cur'd her Child. However it dy'd some time after, which affected me more with Joy than Grief.

Had this Child recover'd, 'twas much to be fear'd 'twou'd have trod in the Steps of its Fore-fathers, and been over-grown with their infamous Superstitions, for want of a Preacher to instruct it. For indeed, if those of its Nation dwelling in Darknes and Ignorance, *continue to sin without Law, they shall also perish without Law*, as we are told by the Apostle. Upon these Considerations I was glad it had pleas'd God to take this little Christian out of the World, lest it might have fall'n into Temptations, had it recover'd, which might have engag'd it in Errour and Superstition. I have often attributed my Preservation amidst the greatest Dangers which I have since run, to the Care I took for its Baptism.

CHAP. LVII.

An Embassy sent to the Issati by the Savages that inhabit to the West of them. Whence it appears that there is no such thing as the Streights of Anian; and that Japan is on the same Continent as Louisiana.

Under the Reign of the Emperour Charles V. the Fathers Recluse of our Order were the first that were sent by his Command into *New-Mexico*; since which time there have been of them beyond the *Ver-milian-Sea*. The most Remarkable Epoque of the Streights of *Anian*, commences from the time of that most excellent Religious of our Order, *Martin de Valencia*, who was the First Bishop of the great City of *Mexico*. We have spoke of him elsewhere.

In process of time 'twas believ'd that the said Streights were only imaginary: Many Persons noted for great Learning, are of this Opinion; and to

evinced the Truth of it, I will here subjoin one evident Proof, to those which are already produc'd by them; and it is this. During my stay amongst the *Issati* and *Nadoussians*, there arriv'd four Savages in Embassie to these People. They had come above five hundred Leagues from the West; and told us by the Interpreters of the *Issati*, that they were four Moons upon the Way; for so it is they call their Months. They added, that their Country was to the West, and that we lay to the East in respect of them; that they had march'd the whole time without resting, except to sleep, or kill Game for their Subsistence. They assur'd us there was no such thing as the Streights of *Anian*; and that in their whole Journey they had neither met with, nor pass'd over any *Great Lake*; by which Phrase they always mean the Sea, nor any Arm of it.

They farther inform'd us, that the Nation of the *Asseni-poulaes*, whose Lake is down in the Map, and who lie North-East of the *Issati*, was not above six or seven Days Journey from us: That none of the Nations within their Knowledge, who lie to the West and North-West of them, had any great Lake about their Countries, which were very large, but only Rivers, which coming from the North, run cross the Countries of their Neighbouring Nations, which border on their Confines on the side of the *Great Lake*, which in the Language of the Savages is the same as Sea: That Spirits, and Pigmies, or Men of little Stature, did inhabit there, as they had been inform'd by the People that liv'd farther west than themselves; and that all the Nations which are beyond their Country, and those which are next to them, do dwell in Meadows and large Fields, where are many wild Bulls and Castors, which are greater than those of the North, and have their Coat more inclining to Black; with many other wild Beasts which yield very fine Furrs.

The four Savages of the said Embassy assur'd us farther, that there were very few Forests in the Countries through which they pass'd in their way hither; insomuch that now and then they were so put to it for Fuel, that they were forc'd to make Fires of Bull's Dung, to boil their Victuals with in Earthen-Pots, which they make use of, as neither having, nor knowing of any better.

All these Circumstances which I have here insert-ed, make it appear, that there is no such thing as the Streights of *Anian*, as we usually see them set down in Maps. To assert the Truth of what I say, I here frankly offer my self to return into these Parts, with such Ships as His *Britannick Majesty*, or their *High and Mightinesses*, the *States General*, shall think fit to send thither, in order to a full Discovery; in which I have no other Aim but the Glory of God, the Propagation of the Gospel, Instruction of those blind and ignorant People, who have been neglect-ed for so many Ages, Improvement of Trade, which, the better 'tis understood, the more will it daily encrease between the Subjects of the King of *Spain* my Master, and those of His *Britannick Majesty* and *States General*: And lastly, That Correspondence and Union so necessary to be maintain'd amongst them, that they may live and labour together for the Common Good. I declare, I have no other Design; that my Intentions are sincere and upright, and that my Desire is to be serviceable to all *Europe*; Respect being first had, as I am in Duty bound, to my Natural Prince, the King of *England*, and the *States*; to whom I am singularly engag'd, for the good Reception they were pleas'd to honour me with. Others perhaps would have us'd me ill, in return of all my Services, and the many dangerous Voyages I have made, with no other Design, but to contribute what in me lay, to the Glory of God, the Salvation of Souls, and the Good of all *Christendom*. I know

N 2

well

well what I say. But to return: Whatever Efforts have been made for many Years past, by the *English* and *Dutch*, the two Nations of the World, who are the greatest Navigators, to find out a Passage to *China* and *Japan*, thro' the Frozen-Sea, they have not as yet been able to effect it. But by the help of my Discovery, and the Assistance of God, I doubt not to let all *Europe* see that a Passage may still be found thither, and that an easie one too. For Example; One may be transported into the *Pacifick-Sea* by Rivers, which are large, and capable of carrying great Vessels, and from thence 'tis easie to go to *China* and *Japan*, without crossing the Equinoctial Line. Those that read my Relation, and will never so little examine the *Maps* which are annex't to it, will soon acknowledge the Truth of what I say.

C H A P. LVIII.

The Issati assemble to hunt the Wild-Bull. Refusal of the two Canow-Men to take the Author into their Canoe, in order to go down the River of St. Francis.

AFTER three Months or thereabouts, spent very much amongst the *Issati* and *Nadouessians*, these Nations assembl'd to hunt the Wild-Bull; and their Captain having assign'd them their Stations, that they might not fall in with one another, they separated themselves into many Bands.

Aquipaguétin, the Chief, that had adopted me for his Son, wou'd have carry'd me to the West with about 200 Families. But remembering the Reproach which the great Captain *Onascoude* had made him upon the Score of our ill usage, I was apprehensive lest he shou'd lay hold of this Opportunity to avenge himself on me. I told him therefore, I expected some Spirits, which in their Language is as much as

to say *Europeans*, at the River *Ouisconsin*, which discharges it self into the River *Meschasipi*; that according to the Promise made me by the *Sieur de la Salle*, they wou'd meet me there with Iron, and other Commodities, which as yet they were unacquainted with; and that if he would think of turning his Expedition that way, I shou'd be very glad to accompany him. He heard my Proposal, and was willing to embrace it; but those of his Band wou'd not let him.

In the beginning of *July*, 1680. we began to descend towards the South, with the great Captain *Ouatoude*, and about 80 Cabins, containing 130 Families and 250 Warriors. The Savages who had nothing but old Canou's, cou'd not make me room; so that they went four Days Journey lower, to get some Birchen-Bark, to make more new ones. I made a hole in the Ground, in which I hid my gilt Chalice, with my Books and Papers, till we should return from hunting; and took nothing with me but my Breviary, that I might not cumber my self.

I Plac'd my self upon the Brink of the Lake which forms the River of *St. Francis*, where I held out my Hands to the Canou-Men, as they past very swiftly by, to desire them to take me in. Our two *Europeans* were in a Canow, which had been given them by the Savages. However, I cou'd not prevail with them to receive me. *Michael Ako* told me very brutishly, he had carry'd me long enough. This rough and unhandsome Answer made me very melancholy, when I saw my self forsaken by those of my own Country and Religion, whom I had always endeavour'd to oblige, as themselves had often acknowledg'd before Persons of the first Quality, where I was us'd to be receiv'd with all the Marks of Distinction, while themselves were suffer'd to stand and cool their Heels at the Door.

But God, who of his Mercy never forsook me throughout all my Adventures, inspir'd two of the Savages with so much Compassion, as to take me with them into their Canou, though it were less than that of the *European s*. Here I was continually employ'd in laving out Water, which soak'd in again as fast as 'twas thrown out, through abundance of little Chinks. This Work was uneasie enough; besides that, I could not keep my self from being thoroughly wet. However, 'twas necessary to have Patience. It might have been properly said of this little Vessel, that when a Man was in it, he was in his Coffin; so crazy was it, and ready to break. This sort of Canou's seldom weigh above 50 Pounds, and the least Motion of the Body oversets them, at least if you have not been long acquainted with this sort of Navigation.

At Evening when we landed, *Picard* began to excuse himself, pretending their Canow was a very rotten one, that it would certainly have burst, had we been all three in it, and that we must needs have been left by the way. Notwithstanding these Excuses, I told them, that being Christians, they had not done well to use me as they did, especially considering among whom we were: That they had forsaken me very unseasonably, having left me all alone at above 800 Leagues distance from *Canada*, allowing for the Reaches we were to make, before we cou'd get thither: That if they had receiv'd any good Usage from the Savages, 'twas owing to my Ingenuity more than their own, having been capable of letting several of them Blood, and otherwise assisting 'em in their Sickness by my *Orvietan*, and some other Medicines which I carefully kept by me.

To this I added, that by the same means I had cur'd others of them that had been bitten by Rattle-Snakes, of which I shall speak in my *Second Volume*. That I shav'd the Crowns of their Children's Heads,

(on

(on which they wear the Hair till eighteen or twenty) which was no small matter, considering they cou'd not do it themselves, without putting them to great Pain, by burning off the Hair with flat Stones, which they heat red-hot in the Fire: That hitherto indeed, I had made but little advance in order to their Salvation, by reason of their natural Stupidity; but that the best way to take the Soul was to begin with the Body: That, in short I had gain'd their Friendship by my Services, and that they would have certainly kill'd us at the time they us'd us so ill, but that they knew I had certain Remedies about me proper to restore Health to the Sick; which they thought was a Treasure never to be valu'd as it ought.

None was with me during this Harangue, but *Picard du Gay*, who, as he was going to his Cabin, desir'd me to pardon him. But the great Captain *Ouasi-coude* having heard of this barbarous Action of the two Canow-Men, order'd them to appear before the Council, and told them, that for the future he wou'd take care to remove me out of the reach, not only of *Aquipaguetin*, who had so often attempted my Life, and yet adopted me for his Son, but likewise from their Company, who, like two Villains, as they were, had so basely deserted me. Had I not luckily be-thought my self to break three Arrows in the presence of this brave Chief, the Canow-Men being yet by, he had infallibly caus'd them to have been put to death that very Minute. I shall never forget the Humanity of this great Captain, who treated me so favourably on all Occasions. The two Canow-Men were surpriz'd at what had happen'd, and promis'd me an entire Obedience for the future.

C H A P. LIX.

The Savages halt above the Fall of St. Anthony of Padua. They are streighten'd for Provisions. The Author, with Picard, returns to the River Ouifconfin. The Adventures of the Voyage.

FOUR Days after our Departure to hunt the wild Bulls, the Barbarians made a Halt some eight Leagues above the Fall of *St. Anthony of Padua*, upon an Eminence, over against the-River of *St. Francis*. The Savage Women prepar'd little Docks to build the new Canou's in, against the return of those who were gone for Bark. The Youth in the mean time went out to hunt the Stag, the wild Goat and the Castor; but with so little Success, that the Prey they brought home was so disproportionable to the Number that were to feed on't, that we had hardly every one a Mouthful. Happy the Man that once in four and twenty Hours cou'd get so much as a Sa of Broath.

This put *Picard* and my self upon hunting after Gooseberries, and other wild Fruits, which often did us more harm than good. And I am confident, that had it not been for my *Orvietan-Powder*, which in a great measure corrected the bad Nutriment which we took in, our Lives had been in great Danger. This extreme Want, made us take a Resolution, upon *Michael Ako's* refusing to accompany us, to venture our selves in a little sorry Canou as far as the River *Ouifconfin*, which was at no less distance from us than 130 Leagues, to see if the *Sieur de Salle* had kept his Word with us: For he had promis'd us positively to send Men with Powder, and Lead, and other Merchandizes, to the place which I have already mention'd: And of this he assured me

more

more than once, before his departure from the Illinois.

The Savages wou'd never have suffer'd us to have made this Voyage, without one of the three being left with them: And my self was the Man they pitch'd upon to stay, by the Advice of the great Captain *Ouasicoude*, whilst the two Canou-Men were at liberty to proceed on their Voyage. But *Michael Ako*, who was apprehensive of the many Hardships he was like to meet with in this Expedition, could never be prevail'd upon to consent to it: So that seeing he began to relish the Barbarians way of living, I desir'd their Chief, that I might have leave to accompany *Picard* in his stead; who accordingly granted my Request.

Our whole Equipage consisted of fifteen or twenty Charges of Powder, a Fusil, a little sorry Earthen Pot, which the Barbarians gave us, a Knife between us both, and a Garment of Castor. Thus were we equipt for a Voyage of 250 Leagues; but our greatest Trust was in Providence. As we were carrying our little Canou to the Fall of *St. Anthony of Padua*, we perceiv'd five or six Savages, who were got there before us. One of them was got up into an Oak over against the great Fall of Water, where he was weeping most bitterly, having fasten'd to one of the Branches of the Tree, a Robe of Castor, which was white within-side, and garnish'd with Porcupine.

The poor Wretch had offer'd it in Sacrifice to the Fall; which, indeed, of it self is terrible, and hath something in it very astonishing: However, it doth not come near that of *Niagara*. I could hear him say, as he was addressing himself to the Cascade, with Tears in his Eyes; *Thou art a Spirit, grant that Those of my Nation may pass here without any Disaster; That we may meet with a great many wild Bulls; and that we may be so happy as to vanquish our Enemy, and take a great many Slaves, whom, when we have made*
them

them suffer according to their Merits, we will bring hither, and slay in thy Presence. The Messenacks ('tis so they call the Nation of the Outtouagami's) have slain some of our Kindred: Grant we may be able to revenge our selves upon 'em for that Affront.

The last part of his Request hapned to be fulfill'd sooner, I believe, than he expected: For as they return'd from hunting the wild Bulls, they attack'd their Enemy, kill'd a good many of them, and carry'd off several Slaves, whom they put to death before the Fall, after the most barbarous and inhumane manner in the World, as we shall see in the *Second Volume*. Now if after such a barbarous Ceremony as I have been describing, it happen but once that the Success answers the Request, 'tis sufficient to render them obstinate in their superstitious Custom, tho' it miscarry a hundred times for once that it hits. As for the Castor-Robe, which was thus offer'd as a sort of Sacrifice, one of our *Europeans* made bold with it at his return, and wou'd have been glad of having more frequent Opportunities of profiting by their Devotions.

When we had got about a League below the Fall, *Picard* miss'd his Powder-Horn, and remembring he had left it there, was forc'd to go back and fetch it. At his Return I shew'd him a huge Serpent, as big as a Man's Leg, and seven or eight Foot long. She was working her self insensibly up a steep craggy Rock to get at the Swallows Nests which are there in great Numbers: And at the Bottom of the Mountain we saw the Feathers of those she had already devour'd. We pelted her so long with Stones, till at length she fell into the River. Her Tongue which was in form of a Lance, was of an extraordinary length. Her Hiss might be heard a great way, and the Noise of it seiz'd us with Horror. Poor *Picard* dreamt of her at Night, and was in a great Agony

all the while. He told me, I had done him a sensible Kindness in waking him ; for though he was a Man intrepid enough, yet he was all in a sweat with the fright of his Dream. I have likewise my self been often disturb'd in my Sleep with the Image of her ; so great an Impression did the sight of this Monster make upon our Spirits.

As we were falling down the River *Meschasipi* with extraordinary Swiftness, because the Current is very rapid in this place, by reason 'tis so near the Fall, we found some of the Savages of our Band, in the Islands of the River, where they had set up their Cabins, and were well provided with Bulls Flesh. They offer'd us very freely of what they had. But about two Hours after our landing, we thought we should have been all murder'd : Fifteen or sixteen Savages came into the middle of the Place where we were, with their great Clubs in their Hands. The first thing they did was to over-set the Cabin of those that had invited us. Then they took away all their Victuals, and what Bears-Oil they could find in their Bladders, or elsewhere, with which they rubb'd themselves all over from Head to Foot.

We took them at first for Enemies ; and *Picard* was very near sticking the first that came in with his Sword. At the first surprize, I began to lay hold of the two Pocket-Pistols that *du Gay* had left me ; but by good luck I contain'd my self, or otherwise, without doubt, there had been an end of us ; for their Companions would not have fail'd to have reveng'd upon us the Death of those we had kill'd.

We knew not what these Savages were at first ; but it appear'd they were some of those that we had left above at the the Fall of *St. Anthony*. One of them, who call'd himself my Uncle, told me, that those who had given us Victuals, had done basely to go and forestal the others in the Chase ; and that according to the Laws and Customs of their Country,

Country, 'twas lawful for them to plunder them, since they had been the cause that the Bulls were all run away, before the Nation could get together, which was a great Injury to the Publick; For when they are all met, they make a great Slaughter amongst the Bulls; for they surround them so on every side, that 'tis impossible for them to escape.

C H A P. LX.

The Hunting of the Tortoise. The Author's Canow is carry'd off by a sudden blast of Wind, which was like to have reduc'd him and his Companion to great Streights.

IN about threescore Leagues rowing, we had kill'd but one wild-Goat, which we did as she was crossing the River. The Heats were now grown so excessive, that our Provisions would be spoil'd in twenty four Hours. This put us upon Hunting the Tortoise; but 'twas with much difficulty that we could take any; for being very quick of hearing, they would throw themselves into the Water upon the least noise. However, we took one at last, which was much larger than any we had seen: His Shell was thin, and the Flesh very fat. Whilst I was contriving to cut off his Head, he had like to have been before-hand with me, by snapping of my Finger with his Teeth, which are very sharp.

Whilst we were managing this Affair, we had halld our Canow a-shoar; but it seems a sudden and violent Blast of Wind had carry'd her off again into the middle of the River. *Picard* was gone into the Meadows, to see if he could kill a wild Bull; so that I was left alone with the Canow. This oblig'd me to throw my Habit as fast as I could over the Tortoise, which I had turn'd, for fear he should get away.

away. I likewise laid several Stones upon my Clothes, the better to secure him. When I had done, I fell a swimming after our Canow, which went very fast down the River, being carry'd by a very quick Stream, because 'twas just at the turning of a Point. After I had recover'd it with a great deal of difficulty, I durst not get into it, for fear of being overfet, and wetting the Woollen Coverlet that was in it, which I us'd to sleep on, and the rest of our little Equipage: For which reason I was forc'd to push it sometimes before me, and sometimes tug it after me, till by little and little I gain'd the Shoar, a small half quarter of a League below the Place where I had left the Tortoise.

Picard returning from the Chace, where he had kill'd nothing; and finding only my Habit upon the Tortoise, but no Canow, had reason to think that some Savage or other having found me alone, had kill'd me. In great suspence, he return'd into the Meadows, to look about if he could see any body. In the mean time, I had made what haste I cou'd up the River with my Canow; and had no sooner, taken up my Clothes, but I spy'd a Drove of sixty Bulls and Cows, with their Calves, crossing the River, towards the Land on the South-side. I pursu'd them in my Canow, and set up as great a Cry as I could, to give *Picard* notice of it. He made up to the Noise, and had time enough to get into the Canow, whilst a Dog which we had with us, by his Barking, had drove them to a Bay in the Isles of the River. When we were prepared, the Dog drove them from thence; and as they pass'd by us, *Picard* kill'd one of them with his Fusil, having lodg'd the Bullet in his Head. Having dragg'd it to the side of the River, it prov'd to be a Cow, that weigh'd about five or six hundred weight. The Bulls have more Flesh, and weigh heavier; but because we could not get it quite to Land, we contented our selves

selves with cutting the best Pieces, and left the rest in the Water.

'Twas almost now eight and forty Hours since we eat last; so that we fell a kindling a Fire as fast as we could, which we made of the Wood the River had thrown upon the Sands; and as fast as *Picard* skinn'd it, I put the Pieces of Flesh into our little earthen Pot to boil. We eat of it with that greediness, that both of us were sick; so that we were oblig'd to hide our selves in an Island, where we rested two Days for the recovery of our Health by the help of my *Orvietan*, which was a great Benefit to us during the whole Voyage. Whilst I was fetching the Pieces of Flesh which *Picard* gave me, I went backward and forward very often close by a Rattle-Snake, seven or eight Foot long, without perceiving him, as he lay wrapt asleep in the Sun. I told *Picard* of it, who came and kill'd him with our Oar, and afterwards threw him into the River.

To be short, we could not charge our selves with much Provisions, because of the smallness of our Canow; besides that, the excessive Heat tainted it presently, so that 'twou'd swarm with Worms in an instant. For these Reasons we were soon in the same condition; and when we embark'd in the Morning, we knew not whether we shou'd have any thing to eat at Night. Never had we more reason to admire the Goodness of Providence, than during this Voyage. 'Twas not every Day we met with any Game, nor when we did, were we sure to kill it.

The Eagles, which are to be seen in abundance in these vast Countries, will sometimes drop a Breme, a large Carp; or some other Fish, as they are carrying them to their Nests in their Talons, to feed their young. One day we 'spy'd an Otter, which was feeding on a great Fish upon the Bank of the River; which Fish had upon its Head a sort of

Beak about five Inches broad, and a Foot and a half long. As soon as *Picard* spy'd it, he cry'd out he saw the Devil between the Claws of the Otter. This Surprize was not so great, but that we made bold to feed heartily upon it. The Flesh of it was good; and we nam'd it the Sturgeon with the long Beak.

C H A P. LXI.

We continue our Course in search of the River Ouïconfin. Aquipaguetin finds us, and gets thither before us. We subsist meerly by Providence.

NOTWITHSTANDING we had row'd so many Leagues, yet cou'd we not find the River of *Ouïconfin*: This made us believe that it was still at a great distance from us; when behold *Aquipaguetin*, whom we believ'd to be above 200 Leagues off, appear'd all on a sudden, with ten Warriors with him, towards the middle of *July*, 1680. We thought at first he came to kill us, because we had quitted him, though 'twere by the consent of the other Savages: But he gave us some wild Oats, with a Piece of good Bull's Flesh; and ask'd us if we had found the *Europeans* who were to meet us with their Merchandise. Our Answer not satisfying him, he was resolv'd to go to *Ouïconfin* himself; but when he came there, found no body. He return'd at the end of three Days, as we were still pursuing our Voyage, being resolv'd to acquit our selves fully of the Promise which we had made the *Sieur de Salle*, to come thither and meet those that he should send.

When *Aquipaguetin* first appear'd at his return, *Picard* was gone to Hunt in the Meads, and my self remain'd alone in a little Cabin, which

we

we had set up under our Coverlet, which one of the Savages had return'd me, to shade us from the Sun-beams, which were very scorching at this Season. *Aquipaguetin* seeing me alone, came up to me with his Club in his Hand: I immediately laid hold of my two Pocket-Pistols and a Knife, which *Picard* had recover'd out of the Hands of the Barbarians. I had no mind to kill the Man that had adopted me, but only frighten him, and keep him from murdering me, in case that were his intent.

Aquipaguetin began to reprimand me for exposing myself in the manner I did to the Insults of their Enemies; and that at least I ought to have kept the other side of the River. He would have carry'd me with him, telling me, that he had 300 Hunters with him, who kill'd more Game than those that I was engag'd with. And probably it had been more advisable for me to have follow'd his Advice, than to prosecute my Voyage any farther. However, our Resolution then was, to continue our course towards the River *Ouisconsin*; where when we came, we found none of the Men the *Sieur de la Salle* had promised to send us. *Picard* and my self had like to have perish'd on a thousand different Occasions, as we came down the River: And now we found ourselves oblig'd to go up it again, which could not be done without repeating the same Hazards, and other Difficulties not to be imagin'd..

C H A P. LXII.

The great Streights which the Author and his Companion are reduc'd to in their Voyage. They at last meet again with the Savages at their return from Hunting.

PICARD, who had been very ill us'd by the Savages, had rather venture all than go up the River with *Aquipaguetin*. Six Charges of Powder was all that we had left, which oblig'd us to husband it as well as we could; wherefore we divided it into twenty, to shoot only for the future at Turtles or Wild Pigeons. When these also were spent, we had recourse to three Hooks, which we baited with some stinking Barbel that an Eagle hapned to drop. We took nothing the two first Days, and were destitute of all means of subsistence, This made us, you must think, betake our selves to Prayers with greater fervency than ever. And yet Picard, 'midst all our Misfortunes, could not forbear telling me, that he should pray to God with a much better Heart if his Belly were full.

I comforted both him and my self as well as I could, and desir'd him to row with all the force he had left, to see if we could catch a Tortoise. The next Morning, having row'd the best part of the Night, we found a Tortoise, which was not bigger than an ordinary Plate. We went to boiling him the same Minute on the Fire that we had kindled. We devour'd it so hastily, that I did not observe that I cut the Gall, which made my Mouth as bitter as it self; but I ran immediately and gargled my Throat, and so fell to't again, with the same eagerness as before.

Notwithstanding our famish'd Condition, we got at last to the *River of Bulls*: Here we cast our Hooks; which we baited with a white Fish that an Eagle

had let fall. God, who never abandons those that trust in him, succour'd us very visibly on this occasion; for we had scarce finish'd our Prayers towards ten at Night, when *Picard*, who heard the Noise, quitted his Devotion, and ran to the Hooks, where he found two Barbels hung, which were so large, that I was forc'd to help him to get them out of the Water. We did not stand to study what Sauce we should make for these monstrous Fish, which weigh'd above twenty five pound both; but having cut them to pieces, broil'd 'em on the Coals. Boil them we could not, our little Earthen Pot being unhappily broke some time before.

When we had satisfy'd our Appetite, and return'd our Thanks to Him, whose Providence had so seasonably reliev'd us, we heard a noise about two in the Morning, upon the Bank of the *River of Bulls*, where we then were. After the *Who-goes-there?* we heard the Answer was, *Tepatoni Nika*, and the Word *Nikanagi*; which is as much as to say, *Friends, all is well.* I told *Picard*, that by the Language I believ'd them to be *Illinois*, or *Outouagamis*, who are Enemies of the *Issati*, or *Nadouessans*. But the Moon shining very bright, and the Day beginning to appear, I perceiv'd 'twas the Savage *Mamemisi*, whose Infant-Daughter I Baptiz'd, when *Picard* assisted as Godfather, or Witness. He knew us again presently; and being just come from Hunting, where they had had plenty of Game, he gave us what Victuals we pleas'd; and inform'd us, that all those of his Nation were coming down the *River of Bulls*, which discharges it self into the *Meschasipi*, having their Wives and Children with them.

What he said was true; for the Savages, with whom *Michael Ako* had staid behind, were all descending the *River of Bulls* with their Fleet of Canow's well stor'd with Provisions. *Aquipaguen* by the way had acquainted those of his Nation, how

Picard and my self had expos'd our selves in our Voyage to *Ousconsin*, and what great Hazards we had ran. The Chiefs of the Savages gave us to understand, that they were very well satisfi'd with what we had done: But all of them reproach'd *Michael Ako* for a Base Fellow, who had refus'd to accompany us for fear of being famish'd by the way. *Picard* too, but that I did what I could to hinder it, would have us'd him ill before all the Company, so incens'd was he against him, for his want of Courage and Affection.

C H A P. LXIII.

The Savage Women hide their Provisions up-and-down in private Holes. They go down the River again a second time. Address of the Savages. Bravery of one of the Savages.

TH E Savage Women being come to the Mouth of the *River of Bulls*, hid their Provisions up-and-down the little Islands that are there, and in hollow Places under-ground. These People have a way to preserve their Meat thus, without Salt, as we shall see hereafter. We fell down the River a second time, in company of a multitude of Canow's, of which I have already spoke, Hunting all the way as we went, and were got a matter of fourscore Leagues. The Savages from time to time hid their Canows in the little Island, or in the Reeds upon the Bank of the River, and went seven or eight Leagues up the Country into the Meadows beyond the Mountains, where at several times they kill'd between an hundred and sixscore Cows and Bulls. Whilst they are at the Chase, they always leave some Old Men on the top of the Mountains, to see if they can discover the Enemy.

All this while I had a Savage under my Cure, who usually call'd me Brother: He had run a

Thorn very deep into his Foot, and I was then putting a Plaister on it, when on a sudden the Alarm was taken in our Camp. Two hundred Archers immediately ran to see what was the matter; and the generous Savage, whose Foot I had laid open, in order to get out the Thorn, which was very deep, sprung likewise from me on a sudden, and ran as fast as the best, that he might not lose his share in the Action. But instead of the Enemy, they could see nothing but about an hundred Stags, which were running away as fast as they could. My poor Patient had much ado to recover the Camp. All the while the Alarm lasted, the Women and Maids kept singing in a very sad and melancholy Tone.

Picard being gone to his Host, I was left alone with one *Otchimbi*; but after the second Hunting, I was forc'd to carry an Old Woman with me in my Canow, who was above fourscore: For all that, she help'd me to row, and with her Oar would now-and-then pat two or three little Children, that lay and disturb'd us in the middle of our Canow. The Men were very kind to me; but for all that, 'twas necessary to make a Court to the Women; for the Victuals were all in their Custody, who deliver'd every one his Mess. This I did by shaving now-and-then the Crowns of their Children's Head, who wear their Hair shorn not unlike our Monks. They let it grow till they are fifteen, sixteen, or eighteen Years old, as well on the top of the Head, as elsewhere; but at that Age, their Parents take it off, by burning it with flat stones made red-hot in the Fire: So that the Women thought themselves mightily beholding to me for shaving their Children, because I took off the Hair without pain.

We had again another Alarm in our Camp: The Old Men, who had their Station on the top of the Mountains, sent to give notice that they had descry'd some Warriors from afar. The Ar-

chers ran as hard as they could drive, towards the Place where the Enemy was said to appear, every one endeavouring to be first in the Action. But after all this Noise, they brought nothing back with them but two Women of their own Nation, who were come to acquaint them that one of their Parties being gone a Hunting, towards the end of the Upper Lake, had light upon five Spirits, by which Name it is they call the *Europeans*. They added, That these Spirits had talk'd to 'em, by means of some of their Nation who had seen us, and had been Slaves amongst the *Outouagamis* and *Iroquoese*, whose Language they understood: That they had also desir'd them to conduct them to the Place where we were, because they should be very glad to know whether we were *English*, *Dutch*, *Spaniards*, or *Canadians*: And farther, That they could not imagine how we had been able to penetrate so far up into the Country amongst these People.

I must observe hereupon, that there are certain Persons at *Canada*, who have got the Management of all Affairs there into their hands, as I have elsewhere said. These People being very angry, that we had been aforehand with them in our Discoveries, had sent Men after us to share in the Glory of the Action: For they hoped by our Means to get a Knowledge of the Nations which we had seen, in order to Trade thither, as soon as they should have a Pretence of sending us back to *Europe*.

CHAP. LXIV.

Arrival of the Sieur Du Luth in our Camp. He desires us to return with him and his Followers to the Country of the Iffati and Nadoueffians. The Author cast my Coverlet over a dead Man. The Savages are pleas'd at it.

THE 28th of July, 1680. we began to ascend the River *Meschasipi* the third time. The Savages, who had made a grand Hunt with good Success, were resolv'd to return home to their own Villages, and press'd us to go with them; promising to conduct us as far as the Nations that inhabited at the End of the Upper-Lake. They said they had a design to make an Alliance with those People through our Means. The Sieur *du Luth* was arriv'd there from *Canada*, accompany'd with five Men, whose Equipage was half Soldier, half Merchant.

They came up to us in company with the two Savage-Women an hundred and twenty Leagues, or thereabouts, from the Country of the *Barbarians*, that had taken us. They desir'd us, because we had some knowledge of the Language of the *Iffati*, to accompany them back to the Villages of those People. I readily agreed to their request, especially when I understood that they had not receiv'd the Sacraments in the whole two Years and a half that they had been out upon their Voyage. The Sieur *du Luth*, who pass'd for their Captain, was overjoy'd to see me, and told me as a Secret, that those who had sent him, wou'd miss of their aim, and wou'd let me know more at leisure. And observing how I shav'd the Crowns of the Young Savages, he order'd them to be told I was his Brother.

All this made the Savages treat me better than ever, and furnish me very plentifully with Provisions. I apply'd my self also more than ever to the means of their Salvation; and 'tis true they hearken'd to me attentively enough. But then, to make any progress, one must live whole Years amongst them, they are so ignorant, and grounded in Superstition.

The *Sieur du Luth* was charm'd at the sight of the Fall of *St. Anthony of Padua*, which was the Name we had given it, and in all appearance will remain with it. I also shew'd him the craggy Rock, where the monstrous Serpent was climbing up to devour the young Swallows in their Nests; and recounted to him the Horror that seiz'd *Picard*, at the Image his Fancy fram'd of that terrible Animal in his Dream.

I must here observe, that seeing my self at Liberty to lay my Office after the Arrival of the *Sieur du Luth*, to be more exact in the Service, I thought I wou'd ask him the Day of the Month: He told me as freely, he cou'd not satisfy me in that Point, for he had no Notion of it left. Upon this I recounted to him the ill usage which we receiv'd at the Hands of the *Barbarians*, at their first taking us, which proceeded many times so far as to threaten our Lives; that therefore he ought not to be surpriz'd, if through the Terrors and Apprehensions which I had lain so long under, I had forgot even the Day of the Week.

We arriv'd at the Villages of the *Issati* on the 14th of August, 1680. where I found my *Chalice* very safe, with the Books and Papers which I had hid under-ground, in presence of the Savages themselves. These Wretches had never had so much as a thought to meddle with them, being fearful and superstitious in relation to Spirits, and believing there is Witchcraft in every thing they cannot apprehend.

prehend. The Tobacco which I planted before our Departure, was half choak'd with Grass. But the Cabbage, and other things which I had sown, were of a prodigious growth. The Stalks of the Purslain were as big as Reeds: But the Savages were afraid so much as to taste them.

A little after our return, the Savages invited us to a great Feast after their own fashion. There were above an hundred and twenty Men at it naked. *Ouasicoûde*, the first Captain of the Nation, and Kinsman of the Deceas'd, whose dead Body I cover'd, when they brought him back to the Village in a Canow, brought me some dry'd Fleh and wild Oats in a dish of Bark, which he set before me upon a Bull's Hide, whiten'd, and garnish'd with Porcupine Skins on the one side, and curl'd Wood on the other.

After I had eat, this Chief put the same Robe on my Head, and cover'd my Face with it, saying with a loud Voice before all that were present, *whose dead Body thou didst cover, covers thine while thou liv'st. He has carry'd the Tydings of it to the Country of Souls, (for these People believe the Transmigration of Souls.) What thou didst in respect of the Dead, is highly esteem'd: All the Nation applauds and thanks thee for it.*

After this he gently reproach'd the *Sieur du Lou* that he did not cover the Dead, as I had done. To which the *Sieur* desir'd me to answer, That he never cover'd the Bodies of any but such Captains as himself. To which the Savage answer'd, *Father Louis* (for so he heard the Europeans call me) *is a greater Captain than thou: His Robe* (speaking of my Brocard Chasuble, which they had taken from me, and was afterwards sent as a Present to our Allies, who liv'd three Moons distant from this Country) *was finer than what thou wear'st.*

When these Savages speak of a Journey of three or more Moons, they mean Months. They march well, and will travel fifteen Leagues a Day.

which the Reader may judge what an extent of Ground they can go in three Month.

C H A P. LXV.

The Author takes his leave of the Savages to ret. to Canada. A Savage is slain by his Chief, for advising to kill us. Dispute between the Sieur du Luth and the Author, about the Sacrifice of Barbarians.

TOWARDS the end of September, seeing we had no Tools proper to build a House to dwell in during the Winter, amongst these People; and considering that we were destitute of Provisions necessary to subsist there, as our Design was at first to have done, we resolv'd to let them understand, that to procure them Iron, and other Merchandizes, which were useful for them, 'twas convenient that we shou'd return to *Canada*, and that at a certain time which we shou'd agree upon between us, they shou'd come half the way with their Furs, and we the other half with our *European* Commodities: That they might let two of their Warriors go with us, whom we wou'd carry into our Country, and likewise bring back again the next Year to the place appointed for meeting, from whence they might proceed to acquaint them of our return, in order to their meeting us with their Effects.

Upon this they held a great Council, to consider whether they shou'd send some of their Nation with us or no. Two there were who were for it, and offer'd themselves to be the Men: But they alter'd their Opinion the Day of our Departure, alledging for a Reason, That we were obliged to pass through many Nations who were their sworn Enemies, and wou'd be sure to seize their Men, and take them out of our Hands, either to burn them, or put them otherwise

otherwise to Death by exquisite Torments, and that without our being able to hinder it, being so few in Number as we were.

I answer'd, That all those People, whom they were afraid of, were our Friends and Allies, and that in consideration of us, they wou'd forbear to injure any of their Nation that were with us. These Barbarians want no Wit; on the contrary, their Natural Parts are extraordinary. They told us in return, that since we were to pass through these People, who were their sworn Enemies, we shou'd do well to destroy them, at whose Hands they had receiv'd so many Injuries; that then their Men shou'd go and return with us to fetch them Iron, and other Commodities which they wanted, and wou'd gladly treat with us about. From whence we may gather, that these Barbarians are full of Resentment, and Thoughts of Revenge, Dispositions not altogether so well prepar'd, to receive the meek Doctrine of the Gospel.

In fine, Ouaficoude their Chief Captain, having consented to our Return, in a full Council, gave us some Bushels of Wild-Oats, for our Subsistence by the way, having first regal'd us in the best manner he cou'd, after their fashion. We have already observ'd, that these Oats are better and more wholesome than Rice. After this, with a Pencil, he mark'd down on a Sheet of Paper, which I had left, the Course that we were to keep for four hundred Leagues together. In short, this natural Geographer describ'd our Way so exactly, that this Chart serv'd us as well as my Compass cou'd have done. For by observing it punctually, we arriv'd at the Place which we design'd, without losing our way in the least.

All things being ready, we dispos'd our selves to depart, being eight *Europeans* of us in all. We put
our

our selves into two Canows, and took our leaves of our Friends, with a Volly of our Men's Fusils, which put them into a terrible Fright. We fell down the River of St. Francis, and then that of the *Meschassipi*. Two of our Men, without saying any thing, had taken down two Robes of Castor, from before the Fall of St. Anthony of Padua, where the Barbarians had hung them upon a Tree as a sort of Sacrifice. Hereupon arose a Dispute between the *Sieur du Luth* and my self. I commended what they had done, saying, *The Barbarians might judge by it, that we disapprov'd their Superstition.* On the contrary, the *Sieur du Luth* maintain'd, That they ought to have let the things alone in that place where they were, for that the Savages wou'd not fail to revenge the Affront which we had put upon them by this Action, and that it was to be fear'd lest they shou'd pursue and insult us by the Way.

I own he had some grounds for what he said, and that he argu'd according to the Rules of Humane Prudence. But the two Men answer'd him bluntly, that the things fitted them, and therefore they shou'd not trouble their Heads about the Savages, nor their Superstitions. The *Sieur du Luth* fell into so violent a Passion at these Words, that he had like to have struck the Fellow that spake them; but I got between, and reconcil'd the Matter: For *Picard* and *Michael Ako* began to side with those that had taken away the things in question, which might have prov'd of ill consequence. I assur'd the *Sieur du Luth*, that the Savages durst not hurt us, for that I was perswaded their Grand Captain *Ouasiscoude* wou'd always make our Cause his own, and that we might rely on his Word, and the great Credit he had amongst those of his Nation. Thus the Business was peaceably made up, and we sailed down

down the River together as good Friends as ever, hunting the Wild-Beasts as we went.

When we were got almost as far as the River *Ouisconsin*, we made a stop, to smook after the manner of the Country, the Flesh of the Bulls which we had kill'd by the Way. During our stay here, for the Reason aforesaid, three Savages of the same Nation, which we had lately left, came up to us in their Canow, to acquaint us that their Grand Captain *Ouafcoude* having learnt that another Chief of the same Nation had a Design to pursue and murder us, he came into the Cabin where the said Captain and his Associates were consulting about it, and gave him a Blow on the Head with so much Fury, that his Brains flew out upon those that were present at the Consult, resolving by this means effectually to prevent the Execution of his pernicious Design. We regal'd the three Savages for their good News very nobly, having plenty of Provisions at that time.

The *Sieur du Luth*, as soon as the Savages were gone, fell into as great a Passion as before, and seem'd very apprehensive lest they shou'd still pursue and set upon us in our Voyage. He wou'd have carri'd Matters farther, but that he found our Men wou'd not bate him an Ace, and were not in an Humour to be bulli'd. I took upon me to moderate the Matter once more, and pacifi'd them in the End, by assuring them that God wou'd not leave us in Distress, provided we put our Trust in him, and that he was able to deliver us from all our Enemies.

C H A P. LXVI.

The Sieur du Luth is in a great Consternation at the Appearance of a Fleet of the Savages, who surprized us before we were got into the River Ouisconsin.

THE Sieur du Luth had reason to believe that the three Savages but now mention'd were really Spies sent to observe our Actions; for indeed they knew that we had taken away the Robes of Castor from before the Fall of *St. Anthony*. He could not forego his Fears, but told me, we should serve the Fellow that did it but right, if we shou'd force him to carry them back, and leave them in the place where he found them. I foresaw Discord would be our Destruction, and so made my self Mediator of the Peace once more. I appeas'd the Fray, by remonstrating, That God, who had preserv'd us hitherto in the greatest Dangers, wou'd have a more peculiar Care of us on this Occasion, because the Man's Action was good in it self.

Two days after, all our Provisions being dress'd, and fit to keep, we prepar'd to depart: But the Sieur du Luth was mightily surpriz'd when he perceiv'd a Fleet of an hundred and forty Canows, carrying about an hundred and fifty Men, bearing down directly upon us. Our Mens Consternation was no less than the Sieur's: But when they saw me take out from amongst our Equipage, a Calumet, of Peace which the *Iffati* had given us as a Pledge of their Friendship and Protection, they took Heart, and told me they wou'd act as I shou'd direct.

I order'd two of them to embark with me in a Canow, to meet the Savages: But the Sieur desir'd me to take a third to row, that by standing in the middle

middle of the Canow, I might the better show the Pipe of Peace, which I carry'd in my hand, to appease the Barbarians, whose Language I understood indifferently well. The other four of our Men I left with the *Sieur du Luth*, and told them, in case any of the young Warriors shou'd Land, and come up to them, they shou'd by no means discourse or be familiar with them; but that they should keep their Posts with their Arms ready fixt. Having given these Orders, I went into my Canow, to the Barbarians who were a coming down the River in theirs.

Seeing no Chief amongst them, I call'd out as loud as I cou'd, *Ouaficoûde, Ouaficoûde*, repeating his Name several times. At last I perceiv'd him rowing up towards me: All this while none of his People had affronted us, which I look'd upon as a good Omen. I conceal'd my Reed of Peace, the better to let them see how much I rely'd upon their Word. Soon after we landed, and entred the Cabin where the *Sieur du Luth* was, who wou'd have embrac'd their Captain. Here we must observe, that 'tis not the Custom of the Savages to embrace after the manner of the *French*. I told the *Sieur du Luth* that he need only present him with a piece of the best boyl'd Meat that he had, and that in case he eat of it, we were safe.

It hapned according to our Wish; all the rest of the Captains of this little Army came to visit us. It cost our Folks nothing but a few Pipes of *Martinico*-Tobacco, which these People are passionately fond of, though their own be stronger, more agreeable, and of a much better Scent. Thus the Barbarians were very civil to us, without ever mentioning the Robes of Castor. The Chief *Ouaficoûde* advis'd me to present some Pieces of *Martinico* Tobacco to the Chief *Aquipaguetin*, who had adopted me for his Son. This Civility had strange effects upon the Bar-

Barbarians, who went off shouting, and repeating the Word *Louis*, which, as we said, signifies the Sun: So that I must say without Vanity, my Name will be as it were immortal amongst these People, by reason of its jumping so accidentally with that of the Sun.

C H A P. LXVII.

The Author's Voyage from the Mouth of the River Ouïfconfin, to the great Bay of the Puans.

THE Savages having left us to go and War upon the *Messorites*, *Maboras*, *Illinois*, and other Nations, which inhabit towards the lower part of the River *Meschafipi*, and are irreconcilable Enemies to the People of the North; the *Sieur du Luth*, who upon many Occasions approv'd himself to be much my Friend, cou'd not forbear telling our People, that I had all the reason in the World to believe that the Viceroy of *Canada* wou'd give me a very kind Reception, in case we cou'd arrive there before Winter; and that he wish'd with all his heart he had been among so many different Nations as my self.

As we went up the River *Ouïfconfin*, we found it was as large as that of the *Illinois*, which is navigable for large Vessels above an hundred Leagues. We cou'd not sufficiently admire the Extent of those vast Countries, and the Charming Lands through which we pass'd, which lye all untill'd. The cruel Wars which these Nations have one with another, are the cause that they have not People enough to cultivate them. And the more bloody Wars which have rag'd so long in all parts of *Europe*, have hinder'd the sending Christian Colonies to settle there. However, I must needs say, that the poorer sort of

our Countrymen wou'd do well to think of it, and go and plant themselves in this fine Country, where for a little Pains in tilling the Earth, they wou'd live happier, and subsist much better than they do here. I have seen Lands there, which wou'd yield three Crops in a Year : And the Air is incomparably more sweet and temperate than in *Holland*.

After we had row'd about seventy Leagues upon the River *Ouisconsin*, we came to a Place where we were forc'd to carry our Canow for half a League, which *Onasficoude* had set down in his Chart. We lay at this place all Night, and left Marks of our having been there, by the Crosses which we cut on the Barks of the Trees. Next Day, having carri'd our Canows and the rest of our little Equipage over this Piece of Land, we entred into a River, which makes almost as many Meanders as that of the *Illinois* doth at its Rise : For after six Hours rowing, which we did very fast, we found our selves, notwithstanding all the Pains we had been at, over-against the Place where we embark'd. One of our Men must needs shoot at a Bird flying, which over-set his Canow ; but by good luck he was within his depth.

We were forc'd to break several Sluces which the Castors had made for our Canows to pass ; otherwise we cou'd not have continued our Way, or carri'd our things to embark them again above these Sluces.

These Creatures make them with so much Art, that Man cannot equal it. We shall speak of them in our *Second Volume*. We found several of these Ponds, or Stops of Water, which these Creatures make with Pieces of Wood, like a Causey.

After this we pass'd over four Lakes, which are all made by this River. Here formerly dwelt the *Miamis* ; but now the *Maskoutens*, *Kikapons*, and *Outoagamis*, who sow their Indian Wheat here, on
which

which they chiefly subsist. We made some Broath of the Water of a certain Fall, which they call *Kakalin*; because the Savages come often hither to ease themselves, and lye on their Backs, with their Faces expos'd to the Sun.

Thus having made more than Four hundred Leagues by Water since our departure from the Country of the *Issati* and *Nadoueßans*, we arriv'd at last at the great Bay of the *Puans*, which makes part of the Lake of the *Illinois*.

C H A P. LXVIII.

The Author and his Company stay some time amongst the Puans. The Original of the Name. They celebrated Mass here, and wintered at Missilimakinak.

WE found many *Canadians* in this Bay of the *Puans*. The Nation that inhabits here, is so call'd, because formerly they dwelt in certain Marshy Places, full of stinking Waters, situate on the *South-Sea*. But being drove out thence by their Enemy, they came and settled in this Bay, which is to the East of the *Illinois*. The *Canadians* were come hither to Trade with the People of this Bay, contrary to an Order of the Viceroy. They had still a little of the Wine left, which they brought with them, and kept in a Pewter Flagon. I made use of it for Mass. Till now, I had nothing but a Chalice, and a Marble Altar, which was pretty light, and very handsomly engrav'd: But here by good Fortune I met with the Sacerdotal Robes too. Some *Illinois* who had happily escap'd their Enemies the *Iroquese*, who had attack'd and almost destroy'd them since my Voyage, and the time that I had been a Slave amongst the Barbarians, had brought with them the Ornaments of the Chapel of Father *Zenobius Mam-*

P

bre,

bre, whom we had left among the *Illinois*. Some of these, I say, who were escap'd to the Place where we were, deliver'd me up all the Ornaments of the Chapel, except the Chalice. They promis'd to get me that too for a little Tobacco, which I was to give them; and were as good as their Word, for they brought it me some few Days after.

'Twas more than nine Months since I had celebrated the Sacrament of the Mass, for want of Wine. We might indeed have done it in our Voyage, had we had Vessels proper to keep Wine in: But we cou'd not charge our Canow with such, being very unfit to carry things of Burden. 'Tis true, we met with Grapes in many Places through which we pass'd, and had made some Wine too, which we put into Gourds; but it fail'd us whilst we were among the *Illinois*, as I have elsewhere observ'd. As for the rest, I had still some Wafers by me, which were as good as ever, having been kept in a Steel-Box shut very close.

We stay'd two Days at the Bay of the *Puan*; where we sung *Te Deum*, and my self said Mass, and Preach'd. Our Men prepar'd themselves for the Holy Sacrament, which we receiv'd, in order to render our Thanks to God, who had preserv'd us amidst the many Dangers we had run, the Difficulties we had surmounted, and Monsters we had overcome.

One of our Canow-Men truck'd a Fust with a Savage for a Canow larger than our own, in which after an hundred Leagues rowing, having coasted all along the great Bay of the *Puans*, we arriv'd at *Missilimakinak*, in the Lake of *Huron*, where we were forc'd to Winter: For our Way lying still North, we shou'd infallibly have perish'd amongst the Ice and Snow, had we proceeded any further.

By the Course we were oblig'd to take, we were still about Four hundred Leagues from *Canada*. Amongst these People, I met, to my no little Satisfaction,

faction, Father *Pierſon*, a Jeſuit, who is a Son of the King's Receiver for the Town of *Aeth* in *Hainault*. He was come hither to learn their Language, and ſpoke it then paſſably well. This *Religious*, who retain'd ſtill the free and open Humour of his Countrymen, had made himſelf belov'd by his obliging Behaviour, and ſeem'd to be an utter Enemy of Caballing and Intrigues, having a candid Spirit, generous and ſincere. In a word, He appear'd to me to be ſuch as every good Chriſtian ought to be. The Reader may judge how agreeably I paſs'd the Winter in ſuch good Company, after the Miſeries and Fatigues I had undergone in the Courſe of our Discoveries.

To make the beſt uſe of my time that I cou'd, I Preach'd all the Holy-days and Sundays in *Advent* and *Lent*, for the Edification of our Men, and other *Canadians*, who were come four or five Leagues out of their Country, to Trade for Furrs amongſt theſe Savages: From whence we may obſerve, that there are ſome whom I ſhall forbear to name, who notwithstanding all their pretended Aſterities, are yet no leſs covetous of the Things of this World, than the moſt Secular Perſon in it. The *Outtaouaets* and the *Hurons* wou'd often aſſiſt at our Ceremonies in a Church cover'd with Ruſhes and a few Boards, which the *Canadians* had built here: But they came more out of Curioſity than any Deſign to conform themſelves to the Rules of our Holy Religion.

The latter of theſe Savages would tell us, ſpeaking of our Discoveries, That themſelves were but Men; but for us *Europeans*, we muſt needs be Spirits. That if they had gone ſo far up amongſt ſtrange Nations as we had done, they ſhould have been ſure to have been kill'd by them without Mercy; whereas we paſs'd every where without danger, and knew how to procure the Friendſhip of all we met.

During the Winter, we broke Holes in the Ice of the Lake *Huron*, and by means of ſeveral large

Stones, sunk our Nets sometimes twenty, sometimes twenty five Fathom under Water to catch Fish, which we did in great abundance. We took Salmon-Trouts, which often weigh'd from forty to fifty pounds. These made our *Indian* Wheat go down the better, which was our ordinary Diet. Our Beverage was nothing but Broth made of Whiteings, which we drank hot; because as it cools it turns to Jelly, as if it had been made of Veal.

During our stay here, Father *Pierſon* and I would often divert our selves on the Ice, where we skated on the Lake as they do in *Holland*. I had learn'd this Slight when I was at *Ghent*, from whence to *Brussels* one may run in three Hours with abundance of Pleasure when the Canal is frozen. 'Tis the usual Diversion with which the Inhabitants of these two Cities entertain themselves during the Winter, by favour of the Ice.

It must be allow'd, without reflecting on any other Order, That those of *St. Francis* are very proper for the settling of Colonies. They make a strict Vow of Poverty, and have a Property in nothing as their own: They enjoy only a simple Use of Things necessary to Life. Those that give us any Moveables, continue still to be the owners of them, and may take them again at pleasure. 'Tis this Poverty which is recommended to us by many Popes; but above all by our Rule, which is the only one I find inserted in the Canon-Law.

What pass'd at *Missilimakinak* during this Winter, is a Proof of what I say. Two and forty *Canadians*, who were come hither upon the account of the Trade which they drive here with the Savages, desir'd me to present them with the Cord of *St. Francis*. I compli'd with their Request; and each time I deliver'd a Cord, made a small Harangue by way of Exhortation to the Person receiving it, and then associated him to the Prayers of the Order. They would

would have kept me with them, and made me a Settlement, where from time to time they might have resort to me. They promis'd me moreover, since I would accept of no Furrs, that they would prevail with the Savages to furnish out my Subsistence in the best manner which could be expected for the Country. But because the greatest part of them that made me this Offer, Traded into these Parts without permission, I gave them to understand, That the Common Good of our Discoveries, ought to be preferr'd before their private Advantages; so desir'd them to excuse me, and permit me to return to *Canada* for a more Publick Good.

C H A P. LXIX.

The Author's Departure from Missilimakinak. He passes two great Lakes. The taking of a Great Bear. Some Particulars relating to the Flesh of that Beast.

WE parted from *Missilimakinak* in *Easter-Week*, 1681. and for twelve or thirteen Leagues together, were oblig'd to draw our Provisions and Canow's after us over the Ice, up the *Lake Huron*, the sides of which continu'd still froze five or six Leagues broad. The Ice being broke, we embark'd, after the Solemnity of the *Quasimodo*, which we had an opportunity to celebrate, having by good Fortune met with a little Wine, which a *Canadian* had brought with him, and serv'd us all the rest of our Voyage. After we had row'd a hundred Leagues all along the sides of the *Lake Huron*, we pass'd the Strights, which are thirty Leagues through, and the *Lake of St. Claire*, which is in the middle: Thence we arriv'd at the *Lake Erie*, or of the *Cat*, where we staid some time to kill Sturgeon, which come here in great numbers, to cast their Spawn on the

side of the Lake. We took nothing but the Belly of the Fish, which is the most delicious part, and threw away the rest.

This Place afforded also plenty of Venison and Fowl. As we were standing in the Lake, upon a large Point of Land which runs it self very far into the Water, we perceiv'd a Bear in it as far as we could see. We could not imagine how this Creature got there; 'twas very improbable that he should swim from one side to t'other, that was thirty or forty Leagues over. It hapned to be very calm; and so two of our Men leaving us on the Point, put off to attack the Bear, that was near a quarter of a League out in the Lake. They made two Shot at him one after another, otherwise the Beast had certainly sunk them. As soon as they had fir'd, they were forc'd to sheer off as fast as they could to charge again; which when they had done, they return'd to the Attack. The Bear was forc'd to stand it; and it cost them no less than seven Shot before they could compass him.

As they were endeavouring to get him aboard, they were like to have been over-set; which if they had, they must have been infallibly lost: All they could do was to fasten him to the Bar that is in the middle of the Canow, and so drag him on Shoar, which they did at last with much ado, and great hazard of their Lives. We had all the leisure that was requisite for the dressing and ordering him, so as to make him keep; and in the mean time took out his Intrails, and having cleans'd and boild them, eat heartily of them. These are as good a Dish as those of our Sucking-Pigs in *Europe*. His Flesh serv'd us the rest of our Voyage, which we usually eat with lean Goats-flesh, because it is too fat to eat by it self: So that we liv'd for an hundred Leagues upon the Game that we kill'd in this Place.

C H A P T E R LXX.

The Meeting of the Author and a certain Captain of the Outtaouacts, nam'd Talon by the Intendant of that Name, upon the Lake of Erie; who recounts to him many Adventures of his Family and Nation. // Further Observations upon the Great Fall or Cataracts of Niagara.

There was a certain Captain of the Outtaouacts, to whom the Intendant Talon gave his own Name, whilst he was at Quebec. He us'd to come often to that City with those of his Nation, who brought Furrs thither: We were strangely surpriz'd at the sight of this Man, whom we found almost famish'd, and more like a Skeleton than a living Man. He told us the Name of Talon would be soon extinct in this Country, since he resolv'd not to survive the Loss of six of his Family who had been starved to Death. He added, That the Fishery and Chace had both fail'd this Year, which was the occasion of this sad Disaster.

He told us moreover, That though the Iroquese were not in War with his Nation, yet had they taken and carri'd into Slavery an entire Family of Twelve Souls. He begg'd very earnestly of me, that I would use my utmost Endeavours to have them releas'd, if they were yet alive; and gave me two Necklaces of Black and White Porcelain, that I might be sure not to neglect a Business which he laid so much to heart. *I am rely upon thee, Bare-foot, (for so they always call'd us) and am confident that the Iroquese will hearken to thy Reasons sooner than any ones. Thou didst often advise them at their Councils, which were held then at the Fort of Katarockoui, where thou hast caus'd a great Cabin to be built. Had I been at my Village when thou cam'st through it, I would have done all that I could to have kept thee,*

thee, instead of the Black Coat (so they call the Jesuites) *which was there.* When the poor Captain had done speaking, I solemnly promis'd him to use my utmost Interest with the *Iroquese*, for the releasement of his Friends.

After we had row'd above an hundred and forty Leagues upon the *Lake Erie*, by reason of the many Windings of the Bays and Creeks which we were forc'd to coast, we pass'd by the Great Fall of *Niagara*, and spent half a Day in considering the Wonders of that prodigious Cascade.

I could not conceive how it came to pass, that four great Lakes, the least of which is 400 Leagues in compass, should empty themselves one into another; and then all centre and discharge themselves at this Great Fall, and yet not drown good part of *America*. What is yet more surprizing, the Ground from the Mouth of the *Lake Erie*, down to the Great Fall, appears almost level and flat. 'Tis scarce discernable that there is the least Rise or Fall for six Leagues together: The more than ordinary swiftness of the Stream, is the only thing that makes it be observ'd. And that which makes it yet the stranger is, That for two Leagues together below the Fall, towards the *Lake Ontario*, or *Frontenac*, the Lands are as level as they are above it towards the *Lake of Erie*.

Our Surprise was still greater, when we observ'd there were no Mountains within two good Leagues of this Cascade; and yet the vast quantity of Water which is discharg'd by these four fresh Seas, stops or centers here, and so falls above six hundred Foot down into a Gulph, which one cannot look upon without Horror. Two other great Out-lets, or Falls of Water, which are on the two sides of a small sloping Island, which is in the midst, fall gently and without noise, and so glide away quietly enough: But when this prodigious quantity of Water, of which I speak, comes to fall, there is such a din, and such
a noise,

a noise, that is more deafning than the loudest Thunder.

The rebounding of these Waters is so great, that a sort of Cloud arises from the Foam of it, which are seen hanging over this Abyss even at Noon-day, when the Sun is at its heighth. In the midst of Summer, when the Weather is hottest, they arise above the tallest Firrs, and other great Trees, which grow in the sloping Island which make the two Falls of Waters that I spoke of.

I wish'd an hundred times that somebody had been with us, who could have describ'd the Wonders of this prodigious frightful Fall, so as to give the Reader a just and natural Idea of it, such as might satisfy him, and create in him an Admiration of this Prodigy of Nature as great as it deserves. In the mean time, accept the following Draught, such as it is; in which however I have endeavour'd to give the curious Reader as just an Image of it as I could.

We must call to mind what I observ'd of it in the beginning of my Voyage, which is to be seen in the Seventh Chapter of this Book. From the Mouth of the Lake *Erie* to the Great Fall, are reckon'd six Leagues, as I have said, which is the continuation of the Great River of *St. Lawrence*, which arises out of the four Lakes above-mention'd. The River, you must needs think, is very rapid for these six Leagues, because of the vast Discharge of Waters which fall into it out of the said Lakes. The Lands, which lie on both sides of it to the East and West, are all level from the Lake *Erie* to the Great Fall. Its Banks are not steep; on the contrary, the Water is almost always level with the Land. 'Tis certain, that the Ground towards the Fall is lower, by the more than ordinary swiftness of the stream; and yet 'tis not perceivable to the Eye for the six Leagues aforesaid.

After it has run thus violently for six Leagues, it meets

meets with a small sloping Island, about half a quarter of a League long, and near three hundred Foot broad, as well as one can guess by the Eye; for it is impossible to come at it in a Canow or Bark, the Waters run with that force. The Isle is full of Cedar and Firr; but the Land of it lies no higher than that on the Banks of the River. It seems to be all level, even as far as the two great Cascades that make the Main Fall.

The two sides of the Channels, which are made by the Isle, and run on both sides of it, overflow almost the very Surface of the Earth of the said Isle, as well as the Land that lies on the Banks of the River to the East and West, as it runs South and North. But we must observe, that at the end of the Isle, on the side of the two great Falls, there is a sloping Rock which reaches as far as the Great Gulph into which the said Waters fall; and yet the Rock is not at all wetted by the two Cascades which fall on both sides, because the two Torrents which are made by the Isle, throw themselves with a prodigious force, one towards the East, and the other towards the West, from off the end of the Isle, where the Great Fall of all is.

After then these two Torrents have thus run by the two sides of the Isle, they cast their Waters all of a sudden down into the Gulph by two Great Falls; which Waters are push'd so violently on by their own Weight, and so sustain'd by the swiftness of the motion, that they don't wet the Rock in the least. And here it is that they tumble down into an Abyss above 600 Foot in depth.

The Waters that flow on the side of the East, do not throw themselves with that violence as those that fall on the West. The reason is, because the Rock at the end of the Island, rises something more on this side, than it does on the West; and so the Waters being supported by it somewhat longer than they

they are on the other side, are carry'd the smoother off: But on the West the Rock sloping more, the Waters, for want of a Support, become the sooner broke, and fall with the greater precipitation. Another reason is, the Lands that lie on the West are lower than those that lie on the East. We also observ'd, that the Waters of the Fall, that is to the West, made a sort of a square Figure as they fell, which made a third Cascade, less than the other two, which fell betwixt the South and North.

And because there is a rising Ground which lies before those two Cascades to the North, the Gulph is much larger there than to the East. Moreover, we must observe, that from the rising Ground that lies over against the two last Falls which are on the West of the main Fall, one may go down as far as the bottom of this terrible Gulph. The Author of this Discovery was down there, the more narrowly to observe the Fall of these prodigious Cascades. From hence we could discover a Spot of Ground, which lay under the Fall of Water which is to the East, big enough for four Coaches to drive a breast without being wet; but because the Ground, which is to the East of the sloping Rock, where the first Fall empties it self into the Gulph, is very steep, and almost perpendicular, 'tis impossible for a Man to get down on that side, into the Place where the four Coaches may go a-breast, or to make his way through such a quantity of Water as falls towards the Gulph: So that 'tis very probable, that to this dry Place it is that the Rattle-Snakes retire, by certain Passages which they find under ground.

From the end then of this Island it is, that these two Great Falls of Waters, as also the third but now mention'd, throw themselves, after a most surprising manner, down into a dreadful Gulph six hundred Foot and more in depth. I have already said, that the Waters which Discharge themselves at the
Cascade

Cascade to the East, fall with lesser force; whereas those to the West tumble all at once, making two Cascades; one moderate, the other very violent and strong, which at last make a kind of Crochet, or square Figure, falling from South to North, and West to East. After this, they rejoin the Waters of the other Cascade that falls to the East, and so tumble down altogether, though unequally, into the Gulph, with all the violence that can be imagin'd, from a Fall of six hundred Foot, which makes the most Beautiful, and at the same time most Frightful Cascade in the World.

After these Waters have thus discharg'd themselves into this dreadful Gulph, they begin to resume their Course, and continue the great River of *St. Lawrence* for two Leagues, as far as the three Mountains which are on the East of the River, and the great Rock which is on the West, and lifts it self three Fathoms above the Waters, or thereabouts. The Gulph into which these Waters are discharg'd, continues it self thus two Leagues together, between a Chain of Rocks, flowing with a prodigious Torrent, which is bridled and kept in by the Rocks that lie on each side of the River.

Into this Gulph it is, that these several Cascades empty themselves, with a violence equal to the height from whence they fall, and the quantity of Waters, which they discharge. Hence arise those deafning Sounds, that dreadful roaring and bellowing of the Waters which drown the loudest Thunder, as also the perpetual Mists that hang over the Gulph, and rise above the tallest Pines that are in the little Isle so often mention'd. After a Channel is again made at the bottom of this dreadful Fall by the Chain of Rocks, and fill'd by that prodigious quantity of Waters which are continually falling, the River of *St. Lawrence* resumes its Course: But with that violence, and his Waters beat against the Rocks

Rocks with so prodigious a force, that 'tis impossible to pass even in a Canow of Bark, though in one of them a Man may venture safe enough upon the most rapid Streams, by keeping close to the Shoar.

These Rocks, as also the prodigious Torrent, last for two Leagues; that is, from the great Fall, to the three Mountains and great Rock: But then it begins insensibly to abate, and the Land to be again almost on a level with the Water; and so it continues as far as the Lake Ontario, or *Frontenac*.

When one stands near the Fall, and looks down into this most dreadful Gulph, one is seized with Horror, and the Head turns round, so that one cannot look long or stedfastly upon it. But this vast Deluge beginning insensibly to abate, and even to fall to nothing about the three Mountains, the Waters of the River *St. Lawrence* begin to glide more gently along, and to be almost upon a level with the Lands; so that it becomes navigable again, as far as the Lake *Frontenac*, over which we pass to come to the New Canal, which is made by the discharge of its Waters. Then we enter again upon the River *St. Lawrence*, which not long after makes that which they call the *Long Fall*, an hundred Leagues from *Nagara*.

I have often heard talk of the Cataracts of the Nile, which make the People deaf that live near them. I know not whether the *Iroquese*, who formerly inhabited near this Fall, and liv'd upon the Beasts which from time to time are born down by the violence of its Torrent, withdrew themselves from its Neighbourhood, lest they should likewise become deaf; or out of the continual fear they were in of Rattle-Snakes, which are very common in this Place during the great Heats, and lodge in Holes all along the Rocks as far as the Mountains, which lie two Leagues lower.

Be it as it will, these dangerous Creatures are to be

be met with as far as the Lake *Frontenac*, on the South-side ; but because they are never to be seen but in the midst of Summer, and then only when the Heats are excessive, they are not so afraid of them here as elsewhere. However, 'tis reasonable to presume, that the horrid noise of the Fall, and the fear of these poisonous Serpents, might oblige the Savages to seek out a more commodious Habitation.

Having carry'd our Canow from the Great Fall of *Niagara*, as far as the three Mountains, which are two Leagues below, in all which Way we perceiv'd never a Snake ; we proceeded in our Voyage, and arriv'd at the Lake of *Ontario*, or *Frontenac*.

C H A P. LXXI.

The Author sets out from the Fort which is at the Mouth of the River Niagara, and obliges the Iroquese assembld in Council, to deliver up the Slaves they had made of the Outtaouacts.

WE met none of the Savages in the little Village of the *Iroquese*, which is near the Mouth of the River *Niagara* ; for they sow there but very little *Indian Corn* ; and inhabit the Village but in Harvest-time, or in the Season they go a fishing for Sturgeons, or Whiteings which are there in great plenty. We thought also we should find some *Canadians* at the Fort of the River which we had begun to build, at the beginning of our Discovery : But these Forts were only built for a Show, to cover the secret Trade of Furs, and countenance the great Hopes M. de la Salle had given to the *French Court*.

It must be granted, that such Discoveries are beyond any private Mens Power, and they must be

countenanc'd by a Sovereign Authority, to be successful. Therefore M. *de la Salle* had got the French Court's Protection; but instead of making a good use of it for the publick Good, he did chiefly aim at his own private Interest, and for that reason neglected a great many things necessary to carry on his Enterprize. The Fort of the River of *Niagara* was become a deserted Place, and might have serv'd to countenance his Design. We came along the Southern Coasts of the Lake *Ontario*, or *Frontenac*; and after having sailed thirty Leagues, we arriv'd about *Whitsuntide* in the Year 1681. at the great Village of the *Tjonnontouans Iroquese*.

The Savages came to meet us, repeating often this Word *Otchitagon*, meaning by it, that the *Bare-foot* was return'd from the great Voyage he had undertook, to visit the Nations that are beyond the River *Hobio* and *Meschasipi*; and though our Faces were burnt by the Sun, and my Clothes patch'd up with wild Bull-Skins, yet they knew me, and carry'd me with my two Men into one of their Officer's Cottages.

They did call their Council, which met to the number of Thirty, or thereabouts, wearing their Gowns in a stately manner, made up with all sorts of Skins, twisted about their Arms, with the *Calumet* in their Hands. They gave order that we shou'd be entertain'd according to their own Fashion, while they did smoak without eating.

After we had done eating, I told them by a *Canadian* that was my Interpreter, that their Warriors had brought 12 *Outtaouacts* as Slaves, though they were their Confederates and *Onontio's* Friends, ('tis the Name they give to the Viceroy of *Canada*) breaking thereby the Peace, and proclaiming War against *Canada*: And the better to oblige them to deliver up to us the *Outtaouacts*, who by good Fortune were still alive, we flung in the middle of the Assembly two Collars of Porcelain, that Captain

Taken

Talon had given us ; This is the only way among them, to enter upon any Affair.

The next day the Council met , and the *Iroquefe* answer'd me with some other Collars of Porcelain ; and told me, That those who had made these Men Slaves , were young Warriors without Consideration ; That we might assure *Onontio*, (who was then Count *Frontenac*) that their Nation wou'd always respect him in all things ; That they shou'd live with him as true Children with their Father, and that they wou'd deliver up the Men who had been taken.

Teganet, one of the chiefest, who spoke for the whole Nation in the Council , presented me with some Skins of Otter, Martin, and Bever, to the value of thirty Crowns. I took his Present with one Hand , and deliver'd it with the other to his Son, whom he lov'd tenderly. I told him, That I made him that Present , that he might Exchange it with some Merchandizes of *Europe* ; and that the *Barefeet* will accept of no Present at all, not out of Contempt, but because we are disinterested in all things ; assuring him, I would acquaint the Governor with his Friendship.

The *Iroquefe* was surpriz'd that I did not accept of his Present ; and seeing besides, that I gave a little Looking-Glass to his Son, he said to those of his Nation, that the other *Canadians* were not of that Temper : And they sent us several Fowls, as an acknowledgment of their Gratitude for the care we took, to teach their Children some Prayers in their own Tongue. After the Promises the Savages gave us to live in good correspondency with us, we took our leave of them, and got our selves ready, in order to continue our Voyage.

C H A P. LXXII.

The Author sets out from the Tsonnontouans Iroquese, and comes to Fort Frontenac.

I Must confess it is a great Pleasure for one to come out of Slavery, or the Hands of Savages, and to reflect upon past Miseries; especially when he returns among Friends, to rest himself after so many Hardships and Troubles.

We had still about Fourscore Leagues to go upon the Lake Ontario, before we cou'd arrive at Fort Catarakoui, or Frontenac; but we were all the Way very merry. I had help'd *Picard du Gay* and *Michael Ako*, my Fellow-Travellers, with some Skins, to make amends for the Hardship and Pains they suffer'd in that Voyage. We had much ado to row off our Canow, it being much bigger than that we made use of when we set out from the *Issati* and *Nadouesfins*; but nevertheless we came in four Days to the Fort, and kill'd in our way some Bustards and Teals. We wanted then neither Powder nor Shot, and therefore we shot at random all that we met, either small Birds, or Turtles, and Wood-Pigeons, which were then coming from Foreign Countries in so great Numbers, that they did appear in the Air like Clouds.

I observ'd upon this Occasion; and many other times during our Voyage, a thing worthy of Admiration: The Birds that were flying at the Head of the others, keep often back, to ease and help those among them that are tir'd; which may be a Lesson to Men to help one another in time of need. Father *Luke Ruiffet*, and Sergeant *la Fleur*, who had the Command in the Fort in the Absence of M. *la Salle*, receiv'd us in the House of our Order, that we had built together.

Q

They

They were much surpriz'd to see us, having been told that the Savages had hang'd me with St. Francis's Rope two Years ago. All the Inhabitants of Canada, and the Savages that we had encourag'd to live near Fort Frontenac, to Till the Ground, made me an extraordinary Reception, and shew'd much Joy to see me again. The Savages put their Hand upon their Mouth, and repeated often this Word, *Otkon*, meaning, That the *Bare-foot* must be a Spirit, having travell'd so far, through so many Nations that wou'd have kill'd them, if they had been there. Tho' we were kindly us'd in this Fort, yet my Men had a great Mind to return into Canada; and having escap'd so many Dangers together, I was willing to make an End of the Voyage with them; therefore we took leave of Father *Luke Buisset*, and of all our Friends that liv'd in that Fort, and went for *Quebec*.

C H A P. LXXIII.

The Author sets out from Fort Frontenac, and passes over the rapid Stream, which is call'd, The Long Fall. He is kindly receiv'd at Montreal by Count Frontenac.

WE set out from the Fort sooner than I thought, not being able to keep any longer my Men, and in our Way took a more exact View of the Mouth of the Lake Ontario, or Frontenac. This Place is call'd *Thousand Islands*, because there are so many of them, that 'tis impossible to tell them. The Stream is here very rapid; but its Swiftneſs is prodigiously increas'd, by the great Quantity of Waters that come from the other Lakes abovemention'd, and a great many Rivers that run into this, in the Place call'd, *The Long Fall*, which makes it as dreadful as the great Fall of *Niagara*.

But besides this great Quantity of Waters, and the Declivity of the Channel, which makes the Current so rapid, there are also on the Banks, and in the middle of the River of *St. Laurence*, about eight or Ten Leagues below the said Lake, great Rocks, which appear above Water, which stopping the Stream of the River, makes as great a Noise as the great Fall of *Niagara*.

This dreadful Encounter of Water that beats so furiously against these Rocks, continues about two Leagues, the Waters spurt up ten or twelve Yards high, and appear like huge Snow-Balls, Hail, and Rain, with dreadful Thunder, and a Noise like Hissing and Howling of Fierce Beasts: And I do certainly believe, that if a Man continued there a considerable time, he wou'd become Deaf, without any Hope of Cure.

My Men refusing to carry by Land the Canow, and the Skins they had got, I was forc'd to adventure with them; which I did willingly, having formerly pass'd these Streams in a Canow: I trusted my self again to the same GOD who had deliver'd me from so many great Dangers. The Stream is so rapid, that we cou'd not tell the Trees that were on the Bank, and yet there was hardly room for our Canow to pass between the Rocks. We were carri'd away by these horrid Currents above two great Leagues in a very short time; and in two Days we came from *Frontenac* to *Montreal*, which are about Threescore Leagues distant one from another. Before our landing at *Montreal*, my Men desir'd me to leave them with the Skins in a neighbouring Island, to save some Duties, or rather to keep off from *M. la Salle's* Creditors, who wou'd have seiz'd the Commodities they had got in their long Voyage with me in our great Discovery.

(Count *Frontenac*, who was at *Montreal*, looking out of a Window, saw me alone in a Canow, and took me for Father *Luke Fillatre*, one of our *Recollects*, who serv'd him as Chaplain. But one of his Guards, knowing me again, went to him, and acquainted him with my coming; he was so kind as to come to meet me, and made me the best Reception that a Missionary might expect from a Person of that Rank and Quality. He thought I had been murth'rd by the Savages two Years ago. He was at first surpriz'd, thinking I was some other *Recollect* that came from *Virginia*: But at last he knew me, and gave me a very kind Entertainment.

This Lord did wonder to see me so much alter'd, being lean, tir'd, and tann'd, having lost my Cloak that the *Iffatis* had stoll'n from me, being then cloath'd in an old Habit, patch'd up with pieces of wild Bulls-Skins. He carri'd me to his own House, where I continu'd for twelve Days to refresh my self. He forbade all his Servants to give me any thing to eat, without his express Order, because he was afraid I shou'd fall sick if I was left to my own Discretion, to eat as much as I wou'd after so long Hardships; and he gave me himself what he thought was best.

He was much pleas'd to hear me talk of all the Hazards I had run in so long a Voyage among so many different Nations. I represented to him what great Advantages might be got by our Discovery: But having observ'd that he was always repeating the same Questions he ask'd me the first Day I was with him, I told him I had acquainted him with what I knew; and that I did not question but *M. de Salle*, who was to go to the Court of *France* about his Affairs, had acquainted him with all the Particulars of our Voyage, having been in our Company till he was forc'd to leave us to return into *Canada*.

I knew that M. *la Salle* was a Man that wou'd never forgive me, if I had told all that I knew of our Voyage ; therefore I kept secret the whole Discovery we had made of the River *Meschassipi*. My Men were as much concern'd as I, in concealing our Voyage ; for they had been certainly punish'd for having undertaken it against Orders ; and the Skins they had got in their return from the *Iffati* with M. *du Luth*, who did stay for that reason among the *Outtaouaets*, had likewise been confiscated.

Count *Frontenac* shew'd me in private a Letter M. *du Luth* had sent him by a *Huron*, who liv'd in the Neighbourhood of the *Outtaouaets*, by which he acquainted him, he cou'd never learn any thing about our Voyage, neither from me, nor from the Men who attended me. I cou'd not forbear then to tell him, that M. *du Luth* was not so much devoted to his Service as he thought ; and that I might assure him that some Men that were his Opponents, had stop'd M. *du Luth's* Mouth ; and that I was fully perswaded he had been sent by them with a secret Order, to pump me ; but I was bound by my Character, and in Charity, to spare those Men, tho' on many Occasions they had not dealt so justly with me ; but I was willing to leave all to God, who will render to every one according to his Works.

François de Laval, the first Lord Bishop of *Quebec*, came along the River *St. Laurence*, to make his Visitation, while I was coming to *Quebec* with the Lord *Frontenac*. We met him near Fort *Champlein*, which had been fortifi'd, to put a Stop to the Inroads of the *Iroquoise* : The Lord *Frontenac* ask'd me, if I had got an Ague ; and then looking upon those that attended him, he said, that the feeling of the Pulse increas'd the Fever ; insinuating to me thereby, that there was a Design laid against me, to get out cunningly what I kept secret in my Heart.

After a short Conversation with the Bishop, I ask'd his Episcopal Blessing, tho' I did not think fit to reveal to him all that I knew of our Discoveries. We were going to discourse more largely upon this Subject, when the Lord *Frontenac* came in, to invite the Bishop to Dine with him; and thereby to give me an opportunity to put an end to our Conversation.

I was much puzzl'd in the Company of these two Great Men; the Bishop was the Chief of the Company; but I was yet to pay a great Respect to the Lord *Frontenac*. I did avoid talking of Matters that might be troublesome to me; and I told the Bishop, that the Lord *Frontenac* had prescrib'd me a Course of Diet, lest I shou'd fall sick, after all the Hardships I had endur'd, and the bad Food I fed upon among the Savages; therefore I desir'd him to give me leave to return to *Quebec*, that I might live there in private; for I was not able then to Catechise the Children, nor to perform any Functions of a Missionary in his Visitation; and that I wanted some Rest, that I might work more vigorously afterwards. By these Means I avoided a Conversation with the Bishop, that wou'd have prov'd very troublesome, to me; for he gave me leave to retire to our Monastery, to rest there after all my Fatigues.

C H A P. LXXIV.

A great Defeat of the Illinois, that were attack'd and surpriz'd by the Iroquefe.

While I was resting after my great Labours, the Lord Frontenac did receive Letters from Father Zenobe Mambre, whom I left among the Illinois. He sent him Word, that the Iroquefe had drawn the *Miamis* into their Party; and that being join'd together, they had form'd a great Army, and were fall'n on a sudden upon the *Illinois*, to destroy that Nation; and that they were got together to the number of Nine hundred, all Fusiliers; these two Nations being well provided with Guns, and all sort of Ammunitions of War, by the Commerce they have with the Europeans.

The Iroquefe were projecting this Enterprize about the 12th of September, 1680. while I was about the Discovery of the River *Meschasipi*. The *Illinois* did not mistrust them; for they had concluded a Treaty of Peace with these two Nations; and M. la Salle had assur'd them, that he wou'd do his utmost Endeavours to oblige them to observe the Treaty; therefore the *Illinois* were easily surpriz'd, having sent most part of their Youth to make War in another Country.

A *Chaouanon*, Confederate to the *Illinois*, returning from their Country home, came back again, to give them notice that he had discover'd an Army of Iroquefe and *Miamis*, who were already enter'd into their Country on purpose to surprize them.

This News frighted the *Illinois*; yet the next Day they appear'd in the Field, and march'd directly to the Enemy; and as soon as they were in fight, they charg'd them. The Fight was very sharp, and

and a great many Men were kill'd on both sides.

M. Tonti, whom M. la Salle had left in the Fort of *Crevecoeur*, to command there in his Absence, hearing of this Irruption, was in fear for the *Illinois's* sake; for though their Army was more numerous than that of their Enemy, yet they had no Guns; therefore he offer'd himself to go *Askenon*, that is *Mediator*, carrying the *Calumet* of Peace in his Hand, in order to bring them to an Agreement.

The *Iroquese* finding more resistance than they thought at first, and seeing that the *Illinois* were resolv'd to continue the War, consented to a Treaty of Peace, accepting Mr. Tonti's Mediation, and hearken'd to the Proposals he made them from the *Illinois*, who had chosen him for Mediator.

M. Tonti represented to them, that the *Illinois* were *Onontio's* ('tis the Name they give to the Viceroy of *Canada*) Children and Confederates as well as themselves; and that it wou'd be very unpleasant to him, who lov'd them all, to hear that they had begun the War; therefore he earnestly intreated them to return home, and trouble the *Illinois* no further, seeing they had religiously observ'd the Treaty of Peace.

These Proposals did not please some of the young *Iroquese*, who had a great mind to fight, and therefore charg'd on a sudden M. Tonti and his Men with several Shots; and a desperate young Fellow of the Country of *Onnontaghe*, gave him a Wound with a Knife, near the Heart; but by chance a Rib warded off the Stroke: Several others did fall upon him, and wou'd take him away; but one taking notice of his Hat, and that his Ears were not bor'd, knew thereby that he was not an *Illinois*, and for that reason an old Man cry'd out, That they should spare

spare him ; and flung to him a Collar of Porcelain, meaning thereby to make him Satisfaction for the Blood he had lost , and the Wound he had receiv'd.

A young Man of the *Iroquese's* Crew ; took *M. Tonti's* Hat, and hung it on his Gun, to fright the *Illinois* therewith ; who thinking by that Signal that *Tonti*, Father *Zenobe*, and all the *Europeans* that were in his Company, had been kill'd by the *Iroquese*, were so much surpriz'd and disquieted with that horrid Attempt, that they fanci'd themselves deliver'd up into the Hands of their Enemies, and were upon running away : Yet the *Iroquese* having made a Signal to Father *Zenobe* to draw near, that they might confer with him about the means to prevent both Armies to come to fight, they receiv'd the Calumet of Peace, and made a Motion as if they had a mind to withdraw : But the *Illinois* were hardly come to their Village, before that they saw the *Iroquese's* Army appearing upon some Hills, which were over-against them.

This Motion oblig'd Father *Zenobe*, at the *Illinois's* Request, to go to them to know the reason of a Proceeding so contrary to what they had done in accepting of the Calumet of Peace. But that Embassy did not please those Barbarians, who wou'd not lose so fair an Opportunity. Father *Zenobe* did run the hazard of being murther'd by these unmerciful Men ; yet the same God who had preserv'd many of our Fellow-Missionaries in the like Encounters, and myself in this Discovery, kept him from the Hand of these furious Men. He was a Man of a short Station, but very couragious, and went boldly among the *Iroquese*, who receiv'd him very civilly.

They told him, that the Want they were reduc'd to, had forc'd them to this new Step, having no Provisions for their Army, and their great Number having driven away the Wild-Bulls from that Country.

Father

Father Zenobe brought their Answer to the *Illinois*, who presently sent them some *Indian Corn*, and all things necessary for their Subsistence, and propos'd to them a Treaty of Commerce, having in that Country a great plenty of Beaver's Skins, and other Furs.

The *Iroquese* accepted of these Proposals; they did exchange Hostages, and Father Zenobe went into their Camp, and did lie there, to lose no time to bring all Matters to an Agreement, and conclude a Treaty between them. But the *Iroquese* repairing in great Numbers into the Quarters of the *Illinois*, who suspected no ill Design, they advanc'd as far as their Village, where they wasted the *Mausoleums* that they us'd to raise to their Dead, which are commonly seven or eight Foot high: They spoil'd the *Indian Corn* that was sown; and having deceiv'd the *Illinois*, under a false pretence of Peace, fortifi'd themselves in their Village.

In this Confusion the *Iroquese* join'd with the *Miamis*, carri'd away eight hundred *Illinois* Women and Children; and their Fury went so far, that these *Antropophages* did eat some Old Men of that Nation, and burnt some others who were not able to follow them, and so return'd with the Slaves they had made, to their own Habitations, which were four hundred Leagues off the Country they had so cruelly plunder'd.

Upon the first News of the Approach of the *Iroquese*, the *Illinois* had sent most part of their Families to the other side of a little Hill, to secure them from their Fury, and that they might get over the River *Meschassipi*; and the others that were fit for War, did flock together on the Tops of the Hills that were near their Habitations, and then went to the other side of the River, to look after their Families, and provide for their Subsistence.

After

After this perfidious Expedition, these Barbarians wou'd fain alledge some Pretences to excuse their Treachery, and wou'd persuade our Fathers to retire from the *Illinois's* Country, since they were all fled away; and that there was no likelihood they shou'd want them for the future to teach them their Prayers, as the *Atsientatzi*, or the Black-Gowns do in their Countries, meaning the Jesuits, whom they call by that Name. They told Fathers *Gabriel* and *Zenobe*, that they should do better to return into *Canada*, and that they would attempt nothing against the Life of the Children of *Onontio*, Governor of *Canada*, desiring to have a Letter under their Hand, to shew it as a Testimony of their honest proceeding in this occasion, and assuring them that they would no more stand by their Enemies.

Our two Fathers being so forsaken by their Hosts, and finding themselves expos'd to the Fury of a Cruel and Victorious Enemy, resolv'd to return home, according to the *Iroquesse* Advice; and being suppli'd by them with a Canow, they embark'd for *Canada*.

C H A P. LXXVII.

The Savages Kikapoux murder Father Gabriel de la Ribourde, a Recollect Missionary.

GOD has given me the Grace to be insensible of the Wrong I have suffer'd from my Enemies, and to be thankful for the Kindnesses I have receiv'd from my Friends. But if ever I had reason to be thankful to those that have taken care of my Instruction, certainly I must confess it was to this Good Father *Gabriel*, who was my Master during my Novitiate in the Monastery of our Order at *Bethune*, in the Province of *Artois*; therefore I think,

think, that I am bound in Duty to mention so Honest a Man in this Relation of my Discovery, especially having had so sad a Share therein, as to be murder'd by the Savages *Kikapoux*, as I will relate it.

It must be observ'd, That M. *Tonti* could stay no longer at Fort *Crevecoeur*, after the *Illinois* Defeat; therefore he desir'd Fathers *Gabriel* and *Zenobe* to get, with two young Boys that were left there, into a Canow, and return into *Canada*. All the rest of the Inhabitants had deserted that Country since that unfortunate Accident, by the Suggestion of some Men of *Canada*, who were the Predominant *Genius* of the Country, who had flatter'd them with great Hopes, to oblige them to forsake M. *de la Salle's* Design.

Our said Fathers being so forc'd to leave that Country after such a Defeat, embark'd the 18th of *September* following, wanting all sorts of Provisions, except what they could kill with their Guns; but being arriv'd about eight Leagues from the *Illinois*, their Canow touching upon a Rock, let in Water, and so were forc'd to land about Noon to mend it.

While they were about careening the same, Father *Gabriel*, charm'd with the fine Meadows, the little Hills, and the pleasant Groves in that Country, which are dispers'd at such distances, that they look as if they had been planted on purpose to adorn the Country, went so far into those Woods, that he lost his Way. At Night Father *Zenobe* went to look after him, as also the rest of the Company; for he was generally lov'd by all that knew him. But M. *Tonti* was suddenly seiz'd with panick Fears, thinking that every moment the *Iroquese* wou'd fall upon him: So that he sent for Father *Zenobe*, and forc'd all his Men to retire into the Canow, and so got over the River on the *Illinois*-side, and left the

the Old Father expos'd to the Barbarians Insults, without any respect to his Age, or to his Personal Merits.

'Tis true, that in the Evening one of the Young Men that were in the Canow with Father Zenobe, fir'd a Gun by M. Tonti's Order, and lighted a great Fire; but all was in vain.

The next Day, M. Tonti seeing he had behav'd himself cowardly on this occasion, went back again by break of Day to the Place where we had left the Day before Father Gabriel, and continu'd there till Noon looking after the poor Christian. But though some of his Men enter'd into the Groves, where they saw the fresh Steps of a Man, which were also printed in the Meadows along the Bank of the River, they could never hear of him. M. Tonti said since, to excuse himself for having so basely forsaken Father Gabriel, That he thought the *Iroquese* had laid an Ambuscade to surprize him; for they had seen him flying away, and they might fancy he had declar'd himself for the *Illinois*.

But M. Tonti might have remember'd he had given his Letters for *Canada* to these *Iroquese*; and that if they had form'd any Design upon his Life, they would have executed it when he was among them: But they were so far from it, that when he was wounded, they presented him with a Collar of Porcelain; which they never do but when some unlucky Accidents happen. The Savages don't use so much circumspection; and therefore this Excuse is groundless and frivolous. Father Zenobe has left us in Writing, That he would stay for Father Gabriel: But M. Tonti forc'd him to embark at Three a Clock in the Afternoon; saying That certainly he had been kill'd by the *Iroquese*, or else he was gone a-foot along the Bank of the River; and that they would see him in their way. However, they could hear nothing

nothing of him; and the farther they went, the greater Father Zenobe's Afflictions grew. They were then in such a want of Provisions, that they had nothing to feed upon but Potatoes, Wild Garlick, and some small Roots they had scratch'd out of the Ground with their own Fingers.

We have heard since, that Father Gabriel had been kill'd a little while after his landing. The Nation of the *Kikapoux*, who, as one may see in our Map, inhabit to the Westward of the Bay of *Puans*, had sent their Youth to make War against the *Iroquese*; but hearing that these Barbarians were got into the Country of the *Illinois*, they went seeking about to surprize them. Three *Kikapoux*, making the Vanguard, met with Father Gabriel, and came up to him as near as they could, hiding themselves among the Grass, which is very high in that Country; and though they knew he was not an *Iroquese*, yet they knock'd him down with their Clubs, call'd *Head-breakers*, which are made of a very hard Wood. They left his Body on the spot, and carri'd away his Breviary and Journal, which since came to the Hands of a Jesuite, whom I will mention in my other Volume, wherein I design to speak of the First Introduction of the Faith into *Canada*. These Barbarians took off the Skin of his Head, and carri'd it in triumph to their Village, giving out that it was the Hair of an *Iroquese* whom they had kill'd.

Thus di'd this Good Old Man; to whom we may apply what the Scripture says of those whom Herod in his Fury caus'd to be Slain, *Non erat qui sepeliret*; There was no body to Bury him. This Worthy Man was wont in the Lessons he made us in our Novitiate, to prepare us against the like Accidents by Mortifications: And it seems that he had some foresight of what befel him. So Good a Man deserv'd a Better Fate, if a Better might be wish'd for,
than

than to die in the Functions of an Apostolical Mission, by the Hands of those same Nations, to whom the Divine Providence had sent him to convert them.

Father *Gabriel* was about 65 Years old. He had not only liv'd an exemplary Life, such as our Good Fathers do, but had also perform'd all the Duties of the Employments he had in that Order, either when he was at home Guardian, Superior, Inferior, and Master of the Novices; or abroad when he was in *Canada*, where he continu'd from the Year 1670, until his Death. I understood several times by his Discourses, that he was much oblig'd to the *Fleminings*, who had maintain'd him a long time: He often talk'd to us about it, to inspire us, by his Example, with some Sentiments of Gratitude towards our Benefactors. I have seen him mov'd with Grief, considering that so many Nations liv'd in the Ignorance of the Way to Salvation; and he was willing to lose his Life, to deliver them out of their Stupidity.

The *Iroquese* said of him, That he had been brought to bed, because his Great Belly was become flat by his frequent Fastings, and the Austerity of his Life.

M. *Tonti* can never clear himself of his Baseness, for forsaking Father *Gabriel*, under pretence of being afraid of the *Iroquese*: For though they are a Wild Nation, yet they lov'd that Good Old Man, who had been often among them: But M. *Tonti* might bear him some Secret Grudge; because Father *Gabriel*, after the *Illinois* Defeat, seeing that M. *Tonti* had over-laden the Canow with Beavers-Skins, so that there was no room for him, he did throw many of these Skins to the *Iroquese*, to shew them that he was not come into that Country to get Skins or other Commodities.

Father *Zenobe* had neither Credit nor Courage enough to persuade *M. Tonti* to stay a while for that Good Father, who was thus sacrific'd to secure some Beavers-Skins. I do not doubt but the Death of that venerable Old Man was very precious in the sight of God, and I hope it will produce one time or other its Effects, when it shall please God to set forth his Mercy towards these Wild Nations; and I do wish it might please him to make use of a feeble means, as I am, to finish what I have, through His Grace, and with Labour, so happily begun.

C H A P. LXXVI.

The Author's Return from his Discovery, to Quebec; and what hapned at his Arrival at the Convent of Our Lady of Angels near that Town.

COUNT *Frontenac*, Viceroy of *Canada*, gave me two of his Guards, who understood very well to manage a Canow, to carry me to *Quebec*. We set out from *Champlein's* Fort, mention'd above; and being near the Town, I landed, and went a-foot through the Lands newly grubb'd up, to our Monastery, bidding the Guards to carry the Canow along with them.

I would not land at *Quebec*, because the Bishop had given order to his Vicar-General to receive me in his Episcopal Palace, that he might have more time to enquire about our Great Discovery: But Count *Frontenac* had expressly order'd his Major that was in the Town, to prevent that Meeting, and to take care that I might first be brought to our Monastery, to confer with Father *Valentin de Roux*, a Man of great Understanding, and Provincial-Commissary of the Recollects in *Canada*.

There

There was then in our Monastery of Our Lady of Angels, but Three Missionaries with the said Commissary; all the rest were dispers'd up-and-down in several Missions above a hundred Leagues from Quebec. One may easily imagine that I was welcome to our Monastery; Father Hilarion Feunet seem'd surpriz'd, and told me with a smiling Countenance, *Lazare veni foras*. Whereupon I ask'd him why he did apply to me what had been said of Lazarus? To which he answer'd, that two Years ago a Mass of *Requiem* had been sung for me in the Monastery, because some Savages had given out for certain, to a Black Gown, i. e. a Jesuit, That the Nation whom the *Iroquese* call *Hontcuagcha*, had hung me to a Tree with St. Francis's Rope; and that two Men who accompani'd me, had been also in a very cruel manner put to Death by the same Savages.

Here I must confess, That all Men have their Friends and their Enemies. There are some Men who, like the Fire that blackens the Wood it cannot burn, must needs raise Stories against their Neighbours; and therefore some having not been able to get me into their Party, spread abroad this Rumour of my Death, to stain my Reputation; and that Noise had given occasion to several Discourses in Canada to my Prejudice. However, (for I will, if it please God, declare my Mind farther upon this matter in another Volume) I ought to acknowledge that God has preserv'd me by a sort of Miracle, in this great and dangerous Voyage, of which you have an Account in this Volume. And when I think on it with attention, I am persuaded that Providence has kept me for publishing to the World the Great Discoveries I have made in Eleven Years time, or thereabouts, that I have liv'd in the *West-Indies*.

It must be observ'd, That a great many Men meddle with Business that don't belong to them, and will conceive a Jealousy against those that won't conform to their Humour. The Provincial-Commissary, of whom I have spoken before, was very urgent to have a Copy of the Journal of the Discovery I had made in a Voyage of almost four Years, telling me he would keep it secret. I took his Word; for I thought, and I think still, he was a Man of Honour and Probity. Besides, I did consider that he could instruct the Bishop of *Quebec*, and Count *Frontenac*, with what they had a mind to know of this Discovery, and satisfy them both, without exposing my self.

For this purpose were intended all the Care he took of me, and all the extraordinary Civilities he did shew me, in entertaining me with all he could get then, and calling me often the *Rais'd-again*. He desir'd me to return into *Europe*, to acquaint the Publick with the great Discoveries I had made, and that by this way I should avoid the Jealousy of these two Men; that it was very difficult to please two Masters, whose Employment and Interests were so different.

He had then, before my Return into *Europe*, all the time that was necessary to Copy out my whole Voyage on the River *Meschasipi*, which I had undertook against M. de la Salle's Opinion, who has made since a Voyage from the *Illinois* to the Gulph of *Mexico*, in the Year 1682. and two Years after me. He had had some suspicion I had made that Voyage; yet he could not know the Truth of it at my Return to Fort *Frontenac*, because he had then undertook a Voyage to the *Outouagamis*, not knowing whether the Savages had murder'd me, as it had been given out.

I follow'd our Commissary's Advice, and the Resolution to return into *Europe*; but before I set out, I shew'd

I shew'd him that it was absolutely necessary for the Settlement of Colonies in our Discoveries, and make some progress towards the establishing of the Gospel, to keep all these several Nations in peace, even the most remote, and assist them against the *Iroquese*, who are their Common Enemies: That these Barbarians never make a True Peace with those that they have once beaten, or they hope to overcome, in spreading Divisions among them; that the common Maxim of the *Iroquese* had always been such, and by this means they had destroy'd above Two Millions of Souls.

The Provincial-Commiffary agreed with me upon all this, and told me that for the future he should give me all the necessary Instructions for that purpose.

I will give an Account, if it please God, in my Second Volume, of the Ways and Measures that are to be taken for the establishing of the Faith among the many Nations of so different Languages; and how good Colonies might be settled in those great Countries, which might be call'd the Delights of *America*, and become one of the greatest Empires in the World.

A
CONTINUATION,
OF THE
New Discovery
OF A
Vast Country in AMERICA,
Extending above Four Thousand Miles,
BETWEEN
New France *and* New Mexico;
Giving an
ACCOUNT
OF THE

Attempts of the *Sieur De la SALLE* upon the
Mines of *St. Barbe*, &c. The Taking of
Quebec by the *English*; With the Advantages
of a Shorter Cut to *China* and *Japan*.

By *L. Hennepin*, now Resident in *Holland*.

To which are added, Several *New Discoveries* in *North-
America*, not publish'd in the *French* Edition.

L O N D O N, Printed for *M. Bentley*, *J. Tonson*,
H. Bonwick, *T. Goodwin*, and *S. Manship*. 1698.

To His Majesty
William III.

By the Grace of God

King of *Great Britain.*

S I R,

HIS Catholick Majesty, His Electoral Highness of *Bavaria*, and the Superiors of my Order having given me leave to come into these happy Provinces, according to Your Majesty's direction, to publish the Discoveries I have made in *America*;

The Dedication.

rica; and Your Majesty having been graciously pleased to accept my first Volume, I make bold to offer You also this Second Part; wherein I insert the Travels of a Gentleman whom I have accompanied several Years, and whose violent Death, by the Hands of his own Men, disappointed the great Designs he had formed upon the Mines of *St. Barbe* in *New Mexico*. The Observations I make upon his Voyage will shew unto Posterity, that a Man must never be ungratefull to his Friends, nor revenge himself of his Enemies, but as much as it concerns the Publick Good, which ought always to prevail upon the private Interest.

This is a Character peculiar to the Illustrious House of *Nassau*, who has formerly fill'd the *Roman* Imperial Throne, and who is now cloathed in Your Majesty's Person with a Royal Power over Three great Kingdoms, and other

The Dedication.

other large Dominions which form the *British* Empire.

All the World agrees, that Nature and Grace have happily conspir'd to unite in Your Sacred Person all the Christian, Political and Military Virtue of Your Renowned Ancestors. The great Elevation of Your *Genius*, which has manifested it self by Your noble and generous Designs; Your Generosity and Liberality so worthy of Your Illustrious Birth; Your noble Inclination to do good to all Men, even to Your Enemies themselves, and the unparallell'd Constancy and greatness of Soul which You have express'd in the greatest Adversities, the true Touchstone of true Merit, are so conspicuous, that every one is convinc'd of Your Majesty's Magnanimity, Valour, Justice, Equity, Sincerity and Piety.

Your Majesty signaliz'd the Love You had for Your own Country, when

The Dedication.

You took the Command of the Armies of the States General against a powerful and victorious Conquerour, whom Your Majesty forced to abandon almost in one Day the Conquest he had made in the united Provinces. All the World admir'd Your Valour, and more still Your unparallell'd Prudence, which no body expected in such a degree from a Prince of Three and twenty Years of Age.

Never Prince was more master of that nice Art of softening the different Tempers of Nations, managing their different Interest, giving Life to their Resolutions, and therefore no Prince had been able hitherto to form and cement such an Alliance as we see at this Day for the safety of *Europe*. Those great Qualities and incomparable Virtues make Your Majesty the Darling of Your People and the Terror of Your Enemies, and keep Rebels and Factiousmen in awe, when Your Majesty's
absence

The Dedication.

absence out of Your own Kingdoms seems to give them a fair Opportunity to disturb the Tranquility of *Great Britain*: As You ascended the Throne without any effusion of Blood, God, whose Glory has been always Your chiefest Care, having been pleased to crown with a glorious and unexpected Success, the Equity of Your Intentions, so Mercy and Clemency have been ever since the Basis of it, notwithstanding the many repeated Provocations of ill-disposed Persons, whose Obstinacy deserv'd to be punish'd.

The Confederate Princes having chosen Your Majesty for their *Generalissimo*, and given proof in their choice both of the Respect and Trust they have in Your Majesty, nothing seems wanting to compleat Your Glory but to procure to *Europe* a solid and lasting Peace, which we hope is near at hand, and which will shew Your Majesty's incomparable Prudence and Wisdom, as

The Dedication.

the management of the War has shown Your Valour and Magnanimity. The so much admir'd Prudence of *Cæsar*, and the Valour of *Alexander*, come very short of what Your Majesty has already express'd, and all impartial Men will agree, that Your Majesty has exceeded the most famous Heroes mentioned in History; but I must leave off this Subject for fear of offending Your *Modesty*, which is an inseparable Companion of all great Souls.

I must beg Your Majesty's Pardon for the Liberty I take to complain against some Inhabitants of this City of *Utrecht*, who, though of the same Religion as I am, endeavour to render me odious, because, being a *Franciscan*, I have dedicated to Your Majesty two Volumes of the Discovery I have made in *America*. They ought to know that I have done nothing but by Your Majesty's Permission and that of the States, and therefore they have

The Dedication.

have not a due respect for Your Sacred Majesty and their High and Mightinesses. I hope those very Persons will acknowledge one time or other their mistake and the sincerity of my Intentions, which are such, that I may confidently say, I propose nothing to myself but the Glory of God, and to find out, under Your Majesty's Protection, a Passage into *China* and *Japan* without crossing twice the Line, which the *English* and *Dutch* have so often vainly attempted, through the Frozen Sea: I hope, Sir, through the Assistance of God, and the Favour of Your Majesty, to succeed in my Design, and discover it before the end of this Age.

By these means a great many Barbarous Nations will be brought to the knowledge of the true God and their Redeemer Jesus Christ, which I am sure is a sufficient motive for Your Majesty to give all Incouragement for this Undertaking; for being convinc'd of
Your

The Dedication.

Your Majesty's Piety, I need not use for an Argument the Temporal Advantages, that will accrue thereby to Your Kingdoms.

That God be pleased to bless Your Majesty with all sorts of Prosperities, Your Undertakings with a glorious Success, and Your Subjects with an everlasting Felicity, is and will always be the Prayer of,

S I R,

Your Majesty's most Humble

and most Obedient Servant,

F. Lewis Hennepin,

Missionary Recollect and Notary Apostolick.

THE

T H E

PREFACE.

I Need not make a long Preface to this Book, the Subject Matter thereof is able to recommend it self to the perusal of all Inquisitive Readers. The World, tho' unjust in most cases, do however Justice to Travellers, and the Accounts of their Voyages meet, generally speaking, with a more favourable Reception than any other Performances. This is a kind of Reward to Travellers for the unspeakable Fatigues they have suffer'd. Notwithstanding I have not travelled through Polite Nations, nor seen any wonderfull Edifices in the Countries I have discovered, I have met with that Reward; the Description of the Cabins of Reeds and Rushes, which are the Habitations of above 200 Nations unknown before me, have been as acceptable to Ingenious Readers as the Description of their noble Palaces and Temples of China in some other Authors. My Description of Louisiana was printed several times, and the late

The PREFACE.

late Volume I published has met with such a Reception, that I may presume this will have the same fate. And really the Discovery of 200 different Nations unknown hitherto to the Europeans is, one would think, a fit Subject to excite any one's Curiosity.

I would therefore break off my Preface in this place, were I not obliged to answer some false Accusations my Enemies have raised against me, and because I am in a Religious Order, I think fit to begin with inserting two Attestations or Certificates of Fathers of my own Order, which will prevent some further Calumnies on that Point.

I Underwritten certify to have read and examined a Book entituled, *A Description of Louisiana*, newly discovered to the South-west of *New France*, with an Account of the Manners of the Savages of that Country, written by Father *Hennepin* a Recollect Preacher, and Apostolick Missionary, and to have found nothing therein contrary to Faith or good Manners, but that on the contrary, the said Book contains many Reflections and Remarks, which may be of great use for the Conversion of the Savages, and the Advantages of the Kingdom. Given at our Covent of Recollects in *Paris*, December 13. 1682.

F. Celaree Harveau *Lector in Divinity, Father Provincial and Custos of the Recollects of the Province of St. Denys in France.*

I have

The P R E F A C E.

I Have read a Book entituled, *A Description of Louisiana*, newly discovered to the South-west of *New France*, with an Account of the Manners of the Savages of that Country, in which I have found nothing but what is conformable to the Faith of the Catholick, Apostolick and *Roman Church*, the Laws of the Kingdom, and good Manners; and it may be very usefull towards establishing the Faith of Jesus Christ in that new World, and extending the Empire of our Monarch in that fertile and delicious Country. Given at *St. Germain en Laye* in our Covent of Recollects, *December 14, 1682.*

F. Innocent Micault *Defnitor of the Recollects of the Province of St. Denys in France, and General Commissioner in the Province of Recollects of St. Anthony in Artois.*

Having premised these two Certificates, I come now to answer the Objections my Enemies urge against me.

1. *How, say they, can a Franciscan, and consequently a Priest of the Church of Rome, solicit a Protestant Prince to send him to preach the Gospel unto the Ignorant Nations he has discovered? For is it not more reasonable to think, that that Monarch will rather convert that People to his own Religion, than suffer Catholick Missionaries*
to

The PREFACE.

to convert them to the Church of Rome? What Opinion then ought Men to have of the Religion of Father Hennepin? This is the chief Argument insisted on by my Enemies to make me odious to those of my Religion, or rather to the ignorant part of it; but I may easily confute that silly Calumny. For in the first place, His Majesty of Great Britain has not exacted nor demanded any Promise of me, when He was pleased to admit me into His Service, that may be directly or indirectly contrary to my Religion. These Bigots ought by the same reason to censure the Emperor, the King of Spain, the Electors of the Empire, and Bishops of Liege, Munster, &c. who are entred into so strict an Alliance with His Majesty of Great Britain, and conclude from thence, that those Catholick Princes have formed some Design against the Catholick Religion. But supposing that the English convert those numerous Nations to their Religion, and that I contribute something to it, am I for all that to be blamed? I hope no body will say so, unless it be those morose Bigots, who think that the ignorant Americans who worship the Devil, or any other Creature, are nearer to the Kingdom of God than Protestants who worship the same God as we, hope in the same Redeemer, and are separated from us only upon some points; which Opinion I look upon as a Frenzy worthy of my Compassion, and not of a Reply. But who told them that the Catholick Faith cannot be preached under the Protection of King William, or the States General? Those who censure me, enjoy their Religion
under

The P R E F A C E.

under that very Protection, and the Reader will find at the latter end of this Volume, what offers the English made to our Recollects in America. But let them say what they please, I have the Approbation of His Catholick Majesty, the Elector of Bavaria, and the permission of the Superiors of my Order.

2. *Some others think that I impose upon them in the Account I give of the course of the Meschasipi, and that it is not possible I should have travelled in so short a time from its Mouth to its Source. To these I reply, that they are not acquainted with Canoes made of Bark of Trees, which are so light that one may travel 20, 25, and in case of need 30 Leagues in a Day against the Stream of a River, whereas by my Account it does not come to Ten in a Day. But if one follows the Stream, as we did from the River of the Illinois to the Mouth of the Meschasipi, the swiftness is so great, that I am sure we spent twice more than was requir'd.*

3. *When wicked and malicious Persons conspire the Ruin of a Man they hate, or else who gives them some umbrage, they make use of all Artifices; therefore my Enemies being afraid, that the publishing of my Discoveries may prejudice their Interest, they have done their utmost to dissuade the Booksellers of this City of Utrecht from printing my Books; insinuating, that this was but a Repetition of my Description of Louisiana published many Years agoe, and translated, as they say, into Dutch; but really this is very impertinent; for my Louisiana contains not 20 Sheets, and how is it possible*

The PREFACE.

possible that the Abstract of it should contain 502, 'Tis true, I repeat some few things I published then, because otherwise I had been unintelligible, but most commonly I refer the Reader to that Book, which certainly I would not have done, if this last were nothing but the Repetition of the former. But I would ask these Gentlemen, whether they have found in the Description of Louisiana, any Account of the Course of the Meschasipi from the River of the Illinois into the Gulph of Mexico; nor the Account of Mr. de la Salle's unfortunate Travels, with my Additions, and many other things: And as there is no body so impudent to say they have, they confute themselves, and must own, that these two Books I have dedicated to His Majesty were not printed before. I have however the Comfort that they don't accuse me to have robb'd others; the Louisiana was my own Work, and I think I may be as free to borrow something from it in case of need, as others have done.

4. A Learned Man has observ'd in a very civil manner, that I have said that I have spent about 11 Years in my Discovery, and yet it does not appear by my Account of it that I have been so long; but he must observe, that when I say Eleven Years, I reckon from the time that I set out from Flanders, which was just after the Battel of Seneff, where I was in great danger of my life, to the second Edition of my Description of Louisiana, which was in 1688; and therefore I might have said Fourteen Years instead of Eleven; for
I have

The PREFACE.

I have been all that while about it, either in Europe or America.

5. Some other peevish Criticks urge, that when I say that the Savages of Issati call the Sun Louis, I designed to flatter the King of France; but this is a foolish Suggestion, and a far fetch'd Flattery, the name of Louis being common to the King and the meanest of his Subjects; therefore I repeat, how that having liv'd a considerable time in the Family of Aquipaguetin, one of the chief of the Issati, and learned their Language, I was assured, that they call the Sun by no other name than Louis, and the Moon Louis Basetché, that is the Sun of the Night.

6. Others having no Objection to make, tells us, That I relate nothing extraordinary; but in the name of Wonder, what will this People have? For if the Description of 4 or 5 Lakes, or rather Fresh-water Seas, some of which are in circuit 4, 5 and 700 Leagues, upon which we sailed with a Ship of 60 Tuns for 500 Leagues together, to the great amazement of the Savages, who had never seen the like, nor heard the noise of Cannon: If the Description of the fall of Nigarà, which is one of the most surprizing things in the World, the Water falling from above 700 Foot high: If the Discovery of 200 different Nations unknown before, and of whom no Traveller had made mention; if all these things. I say, with the Description of that delicious Country, does not seem extraordinary, I don't know what will seem such to those Gentlemen. I relate what I have seen, and
a really

The P R E F A C E.

possible that the Abstract of it should contain 500. 'Tis true, I repeat some few things I published then, because otherwise I had been unintelligible, but most commonly I refer the Reader to that Book, which certainly I would not have done, if this last were nothing but the Repetition of the former. But I would ask these Gentlemen, whether they have found in the Description of Louisiana, any Account of the Course of the Meschasipi from the River of the Illinois into the Gulph of Mexico; nor the Account of Mr. de la Salle's unfortunate Travels, with my Additions, and many other things: And as there is no body so impudent to say they have, they confute themselves, and must own, that these two Books I have dedicated to His Majesty were not printed before. I have however the Comfort that they don't accuse me to have robb'd others; the Louisiana was my own Work, and I think I may be as free to borrow something from it in case of need, as others have done.

4. A Learned Man has observ'd in a very civil manner, that I have said that I have spent about 11 Years in my Discovery, and yet it does not appear by my Account of it that I have been so long; but he must observe, that when I say Eleven Years, I reckon from the time that I set out from Flanders, which was just after the Battel of Seneff, where I was in great danger of my life, to the second Edition of my Description of Louisiana, which was in 1688; and therefore I might have said Fourteen Tears instead of Eleven; for
I have

THE PREFACE.

I have been all that while about it, either in Europe or America.

5. Some other peevish Criticks urge, that when I say that the Savages of Iffati call the Sun Louis, I designed to flatter the King of France; but this is a foolish Suggestion, and a far feich'd Flattery, the name of Louis being common to the King and the meanest of his Subjects; therefore I repeat, how that having liv'd a considerable time in the Family of Aquipaguetin, one of the chief of the Iffati, and learned their Language, I was assured, that they call the Sun by no other name than Louis, and the Moon Louis Basetché, that is the Sun of the Night.

6. Others having no Objection to make, tells us, That I relate nothing extraordinary; but in the name of Wonder, what will this People have? For if the Description of 4 or 5 Lakes, or rather Fresh-water Seas, some of which are in circuit 4, 5 and 700 Leagues, upon which we sailed with a Ship of 60 Tuns for 500 Leagues together, to the great amazement of the Savages, who had never seen the like, nor heard the noise of Cannon: If the Description of the fall of Nigarà, which is one of the most surprizing things in the World, the Water falling from above 700 Foot high: If the Discovery of 200 different Nations unknown before, and of whom no Traveller had made mention; if all these things, I say, with the Description of that delicious Country, does not seem extraordinary; I don't know what will seem such to those Gentlemen. I relate what I have seen, and
a really

The PREFACE.

really I lie under no temptation to forge any surprising Discovery to recommend my Book, the real things I have observ'd being worthy of the Consideration of all ingenious Men.

7. *Such who have not travelled, nor read many Accounts of Voyages, are very apt to blame what they don't understand, and therefore laugh when one tells them of a new discovered Country larger than Europe, for they fancy there can be no such thing; and when they talk of Canada, they talk of it as if it were no larger than a Principality in Germany; but Men of Parts and Reading are of another Opinion: I have demonstrated that Canada is about 700 Leagues long, and that the Coast of the River St. Laurence, which I have survey'd from its Mouth to the great Lake from which it springs is near 800 Leagues long, I say the same thing of the incomparable River Melchasi, which is larger and bigger than the former; and to shew the probability of the thing, I have set down in the general Map of my Discovery the Course of the River of the Amazons, in the Southern America, which is esteemed much the same, though in my Opinion the Melchasi and the River St. Laurence have a longer Course. From the Course of these Rivers, and the Extent of the Lakes, I conclude that the Continent I have discovered is larger than Europe, which might in time form one of the greatest Empires in the World.*

I intend to describe in this Volume those Countries, to treat of the nature of their Soil, and of the

The PREFACE.

the Customs, Manners, and Genius of the Inhabitants; and what sort of Trades may be settled in those Parts; therefore I thought fit to add an Abstract of the Voyage Mr. de la Salle made thither after me. The whole is divided into Chapters, according to the Method I followed in the First Part.

I design the latter end of my Book to treat of the few Conversions our Missionaries have wrought in Canada, notwithstanding their Zeal and indefatigable Labours, which ought to make us thankful towards God, who out of his infinite kindness has been pleased to bless us with his Knowledge, whilst so many thousands of our fellow Creatures are wholly left to themselves, without any Knowledge of God. I am however fully convinced, that the Savages inhabiting the Banks of the Meschassipi will be more susceptible and capable of embracing our Holy Religion, because they are not so fierce, than the Savages of the North, who are commonly Cruel and Obstinate.

To make this Volume more usefull, I have made some Reflections on Mr. de la Salle's last Voyage, because I was better acquainted with those vast Countries than Father Christian le Clercqz, Definitor of our Recollects of the Province of Artois, who has published an Account of it. I have a great esteem for that Father, and was always his Friend, and must own, that he has given a good Account of Canada and Gaspesia; but at the same time I must say, that the Account he gives of the Inhabitants of Louisiana and about the Meschassipi is not to

The PREFACE.

be rely'd upon, for he never was within 1200 Leagues of that Country. Gaspee in Accadia, and Quebec, the nearest places where he has been, being above that distance. 'Tis true, the Diary of my Discovery, of which I gave a Copy to Father Valentin le Roux, as I have observed in my first Volume, was communicated unto him, as also some Memoirs of Father Zenobe Mambre, who remained among the Illinois, while I was sent to discover the Course of the Meschafipi; and so far Father le Clercqz is right, but his Additions are not of the same Coyn. I do not wonder that he should commend so much Father Mambre, who was his own Cousin, and a very good Man besides. We travelled together as far as Fort Crevecoeur mentioned in my first Volume, where I left him among the Illinois, and have been always good Friends. After his return from America he came to see me in our Covent of Chateau Cambresis, and told me, he was going again into America with Mr. de la Salle, and that he expected he should have an Opportunity to make more exact Observations on the Meschafipi than those I had done in the Year 1680, because Mr. de la Salle designed to undertake that Voyage with such a number of Men as to fear nothing from the Insults of the Savages. But if I do not blame Father le Clercqz for the honourable mention he makes of his Relation, I think every body will condemn him for his concealing the name of the Author he has transcrib'd, and thereby attributing to himself the glory of my perilous Voyage. This
piece

The PREFACE.

piece of Injustice is common enough in this Age.

Mr. de la Salle undertook to go down the Meschasipi from the River of the Illinois in the Year 1682, that is, two Years after me, which was the source and cause of his Animosity against me, and of the rigorous Orders they obtained from the Court of France, to command me to depart the Dominions of the French King, upon pretence that I was a Subject of the King of Spain, as I have mentioned in my Preface to my first Volume. This Order, as I may presume to say so, was as contrary to the Rule of Justice, as of Politicks, for they might very well foresee that I should acquaint some person or other with my Discoveries, and cross thereby their Designs.

From these Observations it is plain, that as I was the first European who discovered the Course of the Meschasipi, and the delicious Country about it; so all others have seen nothing but what I had seen before, and have related nothing material, but what they have abstracted out of the Copy of the Journal of my Voyage which I gave to Father Valentin le Roux, and was by him communicated to Father Hyacinth le Fevre.

Mr. de la Salle had begun a Settlement in the Island of Montreal in Canada, which is 25 Leagues about, and this small Colony is so much improv'd as to be now a great and populous Village. They call it China, because while Mr. de la Salle lived there, and began the Settlement, he spoke very often of the Mines of St. Barbe, and said, that as soon as he had taken those Mines, he would go

The PREFACE.

into China and Japan without crossing the Line, and to that end, find a Passage into the South-Sea. This was the chief Subject of our Conversations, and as the Discoveries I have made cannot be far from the Pacifick Sea, I don't question but Mr. de la Salle, whose great Courage was proof against all Difficulties and Misfortunes, would have succeeded in his Design.

Those who are skill'd in Geography have long agoe suspected that Japan is contiguous to the Lands of the Northern America; and the Learned Grævius, so well known in the Commonwealth of Learning, having carefully examined our Discovery, was pleased to tell me very lately in a meeting of Vertuosi, in this City of Utrecht, That he was of my Opinion, and did not think that Japan was an Island, as it is commonly said, but that it joyns with the large Country I had discovered.

I have made use of a proof in my last Volume, Chapter 37, which I crave leave to repeat in this place, because it is a Matter of Fact: While I was amongst the Illati and Nadouessians there came an Embassy of Savages from a very remote Nation to the Westward. I was in the Cabin when my Foster Father Aquipaguetin (for he had adopted me his Son) gave them Audience, and having asked them some Questions by an Interpreter, they told me that they came from a remote Country to the Westward, that they had marched 3 Moons, (that is, Months) without meeting with any Land, that is in their meaning, the Seas; which certainly

The PREFACE.

ly could not be true, was there any such a thing as the Streight of Agnian set down in most of our Mapps.

The English and Dutch have in vain attempted to find out a Passage to China and Japan through the Frozen-Sea, but if they are pleased to send me about it, I am confident that I shall find some great River running into the Pacifick-Sea, whereby, and by means of the Meschafipi, it will be easie to trade and have Communication with China and Japan without crossing twice the Line: and losing abundance of Men.

I am so fully convinced of what I say, that I am willing to return into America to shew the Way unto others; some will blame me for this rash Undertaking, but why should I have less Zeal for the Service of God than those Pious Recollects who ventured into the Kingdom of Voxu in the Eastern part of Japan, and converted the King thereof to the Knowledge of God. That Prince was so Zealous for the true Religion, that he burnt 800 Idols, and sent an Ambassador into Europe with a Retinue of 100 Gentlemen. They embarked October 28. 1613, and arrived in Spain November 10. 1614, being conducted by Father Lewis Sotello a Recollect, who presented the said Ambassador to his Catholick Majesty, and afterwards to the Pope, whom he assured, that the King his Master and most of his Subjects had renounced the Idolatry and embraced the Christian Religion. The Reader will forgive me if I relate two or three things more for the Honour of my Order. The

The PREFACE.

Franciscans were the first who accompanied Christopher Columbus into his newly discovered Country, and had the Honour to preach first of all the Knowledge of God to the Indians. The Conquest of the Spaniards arrived to the highest pitch in the Years 1540 and 1541, and yet no other Religious Order had been employed to bring those lost Sheep into the Flock of the Lord, and they alone had converted a great part of the Subjects of the King of Japan unto the Christian Faith: So that having those great Models before me, I may say, that I long to make an end of my Discovery.

That short passage into China, would, I think, prove as advantageous to Europe, as any Discovery that has been yet made; and this is another great Encouragement for me, for what greater satisfaction can a rational Being propose to himself, than to do good to Mankind, and find out something usefull to his Country? Having therefore all Power and Patents necessary for my Mission, I am ready for that great Voyage, and I hope, through the Grace of God to be able to go through that Discovery, and thereby convince the World of the Equity of my Intentions.

The Reader may observe, that the Settlements that shall be made in that Country will absolutely be managed by Laicks, and that supposing the Franciscans should be employ'd 500 Years about the Conversion of the Natives, they should not have there an inch of Land to themselves, it being against the Laws of their Order; whereas in some other Countries, where another Order has got a
footing

The P R E F A C E.

footing, they are Masters now of the Temporal as well as the Spiritual, the best Lordships and Manners belonging to them. How they have discharged their Spiritual Function, I don't know, but sure I am, they have taken a great care of their Temporal Interest, as I intend to shew in a third Volume, which I shall publish in this City of Utrecht, if it is thought convenient.

I should have a fair opportunity to avenge myself in this Preface of certain Persons of this very Town, who have aspersed me with the utmost Malice, and kept for their own use the Money I had received from his Majesty of Great Britain, and which I advanc'd to them for my Subsistence. This is a very foul Action, and worthy to be publicly taken notice of; but my Religion teaching me to forgive my Enemies, I follow that Precept, and do heartily forgive them.]

THE

THE
CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

An Account of M. de la Salle's Undertaking to discover the River Meschasipi by the Gulph of Mexico, and his establishing a small Colony at the Bay of St. Lewis, p. 1

CHAP. II.

An Account of several Misfortunes that befell M. de la Salle at the Bay of St. Lewis, p. 9

CHAP. III.

A Continuation of the Misfortunes of M. de la Salle, with an Account of two Voyages he undertook to find out the Country of the Illinois, p. 16

CHAP. IV.

A Continuation of M. de la Salle's Voyage and Discovery, and how he was receiv'd by the Savages Cenis, p. 22

CHAP.

THE CONTENTS.

CHAP. V.

A short Description of Fort Lewis, of its advantageous Situation, and of the Fertility of the Country about it, p. 28

CHAP. VI.

An Account of M. de la Salle's second Voyage from the Bay of St. Lewis to the Illinois, p. 30

CHAP. VII.

M. de la Salle and three more are unfortunately murther'd by some of their own Party. p. 33

CHAP. VIII.

The Author's Reflections upon the Life and Death of M. de la Salle, whose Murtherers kill'd one another. p. 36

CHAP. IX.

The Cenis permit M. Cavelier the Priest, and Father Anastasius, with their Company, to continue their Journey thorough several barbarous Nations. p. 41

CHAP. X.

The Voyage of the Sieur Cavelier a Priest, and Father Anastasius a Recollect in a Pyrogue to the

The CONTENTS.

the Illinois, and several Observations concerning their Return. p. 46

CHAP. XI.

Reflections of the Author on the Voyage to China; on the Belief of most of the Savages of North America concerning the Creation of the World, and the Immortality of the Soul, p. 52

CHAP. XII.

Of the most proper means to convert the Savages; who those are to whom the Missionaries ought to refuse or administer Baptism, p. 60

CHAP. XIII.

The Barbarians of the Northern America don't acknowledge a God. Of the pretended Souls of Terrestrial Animals, p. 65

CHAP. XIV.

Of the great difficulties in converting the Savages: of the Prayers they get by Rote, and of Martyrdom, p. 69

CHAP. XV.

The manner of Feasting among the Savages, p. 71

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XVI.

*Of the manner of adopting the Europeans amongst
the Savages,* p. 74

CHAP. XVII.

*Of the Marriages of the Savages in North Ame-
rica,* p. 77

CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the Remedies which the Savages administer to
the Sick: they have Mountebanks among them;
their Opinion of Infant-Baptism when the Author
liv'd there,* p. 82

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Constitution or Temper of the Savages. p. 85

CHAP. XX.

*Description of the Savages that gonaked, and those
that do not,* p. 88

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Games, and Sports of the Savages, p. 91

CHAP. XXII.

*The manner of making War among the Savages,
they*

The CONTENTS.

they are very much given to Revenge, p. 94

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Cruelty of the Savages in general, and particularly of the Iroquois, p. 98

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the Policy of the Savage Iroquois, p. 103

CHAP. XXV.

Of the manner of the Savages hunting of all sorts of wild Beasts, and of the admirable Industry of the Castors or Beavers, p. 104

CHAP. XXVI.

Of their manner of fishing, p. 109

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Utensils of the Savages in their Cabbins, and of their extraordinary manner they strike Fire, p. 112

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the manner of their interring their dead ; of the Festival of the dead, with some Reflections concerning the Immortality of the Soul, p. 115

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Superstitions of the Savages, and of the ridiculous things they believe, p. 119

CHAP. XXX.

Of the Obstacles that are found in the Conversion of the Savages, p. 123

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the barbarous and uncivil Manners of the Savages, p. 128

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the great Indifferency of the humours of the Savages, p. 123

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the Beauty and Fertility of the Country of the Savages, that powerfull Colonies may be easily planted on the North and South, p. 134

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Method of the Savages in their Councils, against their Enemies, and their Cruelty against the Europeans, and how a stop may be put to them, p. 142

CHAP.

The CONTENTS.

CHAP. XXXV.

*Of the proper Method to establish good Colonies :
Thoughts and Opinion of the Savages concerning
Heaven and Earth,* p. 148

CHAP. XXXVI.

*The History of the Irruption which the English
made into Canada in the year 1628; the taking
of Quebec the Metropolis of Canada in 1629,
the most honourable Treatment they gave the
Recollects,* p. 161

CHAP. XXXVII.

*How the Religious of St. Francis in their Missions
through the habitable World have been before
the Jesuits,* p. 195

CHAP. XXXVIII.

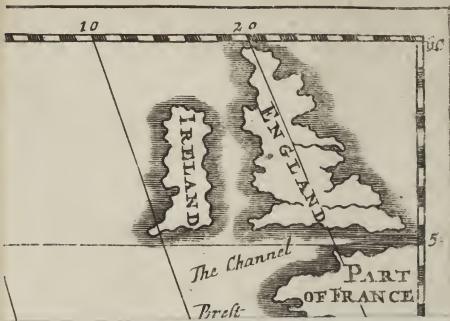
*The Sentiments that a Missionary ought to have of
the little Progress they find in their Labours,* p. 181

Continuation page









A
V O Y A G E
 INTO A
 Newly Discover'd Country
 Larger than
E U R O P E,
 Situate between the
Frozen Sea and New Mexico.

C H A P. I.

An Account of M. de la Salle's Undertaking to discover the River Meschasipi by the Gulph of Mexico, and his establishing a small Colony at the Bay of St. Lewis.

R Eason ought to rule Men in all cases, and whenever they think themselves wrong'd by others, they ought, as Christians, to impute it rather to their Pre-occupation or Prejudices, than to their Malice; and this Maxim I propose to my self as my rule, as the Readers will observe in the following Narration.

I liv'd near three Years together as Missionary with Mr. Robert Cavelier de la Salle at Fort Katarakouy or Frontenac, whereof he was Governor and Proprietor; and during that time, we read together the Voy-
 B ages

ages of *John Pontius de Leon*, *Pamphilio Narvaez*, *Christopher Columbus*, *Ferdinand Soto*, and several other Travellers, the better to fit and prepare our selves for the great Discovery we intended to make. *M. de la Salles* was a fit Man for the greatest Undertakings, and may be justly rank'd amongst the most famous Travellers that ever were, as it will appear to whomsoever will consider that he spent his own Estate about the greatest, most important, and most perillous Discovery that has been yet made; which he undertook with a handfull of Men, whom he preserv'd from the numerous Nations he discover'd, amongst whom all other Travellers, except *Columbus*, perish'd without reaping any advantage from their Enterprizes, which however cost them above 100000 Men: so that upon the whole, I may boldly conclude, that no body, before *M. de la Salle* and I, undertook so dangerous an Expedition with so few Men.

Our design was to endeavour to find out, if possible, a Passage from the Northern to the South Sea without crossing the Line, which a great many have hitherto sought in vain. The River *Meschasipi* does not indeed run that way, but however *M. de la Salle* was in hopes to discover by the means of the *Meschasipi*, some other River running into the South Sea, and knowing his great Courage and Ability, I don't question but he would have succeeded, had God been pleased to preserve his Life. As that unfortunate Gentleman was about it, he was murther'd; and if the divine Providence has spar'd me, 'tis it seems, that I may acquaint the World with a short way to go to *China* and *Japan*, which I hope may be done by means of my Discoveries: Therefore if his Majesty of *Great Britain*, or the States General are willing to send any body to find out that so much talk'd of Passage, and that I may accompany them, I am morally sure that by the Grace of God, we shall succeed before the end of this Age.

The Country of the *Illinois*, and other neighbouring Nations, being the Center of our Discovery, *M. de la Salles* design'd to settle there a Colony; and therefore any Prince or State, who will pursue so generous a Design, must follow the same method, and build Forts from Place to Place, to have an uninterrupted Communication, and keep in awe the Inhabitants of these vast Countries. The first thing *M. de la Salle* did in order thereto, was to endeavour to find out by Sea the Mouth of the *Meschasipi*, which discharges it self into the Gulph of *Mexico*, as it has been said in my first Volume, to settle there a Colony, and build a good Fort to be as his Magazine, and serve as a retreat both by Sea and Land in case of any mishap. He made his Proposals to the *French King's Council*; which were perus'd and approv'd by *Monsieur de Seignelay* Secretary and Minister of State, and Intendant General of the Commerce and Navigation of *France*, his most Christian Majesty approved likewise his Design, gave him all necessary Authority, and supply'd him with Ships, Men and Money.

M. de la Salle having obtain'd what he desir'd from the King, thought of chusing able Missionaries to convert those barbarous and wild Nations unto the Christian Religion, and resolv'd to use two different Orders; but as this choice was a nice and difficult thing, he apply'd himself to *Monsieur Tronson* Superiour of the *Seminary* of *St. Sulpicius* at *Paris*, who appointed three Men of great Vertue, Zeal and Capacity to attend *M. de la Salle* as Missionaries; these were *M. Cavelier* Brother to *M. de la Salles*, *M. Chefdeville* a Relation of his, and *M. Majulle*, Priests in the said *Seminary*.

I had attended *M. de la Salle* near twelve Years in the Discovery of *Louisiana*, and Father *Zenobe*, and *Gabriel de la Ribourde* and my self had likewise accompanied him into the Country of the *Illinois*, where *Gabriel* was murdered by the Savages, therefore

M. de la Salle resolved to have some *Recolleets* to endeavour to establish the Knowledge of God in those vast Countries, and to that end applied himself to Father *Hyacinth le Fevre*, who was then for a second time *Provincial Commissary* of the Province of *St. Denys* in France, who granted him the Missionaries he demanded, viz. Father *Zenobe Mambré* of *Bapaume* as Superiour, Father *Maxime le Clerc* of *Lille* in *Flanders*, *Anastase Douay* of *Quesnoy* in *Hainault*, and *Denys Morquet* of *Arras*, all *Recolleets* of the Province of *St. Anthony* in *Artois*. The first, as I have said, had been as far as the *Illinois* with *M. de la Salle*, and I toward the latter end of the Year 1679. And the beginning of the following, and two Years after, viz. 1682 he went with *M. de la Salle* to the Mouth of the *Meschasipi* in the Gulph of *Mexico*, about two Years after my Discovery. The second Father had been five Years Missionary in *Canada*, and had performed the Functions of his Ministry with great Diligence and much Edification, especially in the Mission of the *Seven Islands* and *Anticosti*. Father *Douay*, who is now Vicar of the *Recolleets* of *Cambrai*, had never been in *America*, no more than Father *Denys*, who fell so sick three days after he went on board, that he was forced to go a-shore and return into his Province.

The *Provincial* of the Order acquainted with this Mission the Congregation *de propaganda fide*, to obtain the Power and Authority necessary for that Enterprize, who sent a Decree according to the usual Form; and Pope *Innocent XI.* added a Brief thereunto, containing several Powers and Commissions in 36 Articles, that are usually granted to Missionaries going into remote Countries, where they cannot resort certain Cases to Bishops. The Bishop of *Quebec* oppos'd it with all his Interest, but Cardinal *d'Estrees* shew'd, that his Opposition was unreasonable, seeing the Country where these Missionaries were to preach the Gospel

Gospel, was 1000 Leagues distant from *Quebec*.

The advantages they expected in *France* from our Discovery were so great, that several young Gentlemen offer'd themselves to accompany M. *de la Salle* as Volunteers, tho' they knew him only by the character I had given of him in my Description of *Louisiana*, which I publish'd after my return into *France*. This also gain'd him the esteem of Monsieur *Seignelay*, which was very advantageous to him. That Minister sent for me several times to discourse with him about the circumstances of our Discovery, which I told him sincerely, concealing only my Discovery of the Course of the *Meschasipi* from the River of the *Illinois* to the Gulph of *Mexico*, out of pure kindness for M. *de la Salle*, who thereby recommended himself to the favour of the late Prince of *Conti* and Monsieur *Seignelay*.

All things being thus favourably disposed, M. *de la Salle* chose twelve Gentlemen, who appear'd to him vigorous, and like to bear the Fatigues of that Voyage, and amongst them, he took two of his own Nephews, viz. Mr. *Moranger* and Mr. *Cavelier*, tho' this last was but fourteen Years of Age. One *Martin*, Son to a rich Merchant of *Rochel*, went also with him. In the mean time, they fitted out in that Harbour his small Fleet, which consisted of four Ships, viz. the *Toby*, one of the King's Men of War; the *Handsom*, a small Frigate; a Fly-Boat, call'd *l'Aimable*, and a Ketch, call'd *St. Francis*. The Man of War was commanded by Monsieur *de Beaujeu*, a Gentleman of *Normandy*, with whom I have had several Conversations since his return, at *Dunkirk*. This Officer is known by his great Services and long Experience, as well as his Lieutenant, the Chevalier *de Here*, who is now Captain of a Man of War. The Ensign was called *de Hamel*, a Gentleman of *Bretaigny*, of a strong and vigorous Constitution. It were to be wished that

the Crew of the Ships, as well as the Soldiers, had answered the Character of the Officers; but while *M. de la Salle* was at Court, those whom he employed to make his Levies, list'd about 150 poor Beggars, deformed, lame, and unfit for the hard Services they were design'd for: He had also desir'd them to engage Men of several Professions, as Blacksmiths, Carpenters, Joyners, Masons, and the like; but when he came to try them, he found they were dull and ignorant Creatures, so that he was forced to find out new Soldiers and Workmen, which took up much of his time. About ten Families of the Neighbourhood of *Rochel* offer'd themselves to go with him to settle a Colony, which he accepted, and advanc'd them Money to buy what was thought most necessary for their Establishment.

His Preparations being finished, the Fleet sail'd July 24, 1684 from *Rochel*, but a violent Storm oblig'd them to come back, and they continued in the Road till August 5, that they sail'd for *St Domingo*. They met with another Storm on the 14 of September, which separated the Fleet; the Fly-boat remain'd alone with the Frigate, and arriv'd together at *Petit-Guaves*, where they found the *Toby*, and heard that the *St. Francis*, on board which were their Merchandizes, was arriv'd at *Port de Paix*. The bad Weather being over, the Ketch sail'd for *Petit-Guaves*, the Rendezvous of the Fleet, but was unhappily taken in her way by the Spanish Cruisers.

I remember that in our Conversations at *Fort Frontenac*, *M. de la Salle* told me several times, that he would die satisfied and contented, could he but make himself Master of the Mine of *St. Barbe* in *New Mexico*; I gave him no answer at first, but seeing that he repeated it too often, tho' I knew I was a Subject of the King of *Spain*, I could not forbear to express my Affection for my lawfull Sovereign, and told him, that tho' I

was

was with him I had not forgot my Native Country concluding my answer with these words, *Vincit amor Patriæ*. This was perhaps the first cause of all the hardships and injustices I have suffer'd since that time, and which I might therefore have avoided, had I been capable of dissembling, as the Generality of Mankind do. But to return to M. *la Salles*, the loss of the Ketch was of a fatal consequence to him, not so much for the value of the Merchandizes, but because the *Spaniards* had notice of his designs against their Mines.

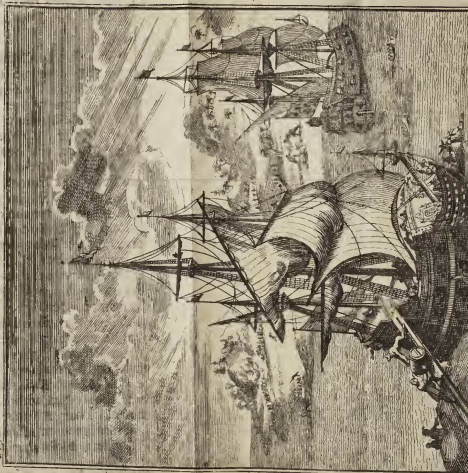
M. *la Salles* was hard'y recover'd of a dangerous Distemper, when those unhappy Tydings were brought to him, and was like to relapse upon that occasion; but the rest of his company being not as courageous as he, were quite dispirited, and neglected to keep the Soldiers under a severe Discipline, who giving up themselves to the Lewdness and Dissoluteness, so common in those Islands, contracted such Distempers that a great many died before they left *Petit-Guaves*, and the other continued sickly all their Life. As soon as M. *la Salles* was able to walk abroad, he made his Preparations for leaving the Island, and by the assistance of Monsieur *de St. Laurence* Governour General of the *French* Islands, and Monsieur *Begon*, Intendent of the same; he put his Fleet in a condition to sail from thence, *November 25, 1684*, having taken on board all sorts of Refreshments, a great quantity of *Indian* Corn, and of all sorts of tame Beasts to stock the new Country they were going to inhabit.

They sail'd along the Islands of *Caimano*, and touch'd at the Island of *Peace* for fresh Water, and from thence sail'd to *St. Anthony* in the Island of *Cuba*, where they anchor'd. The Sweetness and Situation of that place invited them to land, and they found a good Store of Refreshments, and even some Wine which the *Spaniards* had left in that place, having run away with too great a Precipitation. They continued there two

days, and then sail'd, steering towards the Gulph of Mexico.

M. de la Salle was a very understanding Man, and hardly to be impos'd upon, yet he was deceiv'd by some Men of *St. Domingo*, and it was by their advice that he steer'd a wrong Course. They had told him that the Northern Winds were very dangerous at the entrance of the Gulph, and this fear oblig'd him to return thence upon the Coast of *Cuba*; but at last he overcame all Difficulties, and got into the Gulph, *January 1. 1685.* and descry'd a Fortnight after the Coast of *Florida*, where they were surpriz'd by a strong Wind, which parted the Fleet, the *Toby* keeping off from the Coast, and the Frigat and the Fly-boat as near the Land as possible: they had told him also, that the Current of the Gulph runs with a great Rapidity towards the Channel of *Bahama*, but he found himself mistaken, and lost thereby his Course, for thinking he was too far to the North, he sail'd by the Bay of *Spirito Santo*, and overshot the Mouth of the *Meschasipi*. They were undeceiv'd by the Coast of the Gulph, which bends in that place to the Southward, and having taken the Elevation of the Pole, they found they were within 50 Leagues of the *Meschasipi*. The three Ships joyned again about the middle of *February* in the Bay *di Spirito Santo*, where it was agreed to alter their Course; and about 10 Leagues off they found a large Bay, which they called *St. Lewis*. The Provisions growing scarce, the Soldiers were sent a-shore, and M. de la Salle sounded the Bay, which he found deep, and the bottom a good Anchorage, so that the Frigat got in happily on the 18th. The Channel is very deep, but somewhat narrow, and there is a Sand at the Mouth of it: M. de la Salle took that Bay for the right Arm of the *Meschasipi*, and indeed there was much likelihood of it.





C H A P. II.

An Account of several Misfortunes that befell M. de la Salle at the Bay of St. Lewis.

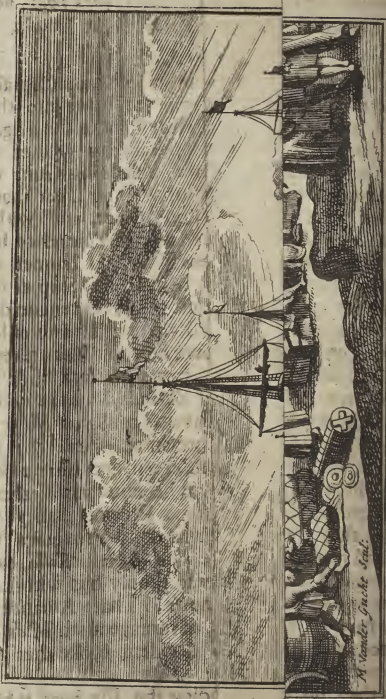


The Unfortunate adventures of Mons^r de la Salle.

M. LaSalle had expressly forbid the Captain of the Fly-boat to attempt to come into the Bay, without having on board the Pilot of the Frigate, who was an experienc'd Man; and for a greater security he had commanded him to unlade his Guns into the Pinnace to make his Ship the lighter; yet that Brute neglected those Orders and Advice, and without taking any notice of the Marks or Poles they had plac'd on the Sands to shew him the Channel, and the Advice of the Seamen, he sail'd his Ship at random, and ran her against a Sand where she remain'd: M. de la Salle was a-shore, and fearing the fate of his Ship, was going on board to save her, but was prevented by about 120 Savages who came to attack him: He put his Men in a posture of defence, but the noise alone of the Drums put the Savages to flight: M. de la Salle follow'd them and presented them the Calumet of Peace, which they accepted, and came along with him to his Camp, where he entertain'd them, and sent them back with some Presents; they were so pleas'd, that they brought some Provisions the next day, and made Alliance with M. de la Salle, whereby they engag'd themselves to supply him with some Pyrogues or wooden Canou's: That Alliance would likely have prov'd very advantageousto M. de la Salle, had not an unforeseen Accident broke that good Intelligence.

As they were unlading the Fly-boat which had struck upon the Sand to endeavour to get her off, a Pack of Blankets fell into the Sea, which the Waves drove

P. 19.



M. Vander Guchte Seal.

The unfortunate adventures of Monsieur de la Salle.

C H A P. II.

An Account of several Misfortunes that befell M. de la Salle at the Bay of St. Lewis.

M. *LaSalle* had expressly forbid the Captain of the Fly-boat to attempt to come into the Bay, without having on board the Pilot of the Frigate, who was an experienc'd Man; and for a greater security he had commanded him to unlade his Guns into the Pinnacle to make his Ship the lighter; yet that Brute neglected those Orders and Advice, and without taking any notice of the Marks or Poles they had plac'd on the Sands to shew him the Channel, and the Advice of the Seamen, he sail'd his Ship at random, and ran her against a Sand where she remain'd: *M. de la Salle* was a-shore, and fearing the fate of his Ship, was going on board to save her, but was prevented by about 120 Savages who came to attack him: He put his Men in a posture of defence, but the noise alone of the Drums put the Savages to flight: *M. de la Salle* follow'd them and presented them the Calumet of Peace, which they accepted, and came along with him to his Camp, where he entertain'd them, and sent them back with some Presents; they were so pleas'd, that they brought some Provisions the next day, and made Alliance with *M. de la Salle*, whereby they engag'd themselves to supply him with some Pyroques or wooden Canou's: That Alliance would likely have prov'd very advantageousto *M. de la Salle*, had not an unforeseen Accident broke that good Intelligence.

As they were unlading the Fly-boat which had struck upon the Sand to endeavour to get her off, a Pack of Blankets fell into the Sea, which the Waves drove

drove upon the shore: The Savages found it, and *M. de la Salle* having notice thereof, sent to demand it of them in a very civil manner. They shew'd some Reluctancy, whereupon the Officer instead of acting the prudent part, threatned to kill them, unless they restor'd it immediately. They were so frighted and incens'd against them, that they resolv'd to be aveng'd of that Affront; and in order thereto, got together in the Night time between the 6 and 7 of *March*, and march'd to surprize the *French* Camp. They advanc'd as near as they would, the Sentry being asleep, and made a discharge of their Arrows which killed 4 Gentlemen Officers and Volunteers, and wounded *M. Moranger* and another Volunteer. The *French* ran to their Arms, and fired upon the Savages, who run away tho' none was wounded: they found the next day two of *M. de la Salle's* Men whom they murdered as they were sleeping.

In the mean time they unladed the Fly-boat, which was too far sunk to be got off, and saved most of the Goods, and as they were endeavouring to save the rest, she was dashed in Pieces by the violence of the Wind and Waves, and several Men were in great danger of being drowned, but by the Grace of God all escap'd.

Monfieur Beaujeu seeing all the Goods and Merchandizes landed, and a Fort almost finished, sailed the 12th of *March* for *France*, and *M. de la Salle* having fortified his Magazine or Fort, which they call *Hanagar*, left 100 men under the Command of his Nephew *M. Moranger*, for the defence of it; and with therest, being 50, and 3 Missionaries, viz. *M. Cavelier*, and *Father Zenobe* and *Maxime*, advanced into the Country following the Bay, in hopes to find the *Mescha-sipi*. The Captain of the Frigat was ordered to sound at the same time the Channel, and bring the Ship as high as he could with safety, which he did, and

and brought his Ship to an Anchor at a place which was call'd *Hurier*, from the name of the Officer who was left at that place for the Security of that Port, which was absolutely necessary to maintain the Communication between the first Habitation, and another *M. de la Salle* made on the 2d of *April* at the bottom of the Bay upon the Banks of a fine River, which was called the River of the *Cows*, because of the vast number of those Beasts that were discover'd in those parts. The Savages came to attack our Men, but were so warmly receiv'd, that they retir'd without doing the *French* any harm.

On the 21st, being *Easter-Eve*, *M. de la Salle* return'd to the first Camp, and the next day was spent in Devotions; but the 23^d they began to carry all the Effects from the two Forts, to the Settlement *M. de la Salles* had made upon the River above-mention'd, and when they had made an end of it, they razed the said Forts. They had sown some Pulse and Corn, but either the Soil was not good, or else the Seed was spoil'd by Salt Water, for it did not rise at all. *M. de la Salle* might have remembred what I had formerly told him in our Voyage to the *Illinois*, that Corn and other Seeds which we bring from *Europe*, must either be in their Ears or Hulls, for otherwise they lose their Vertue at Sea, and cannot grow in a Soil that was never cultivated before.

They built a Fort in a very advantageous Post, with so much diligence, that it was in a few days in a good Posture of Defence, being defended by 12 Pieces of Cannon. They made a great Magazine underground to preserve their Goods and Provision from Fire. It is to be observed that the Forts in *America*, I mean such as I speak of now, require not so much Art and Labour, as in *Europe*, since the Savages have no Artillery to attack them. They are so afraid of Fire-Arms, that none of those Nations ever durst attack these

these mean Fortifications, except the *Iroquois*, who attempted to force the *French* in their Intrenchments in the Island of *Orleans*, now called *St. Lawrence* near *Quebec*. The *French* had fortified themselves with Palisadoes, which the *Iroquois* set on Fire, and to cover themselves against the *French* in their Approach, every one of them carry'd before him a thick Plank or board Musket-proof, and thereby forced the *French* to leave their Entrenchments. They use also another Strategy against our Forts, unless they are defended by some Pieces of Cannon to keep them off; they tye to their Arrows a lighted Match, and then shoot them in such manner, as to make them fall on the Top or Roof of the Forts, which is made of Planks, and thereby set them on Fire. *M. de la Salle*, who knew all their Artifices, took also all imaginable Precautions to disappoint them, which he did by covering the Roof with green Turf.

In the mean time, his men grew so sickly, that a great many died in a few days, notwithstanding they were carefully look'd after, and supplied with proper Remedies, and besides this misfortune, he was forc'd to make an open War against the Savages. On the 9th of *August* three of his men were gone a shooting, there being abundance of Game in those Parts. The noise of their Guns gave notice of their Approach to the Savages, who immediately got together in great numbers and surrounded the three *Europeans*, who put themselves in a readiness to fight, and killed with the first shot the General of the Savages. This accident terrified them so much, that they ran away, notwithstanding the Disproportion in number. They continued lurking about the Fort, and kill'd a *French* man who had advanc'd too far into the Woods.

M. de la Salle seeing no way to bring them to an Alliance, resolved to make War upon them to oblige them to come to Peace, and supply him with their

Progues or Wooden Canou's which he wanted. Therefore set out from his Fort on the 13th of October, with 60 stout Men to look for the Savages, having provided them with a kind of Breast-piece of Wood, to cover them against the Arrows of the Savages. He was not far advanced when he found the Savages incamped, with whom he had several Skirmishes, killing and wounding a great many, and returned with many Prisoners, especially young Children; amongst whom was a Girl of about four Years of Age, which was Christened, and died some Days after.

While *M. de la Salle* was building and perfecting his Fort, those Families he had brought to begin a Colony, grubb'd up the Land, and sowed several sorts of Corn and Pulse, which they had brought in their Land and Hulls, which succeeded very well. They had some Cannons, and crossed over to the other side of the Bay, where they found a fine River, and a prodigious Number of wild Oxen and Turkeys. The tame Beasts they had brought from *St. Domingo*, Cows, Hogs, and Fowls multiplied very much; and in short the small Colony began to thrive, since the War had removed the Savages from their Habitations, and 'tis likely that *M. de la Salle* would have succeeded, had not a new Misfortune worse than all the former, disappointed his Noble Designs.

M. de la Salle had often entertain'd me with the unnumbered Cruelties exercised by the *Spaniards* in *New Mexico*, and *Peru*, against the Inhabitants of those Empires, whom they destroyed as much as ever they could, preserving only their Children to make a People. He exclaimed against that Cruelty of the *Spaniards*, as unworthy of Men of Honour, and contrary to the Doctrine of the Christian Religion. I showed them my self; but yet I offered now and then some Reasons to excuse them, as the Necessities they

they found themselves under of exterminating those Nations, or perishing themselves, and forsaking their Conquest; for whenever they thought themselves safe, they were suddenly invaded by great Armies and therefore in a perpetual Danger. *M. de la Salle* experienced himself that Necessity in *Canada*, for the Savages do not understand the Doctrine of forgiving or forgetting Injuries; and notwithstanding all Treaties of Peace, they will revenge themselves one time or other. The French of *Canada* have done all that is possible, humanly speaking, to gain the Friendship of the *Iroquois*, yet they have not been able to heal the first Breach that happened between them, which has been the Source of many Wars, which lasts at this very time; whereas that barbarous People have never had any quarrel with the Dutch inhabiting *New York*, because these have always used them very kindly dissembling some insignificant Injuries, or accepting their satisfaction. *M. de la Salle* knew better than any Body the Temper of the Savages, and the Method how to gain them; therefore I wonder that he would make Wars upon the Neighbours of his new Colony for this was almost an infallible way to ruine it, and cut off the hope of the Conversion of those ignorant Nations. From these observations we may conclude that Meekness and Charity so much recommended in the Gospel, are two Vertues absolutely necessary for the establishment of Colonies in those new Countries for otherwise the new Inhabitants must destroy the Ancient, or be destroyed by them, either of which is a cruel Necessity unworthy of a Christian. *M. de la Salle* had ordered the Captain of the Frigate to found the Bay, and to suffer none of his Men to lie a-shoar however the Captain himself, and six of his best Men being charmed with the Sweetness of the Country went a-shoar, and leaving their Canoes upon the *Ouzé* with their Arms, went into a Meadow where the

they fell asleep, and were murdered by the Savages, who broke their Arms and Canou. This sad Accident put the Colony in a dreadful Consternation. M. de la Salle having buried his Men, resolv'd to travel along the Coast to find out the Mouth of the *Meschasipi*, and having left the Inhabitants and Soldiers who were to remain in the Fort, set out with 20 Men, and M. Cavelier his Brother.

This Bay of *St. Lewis* is formed by several Rivers, and lies in the Latitude of 27 Degrees 45 Minutes. None of these Rivers was broad and deep enough to be an Arm of the *Meschasipi*, but M. de la Salle thought they might be Branches of one of the Arms of that River, therefore he resolved to follow one of them, which cost him a world of Trouble, for he found several other Rivers running into that, too deep to be loaded, which they crossed, laying together several Branches of Trees, of which they made use instead of Boats. They met with several Nations of Savages, and were forced to entrench themselves every Night, for fear of being surpris'd. The continual Rains that fell during his Voyage, made the ways very bad, and swell'd several small Rivulets, which increased his Trouble. At last, on the 13th of *February*, he thought to have found his so much wish'd for River; and having fortified a Post on its Bank, and left part of his Men for its security; he advanced farther into the Country, which appeared unto him the most delicious and fertile that ever he saw. He visited several Nations who received him with much Humanity, and returned to his Fort on the 31st of *March*, charmed with his Discovery.

The satisfaction he expressed upon this account can hardly be expressed, but the Grief which the loss of his Frigate caused him, over-ballanc'd it. This was the only Ship left unto him, with which he intended to sail in few Days for *St. Domingo*, to bring

bring a new Supply of Men and Goods to carry on his Design; but it ran unfortunately aground through the Negligence of the Pilot, and was dash'd in pieces. All the Men were drowned except the *Sieur Chefeville* one of the Missionaries, the Captain and 4 Seamen; the Goods, Linen, and Cloath of the Colony, with the Provisions and Tools were absolutely lost. *M. de la Salle* was a Man of an extraordinary Courage, and unparallell'd Constancy; yet 'tis likely he would have sunk under this Misfortune, had not God assisted him in an extraordinary manner.

CHAP. III.

A Continuation of the Misfortunes of M. de la Salle, with an Account of two Voyages he undertook to find out the Country of the Illinois.

Those who have conversed with Accounts of new Discoveries, are convinced that those who take upon them so difficult a Task, are obliged to do a thousand things, which prove useless and unnecessary; for looking for the right way, and no body being there to shew it unto them, 'tis no wonder if they mistake it. And as to the Misfortunes that befell the worthy Gentleman I speak of, it is nothing but what he, or any body else that shall go about the like Enterprize, must expect with a very inconsiderable Difference. The pious Design he was upon, in relation to the Conversion of those ignorant Nations, deserved it seems a better Fate; but as God's ways are not our ways, we must submit to Divine Providence, without troubling our selves about a vain inquiry into the Secrets of God Almighty. *M. de la Salle* who was a good Christian, knew admirably well the Practice of

of this Doctrine, and without being dejected by the Misfortunes already mention'd, he resolv'd to go on with his Discovery.

As I am more concern'd than any body else to know whether *M de la Salle* had really discover'd the *Meschasipi*, when he return'd into *Canada* over land, because I am the first *European* that ever travell'd upon that River, I have carefully perus'd all the printed Accounts of his Voyage, as also private Memoirs, but after all, I found that the account published by Father *Anastase* is the most exact, and may be depended upon.

M. de la Salle seeing all his Affairs ruin'd by the loss of his Ships, and having no way to return into *Europe* but by *Canada*, resolv'd upon so dangerous a Journey, and took 20 men along with him, with one Savage call'd *Nikana*, that is to say, Companion of the Nation of *Choumon*. This man had follow'd him into *France*, and had given such proofs of his Affection to his Master on several nice occasions, that he relied more upon him than upon any *European*. *M Carvelier*, *M. Moranger*, and Father *Anastase* desir'd likewise to accompany him. They took four Pound of Powder, Shot in Proportion, two Axes, two Dozen of Knives, several Pound of *Rassade* or Glass Beads, and two Kettles to boil their Meat, contenting himself with these Provisions, in hopes to find out easily the *Illinois* and return in a short time. Having assisted at the divine Service in the Chapel of the Fort to implore God's Mercy and Protection, he set out the 22d of April, 1686 directing his March to the North East, for the *Meschasipi* running directly from the North to the South, into the Gulph of *Mexico*, the Country of the *Illinois* is situated to the N. E. of the place where *M. de la Salle* left.

'Tis likely that they wanted Pyrogues and Canoes, since Father *Anastase* makes no mention of any,

and 'tis likely that *M. de la Salle* was not sure that he had found out the Mouth of the *Meschasipi*, for then he might have easily met with the *Illinois* by means of that River, knowing that the River of the *Illinois* runs into the *Meschasipi*.

After three days March, they discover'd the finest Champaign Country in the World, and were met by a great many men on Horse-back, with Boots, Spurs and Saddles. This Nation invited them to come to their Habitations, but *M. de la Salle* having taken some Informations from them concerning his way, thank'd them for their kindness, and would not accept of their Offers. The Reader may judge, that all this was transacted by signs, for they did not understand one another. The Equipage of the Nation sheweth they had Commerce with the *Spaniards*. Our men having continued their March all the day long, incamp'd upon a rising ground, which they fortified by cutting down some Trees to avoid any Surprize.

Having march'd two days through vast Meadows, they came upon the Banks of a River which they called *Robeck*, where they found such numbers of wild Oxen, call'd by the *Spaniards* *Cibola*, that the least Drove consisted of about 400: They killed ten of them, and rested two or three days to broil the Meat for the rest of their Voyage.

Within a League and a half from the *Robeck* they met with another River broader and deeper than the *Seine* before *Paris*, its Banks being adorn'd with great Trees, so well dispos'd by Nature, that they seem as many Walks artificially planted. One side of the River is cover'd with Woods, and the other is a continued Meadow. They were oblig'd to cut Branches of Trees and tie them together to cross it over. They call'd it the *Wicked*. The Country between this *Wicked* River and another they met few days after, is full of Trees, bearing all sorts of Fruit,
and

and especially of Mulberry-trees, but the Vines are so common, that the whole seems a Vineyard, and the highest Trees are cover'd with them. They call'd the last River *Hiens*, because one of them, a German by Birth, of the Country of *Wirtemberg*, stuck so fast in the Mud, that they had much ado to get him off.

The Raft or floating-boat of Branches, which they commonly us'd to cross the Rivers, taking up much of their time, and this River being narrow, *M. de la Salle* caus'd one of his men to swim over with an Ax, to fell down a Tree, while they fell another on their side, and these two Trees meeting together, made a kind of Bridge; this way was both safer and easier, and therefore they always made use of it, whenever the narrowness of the River would permit it.

M. de la Salle alter'd here his course, marching directly to the Eastward. As he told no body the reasons of it, it is impossible to know what was his motive; that Man was secret to a fault, and likely would have prosper'd better, had he been somewhat more communicative. After some days March through a pleasant Country, they found another, which, according to their account, may be call'd the Paradise of the World, inhabited by a numerous Nation, who receiv'd them with all imaginable marks of Friendship and Kindness; their Women embrac'd them chearfully, and caus'd them to sit upon some fine Mats near their Captains, who presented them their Calumet of Peace, adorn'd with Feathers of several Colours, and wherein they desir'd them to smook. They presented them afterwards with a Dish of *Sagamittee*, which is a kind of Pap made with the Root of a Shrub call'd *Tique* or *Toquo*, which looks like a Briar without Thorns: Its Root is very big, and having wash'd it and dry'd it by the Sun, they pound it in a Mortar. This *Sagamittee* tasted pretty well. These ho-

nest Savages presented them with some Skins of wild Oxen finely drest and good for Shooes, which are very necessary in that Country, because of some sharp cutting Herbs. M. de la Salle presented them, in return of their kindness, some Glass Beads of black Colour, which is much valu'd amongst them, they continued some days amongst that Nation, which time M. de la Salle improv'd to give them some Idea of the Grandeur and Power of the King his Master, whom he represented higher and greater than the Sun. These People understood something of it by his Signs, and were struck with a wonderfull Admiration. M. Cavelier and Father *Anastase* endeavour'd also to give them some Notions of God, but with what success no body can tell.

That Nation is call'd *Biskatronge*, but the Europeans call'd them the *Weeping*, and their River the River of *Tears*, because when they arriv'd there, those Savages wept for about a quarter of an Hour. They receive so all Strangers, whom they think to come from remote Countries, because this puts them in mind of their deceas'd Relations whom they think upon a long Journey, and whose return they expect. That honest People gave M. de la Salle some Guides, and supply'd his men with whatever they wanted, and cross'd them over their River in their Pyrogues.

They pass'd three or four other Rivers in three days time, and met with no considerable adventure, but on the fourth day as they were near a Village, *Nikana* the Savage, who attended M. de la Salle, shot a wild Goat, which frighted so much the Inhabitants of that Village, that they ran away. M. de la Salle put his men in a readiness to fight, and enter'd the said Village, which consisted of above 300 Cabbins. They march'd to the most considerable, wherein they found the Wife of the chief of the Savages, who had been forc'd to stay alone because of her great Age. M. de la
Salle

Salle made the most significant Signs he could think on to let her know that he was a Friend, which being perceiv'd by her three Sons, who advanc'd as near as they could without being discover'd, to observe what our men would do, they brought back their men, and offer'd *M. de la Salle* their *Calumet* of Peace, which being accepted, the day was concluded with the Dana of the *Calumet* and other Demonstrations of Joy.

However *M. de la Salle* did not think fit to trust himself in their hands, and therefore refused to lie in their Cabbins, and went to encamp among some Canes or great Reeds hard by, through which it was impossible to come without making a great noise. This was a Masterpiece of Prudence, for otherwise they might have been murther'd; for a Band of Savages got together to surprize them: The rattling noise of the Canes having given notice of their Approach to *M. de la Salle*, he awaked his men, and spoke in so bold a Tone to the Savages that they retir'd. They left that place the next day, parting from them very civilly, and having march'd six Leagues further, they were met by another Band of Savages, who had Ears of Indian Corn in their Hands; they embrac'd *M. de la Salle* according to their way, and invited him by Signs to go to their Village, which he consented to. They made him understand, that there was a Nation to the Westward who destroyed all other men; and by the Description they made, he judg'd they meant the Spaniards of *New Mexico*, with whom this Nation was at War. The Village having notice of the Arrival of *M. de la Salle*, all flock'd about them, expressing their joy by Signs and other Postures, and making him understand that he would oblige them to remain with them to assist them against their Enemies: *M. de la Salle* would not agree to that, but promis'd to return in a short time, with a greater number of men;

and after having made them some Presents and receiv'd other things they gave them, he left that place, the Savages carrying him and all his men over their River in their Pyrogues. This Nation is called *Kirononas*.

They continued their March to the Eastward through fine Meadows, and three days after, having left the *Kirononas*, *Nikana* their Savage cry'd out of a sudden that he was a dead man, having been stung by a *Rattle-Snake*. This sad accident oblig'd them to tarry some days in that place: They gave him immediately some Orvietan, and having scarified the Wound, they apply'd upon it some Salt of Vipers, whereby he was recover'd.

C H A P. IV.

A Continuation of M. de la Salle's Voyage and Discovery; and how he was receiv'd by the Savages Cenis.

They march'd several days without meeting with any Savages or any Accidents, and came to a River very broad and rapid, which they judg'd to be near the Sea: They made a Raft to cross it, and *M. de la Salle*, and *M. Cavelier*, and part of his men ventur'd upon that floating Boat, which the Rapidity of the Stream carry'd down with such a violence, that they were in few minutes out of sight, leaving their Comrades on the shore under an unspeakable Grief. Father *Anastase* comforted them as much as he could, being himself under a great affliction; for besides their Savage, who was of great use to them, had lost his way, and was wandering in the Woods: They continued in that condition all the day, but in the

the Evening they heard *M. de la Salle* hailing them from the other Shore. Their Raft had been stopp'd by a Sand in the middle of the River, which gave them time to recover their strength, in so much, that they master'd the Current and got happily over; tho' one of them attempting to catch a Branch of a Tree, fell into the Water and was carry'd away. They thought him drown'd, but being an excellent Swimmer, and knowing it was in vain to strive against the Stream, but by degrees he was carry'd down a great way, and at last got a-shore and rejoyn'd Father *Anastase* and his Companions, who having eat nothing all day long, were exceeding hungry. They found no Game about them, and wanting all manner of Provisions, they were reduc'd to a great Extremity: the divine Providence, who takes care of the meanest of his Creatures, reliev'd them also at this time, two young Eagles fell from a Cedar, which afforded them a Meal, tho' it was but a small matter for ten almost starv'd Travellers.

They tarry'd in that place that night, and the next day they endeavour'd to cross the River, and by the advice of *M. de la Salle*, they made a Raft of Canes, which with the help of two men that swam to defend it against the Rapidity of the Stream, they got all over except their Savage. Being thus rejoyn'd they march'd two days through a Forest of Canes, through which they were forced to cut their way with their Axes, and on the third day they found *Nikana* with three wild Goats already broyl'd, and another which he had just kill'd. *M. de la Salle* ordered two or three Guns to be fir'd to shew his Joy.

Having refresh'd themselves they continu'd their March Eastward, travelling through a most delicious Country, where they found Savages, who had nothing barbarous but their Name. They met one of them who came from shooting with his Wife and Fa-

mily; he presented M. *de la Salle* with a Horse and some Flesh, desiring him by signs to go along with him to his Habitation, and lest he should have any Suspicion, he left his Wife and Family with him, and went to his Village, where he was accompany'd by *Nikana*, and a Footman of M. *de la Salle*. They return'd two days after with two Horses loaded with Provisions, and acquainted their Master with the civility of that People, who sent their chief Commanders and young Warriors to complement them. They were handsomly cover'd with dress'd Skins, adorned with Feathers of different Colours. M. *de la Salle* thought fit to advance, and within three Leagues of the Village he met the Savages, who presented them their *Calumet* of Peace in great Ceremony. They conducted them in triumph to the Cabbins of their General, where a great number of People came to see them. M. *de la Salle* observ'd that the young Warriors mounted the Guard and were reliev'd by turns. The great civility of that People oblig'd M. *de la Salle* to leave the Village and encamp about two Miles off, for having observ'd that the Women were exceeding-kind to them, and pretty handsom, he was afraid his men would be debauch'd, which might have been of a fatal consequence. They tarry'd there four days, and bought some Horses for some of our *European* Commodities.

This Village belongs to the *Cenis*, and is one of the most populous and largest of *America*, being about 20 Leagues long, not in a continued Street, but because the Hamlets are so near one another, that the whole looks as if it were but one. Their Cabbins are extraordinary fine, of about 50 Foot long, and built as Bee-Hives. They plant Trees round-about, whose Branches joyn over their Cabins, and which they tie together: Their Beds are placed round-about their Cabins, four Foot higher than the floor, and they make

make their Fire in the middle. Each Cabin is for two Families. They found amongst them several things which they must have from the *Spaniards*, as some Pieces of Eight, Silver Spoons, Lace, Cloaths and Horses. They had also a Bull of the Pope, exempting the *Spaniards* of *New Mexico* from fasting in Summer time. How they came by it, they could never understand. The Horses are so common, that one of *M. de la Salle's* men had one given him for his Ax, and another offer'd a fine one for Father *Anastase's* Capuch. They have however no direct Trade with the *Spaniards*, but get these things from the *Choumans* their Allies, who being Neighbours of the *Europeans* are often in War with them. *M. de la Salle* having always the Mines of *St. Barbe* in his Thoughts, desir'd them by Signs to draw a Map of the Country, and the Course of their River, which they understood, and with a Piece of Coal, they made on the white Bark of a Tree a Description of their Country and River, that *M. de la Salle* understood they were within six days journey from the *Spaniards*, whom they knew, their Warriors going often to assist the *Choumans* against them.

M. de la Salle, who had a particular art to gain the Friendship of the Savages, told them a great many things of the Grandeur of the King his Master, whom he represented as the greatest Captain of the World, and as much above the *Spaniards* as the Sun above the Earth: he gave them an account of his signal Victories: At which, says Father *Anastase*, they put their Fingers upon their Mouth to express their Admiration: but seeing *M. de la Salle* did not speak their Language, I would fain know how the *Cenis* understood the account he gave them of the glorious Actions of the King of *France*. Surely this is a Fiction, or at best, too long a Comment upon a Conversation which was acted by signs; and Father *Anastase* might

might have spar'd this Reflection upon the *Spaniards*, for tho' the King of *France* is a great Monarch, yet the King of *Spain* possesses such Countries in the old and new World, that no Prince can be compar'd to him in that respect, and the Motto of the Chatholick Kings *Sol mihi nunquam occidit*, may be more easily justified, than the *Nec pluribus impar* of the King of *France*. Those who will consider the extent of the Dominions of the *Spaniards* in the *West-Indies*, will find that they are above 2500 Leagues in length, which I think the great Master of *M. de la Salle* can never match.

There were at that time some Ambassadors of the *Choumans*, at the Village of the *Cenis*, who paid a Visit to *M. de la Salle*, and at their coming in made the Sign of the Cross, and kneeling down kissed Father *Anastase's* Gown, lifting up their Hands to Heaven, and giving them to understand, that Men cloathed with like Habits taught their Neighbours. They made such signs as convinced the French that they had been at Mass; and one of them drew with a Coal a tall Woman weeping at the Foot of the Cross, for the Death of her Son who was nail'd to it. This he must needs have seen over an Altar in the Spanish Churches, and 'tis no wonder if they knew Father *Anastase's* Gown, for the *Franciscans* are very numerous in that Country. Our Authour adds, that they told *M. de la Salle*, that the *Spaniards* made a great slaughter of the *Indians*, and that if he would go along with them with his fire Arms, it would be easie to conquer them, seeing they are Cowards, and so Effeminate as to have two Men before them, when they walk in Summer-time each with a large Fann to refresh them.

This puts me in mind of several Conversations which I had with *M. de la Salle*, at Fort *Frontenac* concerning our Discoveries, and speaking of Missionaries and the Qualities they ought to have, I remember
he

he told me often that the Jesuits of the Colledge of Goa in the East-Indies, which was given them by a Bp. of the Order of St. Francis, and whose Revenues amount now to a prodigious Summ, travel in a Litter, where they perform this Mission, having two Men on each side to cool them with a Fann. This he knew from some of those Jesuits themselves, but as he had left this Society, I did not altogether believe what he told me of it; but I wonder that Father *Anastase* would charge upon the *Spaniards* of New Mexico, what *M. de la Salle* told me of the Jesuits of Goa. The reason may be easily discover'd, the *Spaniards* will either scorn this Reflection, or let it go without Vengeance, whereas the Jesuits are never affronted with Impunity.

M. de la Salle having tarried several Days among the *Cenis*, continued his March through the Habitations of the *Nassonis*; these two Nations are in confederacy, and divided by a large River, on the Banks of which the Villages are situated: They have much the same customs and manners.

Within five Leagues of that Place four of *M. de la Salle's* men ran away to the *Nassonis*, which sadly vex'd him; and few Days after, he together with *M. Moranger* his Nephew, fell sick of a violent Fever, which obliged our Travellers to tarry in that Place for several Weeks, for notwithstanding they recover'd, it was a long time before they were able to continue their Voyage. This Distemper disappointed all their measures, and was the occasion of several misfortunes that befell them afterwards. They tarried there two whole Months, being reduc'd to the greatest Extremities; their Powder was most spent, tho' they were not advanced above 150 Leagues in a direct Line; some of their men had deserted, others began to be irresolute; and all these things being carefully consider'd by *M. de la Salle*, he resolved to return to Fort Lewis.

Every

Every body approv'd his Design, and so they returned the same way without meeting with any remarkable Accident, except that one of them was swallowed by a Crocodile of a prodigious Size, as they repass'd the *Wicked River*.

They returned to their Camp the 17th of *October* 1686, being received with an incredible Joy by their Companions, who thought them as good as lost amongst these barbarous Nations.

CHAP. V.

A Short Description of Fort Lewis, of its advantageous Situation, and of the Fertility of the Country about it.

WHAT has been already observed is enough to shew the Character of *M. de la Salle*, and that never Traveller was more undaunted, and constant in his undertakings than him. All the misfortunes and accidents we have mention'd, were not enough to deject his Courage, nor deterr him from his former Designs, in which through the Grace of God he expected to succeed.

He remained two Months and a half at *Fort Lewis*, during which time he took a view of all the Rivers that run into that Bay, and found above 50 which are Navigable, if we may believe Father *Anastase*, who was with him: They come most of them from the West and North-West. The Fort is situated in a sandy Ground, but the Soil about is very fertile. There are large Meadows in which the Grass grows as high as our Wheat in *Europe*. These Rivers are very frequent, being commonly at 2 or 3 Leagues distance. Their Banks are adorn'd with Oak, Mulberry,

berry-Trees, and other Sets of Trees, some whereof are altogether unknown in *Europe*. The Country is all alike going to the Westward, till within two Day's Journey of the *Spaniards*.

This Fort is situated on a rising Ground, on the Bank of a River, having the Sea to the South-East, the Meadows to the West, and two large Ponds, and a Forest to the South-West; the nearest Neighbours are the *Guaquis*, who have abundance of Horses, and the *Bahamos* and *Guinets*, who are wandering Nations, with whom *M. de la Salles* was in War. He forgot nothing during that time to comfort his small Colony, which began to multiply, several Children being born since their Arrival. He employed his men about grubbing up the Lands, which as I have said, proved very good and fertile. In the mean time our Missionaries applied themselves to the Instruction of some Savage Families, who left their own Nation to live with the *Europeans*. *M. de la Salle* us'd them with all possible kindness, knowing how advantageous it would be to win those barbarous Nations over to his Interest.

M. de la Salle having cast up an Intrenchment about a large Inclosure, wherein were the Habitations of the Colony, under the Cannon of the Fort, and taken all other precautions for their Security, called the Inhabitants together, and made so pathetic a Speech to them about the Necessity he was under to make a Voyage to the *Illinois* Country, that he drew Tears from every one of the Assembly, considering the Danger and Fatigue of so great a Voyage, for he was very much beloved. He took 20 men with him with his Brother, his two Nephews, Father *Anastase*, and one *Foussel à Ploto*; and after publick Prayers, he set out a second time from Fort *Lewis*, resolv'd not to return till he had found the *Illinois*.

C H A P. VI.

An Account of M. de la Salle's second Voyage, from the Bay of St. Lewis, to the Illinois.

M. *De la Salle* with 20 men set out from his Fort on the 7th of *January* 1687, and met the first Day a great Band of *Babamos*, who were going upon a military Expedition against the Savages, called *Trigoanna*. He made alliance with them, and designed to do the like with the *Guinets*, whom he met also, but they ran away upon his approach: However having overtaken them by means of his Horses, they agreed together, and promised on both sides an inviolable Peace.

They continued their March to the North-East, and crossed the first River, which they had called before the River of *Canes*, because the Banks of it are covered with them. The Country is diversified with Meadows and Woods, and the Soil is so fertile, that Grass grows 10 or 12 Foot high. There are several populous Villages of Savages upon that Rivers, but they visited only the *Guaras* and *Anachorema*. They crossed the second River of *Canes*, distant 3 Leagues from the former. Its Banks are inhabited by several different Nations, and the Country is full of Hemp which grows naturally in those Parts. They met 5 Leagues further another River call'd *Sablonniere*, because it flows through a sandy ground, tho' the Grass of the Meadows near its Banks sheweth the Fertility of the Soil.

Having passed three or four small Rivers, they found 8 Leagues from the *Sablonniere* the River *Rabeck*, whose Banks are peopled with several Villages of Savages, who speak, in a manner from their Throat. They are in War with the *Spaniards*, and desir'd M.
de la

de la Salle to joyn with them, but he had business else where, and with 20 men alone he was not able to do any great things against the *Spaniards*. He remain'd five or six days with them, and from thence continued his march to the *Wicked River*, so called, because a Crocodile had devour'd one of his men. That River has a long course, and is inhabited by 40 Villages of Savages, which compose the Nation *Kanentinno*, which are likewise at War with the *Spaniards*. They went through some of their Villages, where they were kindly receiv'd; tho', if we may believe Father *Anastase*, the cruelties of the *Spaniards* have somewhat chang'd their good Nature into fierceness. This, I take to be *M. de la Salle's* Opinion; for in all his Travels he endeavour'd to represent the *Spaniards* as the most odious and cruel Nation in the World. I must own, as I have already intimated, that the *Spaniards* were forc'd to destroy several Nations in *New Mexico*, but they were oblig'd to it to preserve themselves against them, for else the Natives would have destroy'd them. 'Tis certain, that the Savages have no kindness for the *Europeans*, and keep fair with them, only as long as they fear them. But I wonder, that *M. de la Salle* should blame so much the *Spaniards*, and yet form the Enterprize he was about, seeing it was impossible for him to succeed without destroying the *Spaniards* themselves; and as to their Tyranny, I remember to have convinc'd him more than once, that the *Spanish* Domination is easier and milder than any other he could name.

M. de la Salle having got some Horses from those Savages, crossed the River in Canou's made of Skins of wild Oxen, the Horses swimming over; and four Leagues from thence cross'd the River *Hiens* or *Hans*, already mention'd, continuing their march to the North-East. They cross'd several other Rivers and Brooks, which were mightily swoln by the Rains that

that fall in that Country about that time, which is their Winter, the difference of Seasons being only known by those Rains. The Country they travell'd through is diversified with Meadows, Woods, Groves, Hills and Springs. They came at last to three great Villages call'd *Taraba*, *Tyakappan* and *Palonna*, where they found good Horses. They met some Leagues further the *Palaqueffons*, a People compos'd of ten Villages. These are in Alliance with the *Spaniards*.

I cannot but wonder at Father *Anastase's* neglecting to make a more exact Diary of their Voyage, and to be more particular about so many different Nations he speaks off, and therefore I desire the Reader to give me leave to make now and then some Reflections upon this Voyage of *M. de la Salle*, having so intimately known that Gentleman, and travell'd so long with him in *America*. My Description of *Louisiana*, which I printed at *Paris*, did him a very great kindness in relation to his Enterprize.



2:33-



The Murder of Mons.^r de la Salle

M. Vandergrift

C H A P. VII.

M. de la Salle and three more are unfortunately murther'd by some of their own Party.

AFTER they had gone through so many different Nations as is above related, there fell out a most unhappy Accident, to wit, the Assassination of *M. de la Salle*, his Nephew *Moranger*, and some others. *M. de la Salle* was then in a fine Country for hunting: His People regal'd themselves very plentifully, and refresh'd themselves after their tiresome Travel with excellent good Chear for several days together: He had sent *M. Moranger* his Nephew, his Laquey *Saget*, and seven or eight of his men to a certain place, where *Nika* his Huntsman, who was a Savage *Chaouenon* had laid up a stock of wild Bulls Flesh, that they might get it smoak'd and dry'd to carry along with them, and so not be oblig'd to halt so frequently to hunt for Provisions.

With all his Prudence, *M. de la Salle* could not discover the Conspiracy of some of his People to kill his Nephew, for they resolv'd upon it, and put it in Execution all of a sudden on the 17th of *March*, wounding him in the head with a Hatchet. The Blow was struck by a Person whom Father *Anastasis* out of Charity would not name; they slew likewise the Laquey and poor *Nika*, who had provided for them by his Hunting for three years together with toil and danger: *Moranger* languished under his Wound for two Hours, during which time, he gave all possible tokens of his Piety, forgiving his Murtherers, and embracing them frequently, resigning himself up to God's good Pleasure, and relying upon his Saviour's Merits, as his very Murtherers acknowledg'd, when their

D

Rage



C H A P. VII.

*M. de la Salle and three more are unfortunately
murther'd by some of their own Party.*



The Murder of Mons.^r de la Salle

M. Vander

AFTER they had gone through so many different Nations as is above related, there fell out a most unhappy Accident, to wit, the Assassination of *M. de la Salle*, his Nephew *Moranger*, and some others. *M. de la Salle* was then in a fine Country for hunting: His People regal'd themselves very plentifully, and refresh'd themselves after their tiresome Travel with excellent good Chear for several days together: He had sent *M. Moranger* his Nephew, his Laquey *Saget*, and seven or eight of his men to a certain place, where *Nika* his Huntsman, who was a Savage *Chaouenon* had laid up a stock of wild Bulls Flesh, that they might get it smoak'd and dry'd to carry along with them, and so not be oblig'd to halt so frequently to hunt for Provisions.

With all his Prudence, *M. de la Salle* could not discover the Conspiracy of some of his People to kill his Nephew, for they resolv'd upon it, and put it in Execution all of a sudden on the 17th of March, wounding him in the head with a Hatchet. The Blow was struck by a Person whom Father *Anastasis* out of Charity would not name; they slew likewise the Laquey and poor *Nika*, who had provided for them by his Hunting for three years together with toil and danger: *Moranger* languished under his Wound for two Hours, during which time, he gave all possible tokens of his Piety, forgiving his Murtherers, and embracing them frequently, resigning himself up to God's good Pleafure, and relying upon his Saviour's Merits as his very Murtherers acknowledg'd, when their

D

Rage

Rage was cool'd: He was a very honest man and a good Christian.

These Wretches not content with this bloody Fact, resolv'd not to stick there, but contriv'd how to kill their Master too, for they fear'd he would have justly punish'd them for their Crime. Father *Anastafius* says, They were two Leagues off the place where *Moranger* was kill'd, and that *M. de la Salle* being concern'd at his Nephews tarrying so long (for they had been gone two or three days) was afraid they might have been surpriz'd by some Party of the Savages; whereupon he desir'd Father *Anastafius* to go with him to look after his Nephew, and took two Savages along with him; upon the way *M. de la Salle* entertain'd 'em with a pious Discourse of Grace and Predestination; but chiefly he enlarg'd upon the great Obligations he was under to divine Providence for preserving him in the many dangers he had undergone during a twenty Years abode in *America*, nine of which he spent in travelling, and I with him; he seem'd to be peculiarly affected with God's Goodness to him, when all of a sudden, Father *Anastafius* observ'd that he fell into a deep Sorrow of which he himself could give no account; he grew mighty unquiet and full of trouble, a temper he was never seen in before; Father *Anastafius* did all he could to recover him out of it.

They were got about two Leagues, when he found his Lacquey's bloody Cravat, and perceiv'd two Eagles (a common Bird in those parts) hovering over his head, at the same time he spied his People by the Water-side: he went up to them and enquired for his Nephew, they made him little answer, but pointed to the place where he lay. Father *Anastafius* kept going on by the River side, till at last they came to the fatal place, where two of the Villains lay hid in the Grass, one on one side, and one on the other, with their

their Pieces cock'd, the first presented at M. *de la Salle* but miss'd Fire, the other fired at the same time, and shot him into the head, of which he dy'd an Hour after, *March 19. 1687.*

Father *Anastasius* expected the same fate, but did not reflect upon the danger he was in; he was sensibly touch'd at this cruel Spectacle, seeing M. *de la Salle* fall a little way off from him with his Face all bloody; he ran to him, took him up in his Arms, and wept over him, exhorting him as well as he could in this Conjunction to die like a good Christian; the unfortunate Gentleman had been at his Devotions just before they set out, and had just time enough to confess part of his Life to Father *Anastasius*, who gave him Absolution, and soon after he died: In these his last Moments he perform'd as far as he was capable whatsoever was proper for one in his condition, he press'd the Father's hand at every thing he said to him, especially when he admonish'd him to forgive his Enemies; mean while the Murtherers struck with Horror at what they had committed, began to beat their Breasts, and detest their Rashness. Father *Anastasius* would not stir from the place till he had bury'd the Body as decently as he could, and plac'd a Cross over his Grave.

Thus fell the *Sieur Robert Cavelier de la Salle*, a Man of considerable Merit, constant in Adversitiës, fearless, generous, courteous, ingenious, learned and capable of every thing; he labour'd for twenty years together to civilize the savage Humours and Manners of a great number of barbarous People among whom he travel'd, and had the ill hap to be massacred by his own Servants, whom he had enrich'd: he dy'd in the Vigour of his Age in the middle of his Course, before he could execute the designs he had form'd upon *New Mexico.*

C H A P. VIII.

The Author's Reflections upon the Life and Death of M. de la Salle, whose Murtherers kill'd one another.

M. *De la Salle* told me several times, whilst we were together in Fort *Fromenac*, before we went upon our Discoveries, and also when we were in pursuit of them, that when he was a Jesuit, having liv'd 10 or 11 years in that Order, the Fathers of that Society caus'd frequent Lectures to be read during the first two Years to all those that enter'd into the Society, of the tragical Deaths and fatal Miscarriages that overtook such as had quitted their Order; and this was done to fix those that were newly entred; I ought to say this out of Justice to *M. de la Salle*, who formerly deposited in my hands all his Papers, whilst he took a Voyage to *France*, and I staid at Fort *Fromenac*, that he quitted his Order with the consent of his Superiours, and that he had written Testimonials of his good Conduct during his stay in that Society. He shew'd me a Letter written at *Rome* by the General of that Order, wherein he testified that the said *Seur de la Salle* had behav'd himself prudently in every thing without giving the least occasion to be suspected guilty of a venial Sin.

I have a hundred times reflected upon what he has said to me, when we entertain'd our selves with the Stories of our new Discoveries, and I ador'd God for the unsearchableness of his ways, who accomplishes his Will by those means he is pleas'd to appoint; and uncertain as I was of my Destiny, I gave my self up to his good pleasure, resolv'd to submit patiently in every thing to his divine Providence. Father *Anastasi*
sius

As arriv'd at length where was M. *Cavelier*, a Priest, Brother of the Defunct M. *de la Salle*, to whom he related his Death, the Murtherers came rudely into the same Cabbin or Hut presently after, and seiz'd upon all they found in it, the good Father had not leisure for a long Harangue, but his Countenance bath'd in Tears, was a sufficient Intimation of what he had to say: M. *Cavelier* at first sight of him, cry'd out, ah! my Brother is dead. I cannot forbear presenting the publick with some account of this Priest, M. *Cavelier*, with whom I sojourn'd in *Canada* during one Summer of my Mission to Fort *Frontenac*, of which his Brother was Governour and Proprietor. He was a pious and discreet Ecclesiastick, perfectly qualified for a Missionary: He no sooner heard this fatal News, but he fell down upon his Knees, and so did the *Sieur Cavelier* his Nephew, expecting the Villains came to butcher them, and therefore prepar'd themselves to die like Christians; but the Assassines mov'd with Compassion at the sight of the venerable old Man, and being sorry besides for their late wicked Deeds, resolv'd to spare them, upon condition that they should never return into *France*, but they were a long time e'er they fixt upon granting them Mercy; some of them that had a mind to see their Kindred once again, endeavour'd as well as they could to clear themselves from so detestable an Action; others said, 'twas safest to rid their hands of these two innocent men, or else they might one day call them to an account, if ever they met again in *France*.

They chose for their Leader the Murtherer of M. *de la Salle*, and upon Deliberation they resolv'd to go to the famous Nation of the *Cenis* already spoken of; so they march'd altogether for several days, and pass'd divers Rivers. These infamous Murtherers made the two *Caveliers* serve them as Va'ets, and gave them nothing but their leavings to eat. They arriv'd without

any rub at the place they wish'd for. A Contest rises betwixt a German of *Wittemburg*, nam'd *Hans*, and him that murther'd *M. de la Salle*, about the Superiority of Command, upon this their men divide themselves into two Parties, one follows *Hans*, the other the Murtherer. They were come away from the *Cenis* amongst whom they tarry'd some time, and arriv'd at the *Nassonis*, where the four Deserters whom I mention'd before, rejoyn'd them. Thus they were all got together upon *Ascension Eve*, and the Quarrel betwixt the two Parties, being blown up to that height, that they determin'd to murther one another, Father *Anastafius* made an Exhortation to them upon the Festival day, with which they seem'd to be so touch'd, that they made as if they would confess themselves; but they did not continue long in that mind. Those that most regretted their Masters murther, took to *Hans's* side. This man two days after taking his opportunity, punish'd one crime with another, for he fir'd a Pistol at the Murtherer of *M. de la Salle*, the Bullet peirc'd his Heart, and he drop'd dead upon the place. One of *Hans's* Crew shot him that kill'd *M. Moranger* in the side, and before he could well recover himself, another let fly just at his Head, there was no Ball in his Musket, but the Powder set fire to his Hair, which catch'd his Shirt and Cloaths with so much violence and quickness, that he could not put it out, but expir'd in the Flame. The third Conspirator took to his Heels and sav'd himself; *Hans* was mighty eager to make sure of him, and finish in his Death, the vengeance due to *M. de la Salle*; but the *Sieur Foutel* made 'em Friends, and so the matter rested for that time.

Thus *Hans* became the chief Leader of this miserable Troop; they resolv'd to return to the *Cenis*, amongst whom they design'd to settle, for they durst not venture back into *Europe* for fear of meeting the punishment
their

their Crimes deserv'd : At that time the *Cenis* were up in arms and ready to march out to fight with the *Kanoatinno* a cruel People, their implacable Enemies. When they take any Prisoners, they throw them alive into a Caldron and boyl them. The *Cenis* then took *Hans* and some other *Europeans* along with them, the rest waited till they should return, though *Hans* would fain have perswaded them all to go, but they would not stir. When *Hans* was gone, they departed out of the Country of the *Cenis*, and amongst 'em were the two *Caveliers*, the *Sieur Foutel*, Father *Anastasi* and others ; each had his Horse, Powder, and Lead, with some Goods to defray their Charges upon the way ; they made a halt in the Country of the *Nassonis* to celebrate the *Octave* of *la fete dieu*. In their Relations, they say, that the people entertain'd them perpetually with Stories of the Cruelty of the *Spaniards* towards the *Americans*, and told them twenty several Nations were going to make war upon the *Spaniards*, and invited them to go along with them, because, said they, you will do more execution with your Guns, than all our Warriors with their Maces and Arrows. But they had other designs in their Heads, and took occasion in these Discourses to give them to understand that they were come amongst them by express order from God, to instruct them in the knowledge of the Truth, and set them right in the way to Salvation, and this was their employment for 10 or 12 days to the 3d of *June*.

I make no question, but M. *Cavelier* the Priest, and Father *Anastasi* endeavour'd to their utmost to give light to these *Nassonis* and deliver them out of their ignorance. But the four other *Europeans* that were in their company were not enough in number to terrifie the *Spaniards* who are us'd to fire-arms ; besides they did not understand the Language of these

D 4

People

People, and therefore I cannot easily comprehend how they could gather from the Discourse of these *Nassonis*, that the *Spaniards* were so cruel to the *Americans*; they had no Interpreters along with them, so that they could not understand a word of what was said to them by these People, who had never seen any other *Europeans* before them.

Moreover 'tis certain, that since the days of the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, the *Spaniards* have not dar'd to execute any Cruelties upon the Natives of *New Mexico*, because they have too few of their own Subjects to guard their Conquests against the insults of their neighbouring *Indians*, were they irritated. No, they live peaceably with them, and trouble no body, unless they are first attack'd.

C H A P. IX.

The Cenis permit M. Cavelier the Priest, and Father Anastasius, with their Company, to continue their Journey thorough several barbarous Nations.

THE *Cenis* gave these six *Europeans* two Savages for Guides, who took their way thorough the finest Country in the World Northwards, and North-Eastwards; they pass'd over four great Rivers, and many Channels made by the Rain, inhabited by divers Nations Eastward, they came among the *Haquis*, the *Nabiri*, or the *Naansi*, a valiant People at War with the *Cenis*, at length they arrived near the *Cado-dacebos*, June the 13th, one of their Guides went before to inform the Barbarians of their coming. The chief Men and the Youth, whom they found a League from their Village, receiv'd them with the *Calumet*, and gave them some Tobacco; some led their Horses by the Bridle, and others carried them about in Triumph; they said they were Spirits come from the other World.

All the Village being come together, the Women according to their Custom wash'd their Heads and Feet with warm Water, after which they were seated upon a Bench cover'd with neat white Mats; then they went to revelling, dancing to the *Calumet*, and made other publick rejoycings Day and Night. These People knew nothing of the *Europeans* but by Report, 'tis to be presum'd they have some shadow of Religion amongst 'em, but all their *Ideas* are very confused, and their Notions unaccountable, they seem to worship the Sun, because they send up the Smoak of their Tobacco to him, though they have their share

share on't ; their Ceremonial Habits have commonly two Suns described upon them, and upon the rest of the Body representations of wild Bulls, Deer, Serpents, or other Animals ; the two religious *Europeans* took occasion from hence, to give them some Lessons concerning the true God, and the principal Mysteries of Christianity ; 'tis to be suppos'd all this was done by Signs.

In this place God afflicted them by a Tragical Accident, the *Sieur Marne* maugre all Dissuasions, would needs bath himself, *June* the 24th at Night. *M. Cavelier*, Nephew to *M. de la Salle* went along with him to the River-side, which lies pretty near the Village. *Marne* threw himself into the Water, and never came up again. 'Twas a Whirlpool that suck'd him in, and drowned him in a moment.

A little after his Body was drawn out of the Water, and carried to the Captain's House ; all the Village lamented his Death : The Captain's Wife wrapt him up decently in a handsome Mat, while some young Men dug a Grave for him, which Father *Anastasi* blest ; and then they committed him to the Earth with all possible Solemnity. The *Barbarians* admir'd the Ceremonies of his Interment, and above all, the singing of the Psalms at his Obsequies. Upon this they offer'd them instructions about the immortality of the Soul, and continued to teach them for Eight days, for so long they tarried after in that fatal Place ; the dead Man was buried upon an Eminence near the Village, his Grave was fenc'd about with Pallisado's, and a great Cross set up over it which was made by the Savages : They departed out of this Country, *July* the 2d.

These People dwell upon the Side of a River, where three other Nations inhabit, the *Natchoos*, *Natchetes* and *Ouidiches*. The Travellers were receiv'd very kindly by all of them. From the River of
the

the *Cenis*, where they first met with Beavers and Otters; the farther they advanced Northward, the greater Number they found of those Animals. Whilst they sojourned among the *Ouidiches*, they met with three Warriours of two Nations call'd the *Cabinnio*, and the *Mentous*, who dwelt twenty five Leagues farther, East-North-East, and had seen some Frenchmen. They offer'd to conduct 'em to their Countrymen, and by the way they cross'd four Rivers and Brooks, or Torrents made by the Rain, there they were receiv'd by these Nations with the *Calumet* of Peace in their Hands, with all possible Tokens of Gladness and Esteem. Many of these Savages talkt to 'em of an *European*, who was a Captain, and had but one Hand; this was the *Sieur de Tonti* a Neapolitan, mention'd in my first Volume. They added, that he told 'em, that a greater Captain than himself would probably pass by their Village; meaning the *Sieur de la Salle*.

The chief Man among them lodg'd them in his Cabbin or Hutt, and made his Family go out of it; there they were treated several Days with all sorts of good Cheer. Nay, they order'd a solemn Feast to be kept publickly, wherein they danc'd to the *Calumet* four and twenty Hours together, and sung Songs made purposely for the occasion, which their Captain dictated to them as loud as he could, they entertain'd 'em as Envoys from the Sun, who came to defend them from their Enemies with Thunderbolts, meaning their Musquets which they had never seen before; in the heat of these rejoycings the younger *Cavelier* let off his Pistol three times, crying out *Vive le Roy*, which the Barbarians repeated with a loud Voice; adding, long live the Sun.

These Savages have a prodigious Number of Beavers and Otters in their Country, which might be easily exported by a River near the Village; these
Sava

Savages would have loaded their Horses with them; but they refus'd them to shew they were free from any Self-design, and presented the Barbarians with Hatchets and Knives; at last they went away with two *Cabinnio's* to guide them; after they had receiv'd the Ambassadors from the *Analan*, the *Tanico*, and other Nations Northwest, and South Westward, they travers'd for some Days the finest Country in the World full of Rivers, Meadows, little Woods, Hills, and Vineyards.

Among others they cross'd over four large Navigable Rivers, and after a March of about sixty Leagues, they came to the *Offotteoz*, who dwell upon a Noble River running from the North-West, upon whose Banks grow the finest Woods in the Universe.

The Skins of Beavers and Otters are every where found in so great a Quantity, as well as all other kinds of Hides and Skins of Beasts, that they throw 'em all in a heap and burn them, of so little value are they accounted. 'Tis upon the famous River of the *Akanfa* that so many Villages stand, as I mention'd in the first Tome of my Discoveries.

Father *Anastafius* says in his Relation, that there they began to know whereabouts they were: At the same time he knew very well that neither he nor any Man in his Company had ever been upon the River *Meschasipi*: Indeed I went up it by my self, with two Indians in a Canou in 1680, and afterwards in 1682, M. de la Salle went up it as high as *Akanfa*: 'Tis highly probable, Father *Anastafius* thought he was then at Fort *Crevecoeur*, situated in the Country of the *Illinois*, because he found a great Cross there, and beneath it the King of France's Arms; besides he saw a House built after the *European* way, and upon this the Sieur *Foutel*, and two more that were left discharged their Musquets. At the Noise of the Guns out came two French *Canadans*, their Commander's
Name

Name was M. *Couture*, whom I knew particularly well when I lived in *Canada*, and was one that made the Voyage along with us to discover the *Louisiana*. This M. *Couture* gave them to know, that he was Posted there by the *Sieur de Ponti*, by order of M. *de la Salle*, to keep up an Alliance with the Neighbouring Savage Nations, and guard them against the Insults of the *Iroquois*, their sworn Foes.

They visited three Villages, the *Forimans*, the *Dodonga*, and the *Kappa*; they receiv'd 'em every where with Feasts, Speeches, Dances, and all other Expressions of Joy. They were lodg'd in the House belonging to this small Fort. These of *Canada* that were settled there entertain'd 'em very kindly, and made them Masters of all. Whatever Affairs these Savages contested about they never decided them immediately, but summon'd together the Chief men, and the most Ancient of the Villages, and deliberated upon the matter in dispute. These Travellers ask'd them for a *Pyroque*, and some Savages in it to go up the River *Meschasipi*, as far as the *Illinois*, by the River of that Nation, which in my Map of *Louisiana*, I call the River of *Seignelay*, in honour to the Minister of State of that Name, who favour'd and took care about our Discovery. Father *Anastafius* says they offer'd their Horses, some Powder and Lead in exchange for the *Pyroque*. After the Counsel had met upon this Subject, they came to a resolution to grant them the *Pyroque* they demanded, and four Savages to man it, one of each Nation to signify the strict Alliance they had made with them. This was punctually executed, so they dismiss'd the *Cabinnio* with Presents to their satisfaction.

Upon this Head I would observe, without pretending to reflect upon M. *de la Salle*, that he undoubtedly never found out the true Mouth of the River *Meschasipi*, nor Father *Anastafius* neither; who never

ver was in that Part of the Country; and if the last did luckily light upon it by help of the Savages that guided him, 'twas owing to the Directions he receiv'd from M. Couture, Commander of the Skonce; but it may be he will give us more light into this matter hereafter.

CHAP. X.

The Voyage of the Sieur Cavelier a Priest, and Father Anastasius a Recollect in a Pyrogue to the Illinois, and several Observations concerning their Return.

After they had tarried a little time among these People, M. Cavelier, and Father Anastasius, Embarked in the River of *Meschasipi*, Aug. 1. they crossed the River the same Day in a Pyrogue of 40 Foot long. The stream was very strong in that Place, so they went all a-shoar to travel the rest of the Journey on Foot, because they had left their Horses at *Akanfa*, though they had done better perhaps to have kept them: They left no Soul in the Pyrogue but young Cavelier, whose tender Age joyn'd with the Fatigue of travelling so far, made him incapable of prosecuting the Journey on Foot. Father Anastasius thinks that from the place where they set out to the *Illinois*, they had 400 Leagues to march a foot before they could get thither; but all this is spoken by guess.

One of the Savages went aboard the Pyrogue to steer it along the River, and one of his Comerades relieved him from time to time. The rest of the Company made no use of the Pyrogue, but only when they had occasion to avoid a dangerous Place, or cross any Rivers;

vers; they underwent a great deal of Toil in this Voyage, the Heats were excessive in that season, the sand was burnt by the Sun, but more than all, the want of Food, which they endur'd several days, reduc'd 'em to extreme hardship.

Father *Anastasi* adds, That they were got 200 Leagues over land from the Bay of *St. Louis*, that is to say, 100 Leagues to the *Cenis*, 60 to the North North-East, and 40 to the East North-East: from the *Nassonis* to the *Cadodacchos* 40 North North-Eastward, from the *Cadodacchos* to the *Cabinnio* and the *Mentous* 25 to the East North-East, and from the *Cabinnio* to the *Akanfa* 60 East North-East.

They continued their Progress up the River by the same way, that they had heard *M. de la Salle* went in 82, except that they went to *Sicacha*. Father *Anastasi*, says *M. de la Salle* was not there. I made mention of this Nation in my Discovery in 80, in the preceding Volume; their principal Village is twenty five Leagues East from *Akanfa*. The People are robust and numerous, consisting at least of 4000 fighting Men: They have abundance of all sorts of Skins and Hides. Their Leaders often brought the *Calumet* to them to signify that they were willing to make an Alliance with them; nay they offer'd to go and settle themselves upon the River *Ouabache* to be nearer Fort *Crevecoeur* in the Country of the *Illinois*, whither they were travelling.

This famous River of *Ouabache* is full as large as *Meschasipi*; a great many other Rivers run into it, the out-let where it discharges it self into *Meschasipi* is 200 Leagues from *Akanfa* according to *M. de la Salle's* Computation; the truth is it is not so far cross the Country, but it may be as much in following the Course of the River *Meschasipi*, which winds about very much. Straight over land 'tis not above 5 good days journey.

They

They cross'd the River *Ouabache*, August 26. and found it full 60 Leagues along the River *Meschassipi* to the mouth of the River of the *Illinois*, about 6 Leagues below the mouth of that River North-Westward, is the famous River of the *Massourites* or the *Orages* which is as large at least as the River it falls into. It is made up of several other known navigable Rivers inhabited by numerous Nations, as the *Panimaba*, who have but one Captain and 22 Villages, the least of which contains 200 Cabbins. The *Paneassa*, the *Pana*, the *Panaloga*, and the *Metotantes*, each of which is as considerable as the *Panimaba*.

The *Orages* have 17 Villages upon a River of their name, that discharges it self into that of the *Massourites*. Our Maps and those of M. de la Salle, have placed the *Orages* there. Formerly the *Akanfa* dwelt a great way up one of these Rivers, which bears their name still, and which I take notice of about the midst of the passage of the River *Ouabache* to that of the *Massourites*; there lies the Cape of St. *Anthony* of *Padua*, and thereabouts live the Savage Nation of the *Mansopolea*.

Sept. 5. M. Cavelier and Father *Anastasi* arriv'd at the mouth of the River of the *Illinois*: 'tis reckon'd 100 Leagues from thence to Fort *Crevecoeur*, as I remark'd in my first Volume. The passage all the way is clear and navigable by large Vessels. A *Chamnon* nam'd *Turpin*, having seen them enter his Village, ran by land to carry the News to M. *Belle Fontaine*, Commander of that Fort; he could not believe what he told him, but they follow'd apace after the Barbarian, and came to the Fort, Sept. 14. presently they conducted them to the Chapel, where *Te Deum* was thankfully sung. The *Canadians* that were in the place, and some Savages fir'd Volleys of Muskets.

M. de *Tonti*, whom M. de la Salle design'd to be Commander of Fort *Crevecoeur*, was gone among the

Iroquois to dispose those Barbarians to an Alliance. These Travellers were receiv'd with all the kindness imaginable, and *M. de Belle-Fountain* omitted no Testimony of his joy to see them safely arriv'd.

It must be confess'd, that no man can evade his Destiny. At the same time it must likewise be acknowledged that the Disaster of *M. de la Salle* had something very fatal in it; he undertook this great Voyage with design to find out the mouth of the River *Meschasipi*, but unfortunately fell by the way without succeeding in his Enterprize, and yet just after his Death, his Brother, Father *Anastasi*, &c. went up that River and arriv'd at the *Illinois*.

'Tis indubitable, nevertheless, that there is an excellent Haven at the mouth of this River, as I observ'd in 80. The entry into it is very convenient, as may be easily seen. Of the three arms that compose this out-let, I always follow'd the Channel of that in the middle. 'Tis a commodious Harbour, and has several places fit to raise Fortresses upon, that are in no danger of being overflow'd, as has formerly been thought. The lower part or mouth of the River is habitable, and is inhabited by several savage Nations that don't lie far from it. The greatest Vessels may go up above 200 Leagues from the Gulph of *Mexico*, as far as the mouth of the River of the *Illinois*, which River is navigable for above 100 Leagues, and discharges it self into the River *Meschasipi*. At the lower end of the River dwell several other Nations, which I forgot, as the *Picheno*, the *Ozanbogue*, the *Tangibao*, the *Ottomika*, the *Movisa*, and many others, whose names easily escape ones Memory, when one passes through them without leisure, or conveniency to take necessary observations and notes.

'Tis probable that *M. de la Salle* not finding the Mouth of that River in the Sea, fancied that the Bay of *St. Lewis*, was not above 40 or 50 Leagues from the

Mouth of one of its Arms, at least in a strait line; but by misfortune he never was at it. God sets bounds to all Men, and their Enterprises, to all the desires of their Hearts, as well as to the vast Ocean.

Doubtless God permitted it so to be, that Father *Anastasi* who is now Vicar of the Recollects at *Cambray*, should discover 110 Nations in his Travels, without taking into the Number many more Savage People well known to those he convers'd with *en passant*, because they traffick with them, which at the same time were never seen by any *European*.

These People, as I have already noted, have very good Horses, fit for any service in abundance. They think themselves well paid for a Horse, if one gives them a Hatchet.

Father *Anastasi* went from the Bay of St. Lewis to the Gulph of *Mexico* with design to settle a Mission among the *Cenis* in his 2d Voyage. Father *Zenobius Mambré* Recollect, who staid behind at the said Bay, was to have come and joyn'd him, to the end they might spread the Faith among the neighbouring Nations. They expected from *Europe* a great number of Labourers, but the death of M. de la Salle obliging him to proceed further he don't doubt but Father *Zenobius* has been there to look for him.

So it may be he is now in that Country with Father *Maximus* a Recollect and Native of *Lisle* in *Flanders*, and that they have left the Sieur *Chefdeville* a Missionary of St. *Sulpicius*, at the Mission of the Port in that Bay. He determin'd himself to be there, because there were nine or ten *European* Families there with their Children, besides some of M. de la Salle's men have marry'd with the Women of the Country to augment the little Colony. This is the Extract of Father *Anastasi*'s account of his toilsome Voyage. What are become of the people left in those parts since that time, we know not.

Father

Father *Anastafius* conceal'd the deplorable Fate of *M. de la Salle*, because 'twas his duty as well as *M. Cavelier's* the Priest, to carry the first news of it to Court, and secure the effects of the deceas'd in the said Fort of the *Illinois*, because he advanc'd Money upon the enterprize. He departed from the *Illinois* in the Spring, 1688, together with Father *Anastafius*, young *Cavelier*, *M. Foutel*, and one Barbarian, who dwells at present near *Versailles*; they arriv'd at *Quebec*, July 27, and set sail for *France* the 20th of *August* following. God granted them a favourable passage to *Paris*, after having run through incredible Dangers; and they gave an account of their Voyage to the late Marquis *de Seignelay*.

This is the story of *M. de la Salle's* last Voyage, which I thought my self oblig'd to give the world, because 'tis a continuation of mine, and confirms several things related in my account. I go on now to describe the Religion and Manners of those barbarous Nations, which I discover'd in my Voyage.

C H A P. XI.

The Author's Reflections upon the Voyage to China; the opinion of most of the Savages of North America concerning the Creation of the World, and the Immortality of the Soul.

'TIS a common saying, that Truth is the very Soul and Essence of History: now this account of the Manners of the Savages of *North America* being taken sincerely, needs no other recommendation. Novelty and Variety joyn together to please the Reader, tho' I treat of barbarous unpolish'd People; and therefore I hope, that a Description of 200 different Nations, which I have either seen my self, or been inform'd of by some religious that have been among them, will divert the curious.

The Son of God having foretold, that his Gospel should be preach'd throughout the Universe, the faithfull have always interest'd themselves in forwarding the accomplishment of that Prophecy, and labour'd to convert those barbarous Nations who have no knowledge of the true God. 'Tis true, that multitude of savage People which inhabit the vast Countries of *America*, have had their Eyes shut against the Light of Truth: but we have already begun to preach Christ crucifi'd to them, to the best of our skill, that we might bring them to Salvation. We hope therefore that those who are stirr'd up by the Love of God, will not be wanting for the future to finish what we have begun, but endeavour the Sal-
vation

vation of so many Souls, who might not perish, if Christians would help them to get out of their natural Blindness. To clear the way, and direct the means to it, we are going to give an account of the Ideas these People have of Religion, and likewise of their Manners, that so we may the more readily contrive the method of their Conversion, and in what manner to instruct them, to render them capable of receiving the truth and eternal Salvation.

Our Discoveries have acquainted us with most part of *North America*, so that I don't question if the King of *Great Britain*, and the States of *Holland* should think fit to send us back thither to finish what we have so happily begun, but we should demonstrate what we could never yet give a clear account of, though many attempts have been made to it. It has been found impossible hitherto to go to *Japan* by the Frozen Sea; that Voyage has often been frustrated; and I am morally assur'd, that we can never succeed in it, till we have first discovered the Continent betwixt the Frozen Sea and *New Mexico*. I am perswaded that God preserv'd me in all the great dangers of my long Voyages, that I might perfect that happy Discovery; and I here offer my self to undertake it, not doubting the success of the Enterprize (God willing) provided I am furnish'd with convenient means.

I don't wonder, that the learned are at a loss how *America* was peopled, and that infinite number of Nations settled upon that vast Continent. *America* is half the terrestrial Globe. The most expert Geographers are not thoroughly acquainted with it, and the Inhabitants themselves, whom we discover'd, and who in all likelihood should know best, don't know

